UNIT 5
Perspectives
On the Present
1945–present
On November 10, 1989, all borders between East and West Germany were opened. Here, people celebrate in front of the Brandenburg Gate, one of the former border crossings between East and West.

Comparing & Contrasting

**Nation Building**
In Unit 8, you will learn about the emergence or growth of several different nations. At the end of the unit, you will have a chance to compare and contrast the nations you have studied. (See pages 666–671.)
Restructuring the Postwar World, 1945–Present

**Previewing Themes**

**ECONOMICS** Two conflicting economic systems, capitalism and communism, competed for influence and power after World War II. The superpowers in this struggle were the United States and the Soviet Union.

**Geography** Study the map and the key. What does the map show about the state of the world in 1949?

**REVOLUTION** In Asia, the Americas, and Eastern Europe, people revolted against repressive governments or rule by foreign powers. These revolutions often became the areas for conflict between the two superpowers.

**Geography** Look at the map. Which of the three areas mentioned was not Communist in 1949?

**EMPIRE BUILDING** The United States and the Soviet Union used military, economic, and humanitarian aid to extend their control over other countries. Each also tried to prevent the other superpower from gaining influence.

**Geography** Why might the clear-cut division shown on this map be misleading?

**Essential Question**

How did the United States and the Soviet Union compete for economic and military superiority in the Cold War era?

**What You Will Learn**

- In this chapter, you will learn that the United States and the Soviet Union competed for dominance in the post–World War II world, with important consequences for other nations.

**SECTION 1** Cold War: Superpowers Face Off

- Main Idea: The opposing economic and political philosophies of the United States and the Soviet Union led to global competition.

**SECTION 2** Communists Take Power in China

- Main Idea: After World War II, Chinese Communists defeated Nationalist forces and two separate Chinas emerged.

**SECTION 3** Wars in Korea and Vietnam

- Main Idea: In Asia, the Cold War flared into actual wars supported mainly by the superpowers.

**SECTION 4** The Cold War Divides the World

- Main Idea: The superpowers supported opposing sides in Latin American and Middle Eastern conflicts.

**SECTION 5** The Cold War Thaws

- Main Idea: The Cold War began to thaw as the superpowers entered an era of uneasy diplomacy.

**World Events**

- 1949: Communists take control of China.
- 1957: Soviets launch Sputnik.
- 1959: Cuba becomes Communist. (Fidel Castro)
- 1947: Independent India partitioned into India and Pakistan.
- 1957: Ghana achieves independence from Great Britain.
If you were president, what policies would you follow to gain allies?

World War II has ended. You are the leader of a great superpower—one of two in the world. To keep the balance of power in your nation’s favor, you want to gain as many allies as possible. You are particularly interested in gaining the support of nations in Africa, Asia, and Central and South America who do not yet favor either superpower.

You call your advisers together to develop policies for making uncommitted nations your allies.

EXAMINING the ISSUES

- How might the actions taken affect your country? the other superpower?
- How might being caught in a struggle between superpowers affect a developing nation?

As a class, discuss how the conflict between the superpowers affects the rest of the world. As you read about how the superpowers tried to gain allies, notice the part weaker countries played in their conflict.
Cold War: Superpowers Face Off

**MAIN IDEA**

**ECONOMICS** The opposing economic and political philosophies of the United States and the Soviet Union led to global competition.

**WHY IT MATTERS NOW**

The conflicts between the United States and the Soviet Union played a major role in reshaping the modern world.

**TERMS & NAMES**

- United Nations
- iron curtain
- containment
- Truman Doctrine
- Marshall Plan
- Cold War
- NATO
- Warsaw Pact
- brinkmanship

**SETTING THE STAGE** During World War II, the United States and the Soviet Union had joined forces to fight against the Germans. The Soviet army marched west; the Americans marched east. When the Allied soldiers met at the Elbe River in Germany in 1945, they embraced each other warmly because they had defeated the Nazis. Their leaders, however, regarded each other much more coolly. This animosity caused by competing political philosophies would lead to a nearly half-century of conflict called the Cold War.

**Allies Become Enemies**

Even before World War II ended, the U.S. alliance with the Soviet Union had begun to unravel. The United States was upset that Joseph Stalin, the Soviet leader, had signed a nonaggression pact with Germany in 1939. Later, Stalin blamed the Allies for not invading German-occupied Europe earlier than 1944. Driven by these and other disagreements, the two allies began to pursue opposing goals.

**Yalta Conference: A Postwar Plan** The war was not yet over in February 1945. But the leaders of the United States, Britain, and the Soviet Union met at the Soviet Black Sea resort of Yalta. There, they agreed to divide Germany into zones of occupation controlled by the Allied military forces. Germany also would have

►Winston Churchill, Franklin D. Roosevelt, and Joseph Stalin meet at Yalta in 1945.
to pay the Soviet Union to compensate for its loss of life and property. Stalin agreed to join the war against Japan. He also promised that Eastern Europeans would have free elections. A skeptical Winston Churchill predicted that Stalin would keep his pledge only if the Eastern Europeans followed “a policy friendly to Russia.”

**Creation of the United Nations** In June 1945, the United States and the Soviet Union temporarily set aside their differences. They joined 48 other countries in forming the **United Nations** (UN). This international organization was intended to protect the members against aggression. It was to be based in New York.

The charter for the new peacekeeping organization established a large body called the General Assembly. There, each UN member nation could cast its vote on a broad range of issues. An 11-member body called the Security Council had the real power to investigate and settle disputes, though. Its five permanent members were Britain, China, France, the United States, and the Soviet Union. Each could veto any Security Council action. This provision was intended to prevent any members of the Council from voting as a bloc to override the others.

**Differing U.S. and Soviet Goals** Despite agreement at Yalta and their presence on the Security Council, the United States and the Soviet Union split sharply after the war. The war had affected them very differently. The United States, the world’s richest and most powerful country, suffered 400,000 deaths. But its cities and factories remained intact. The Soviet Union had at least 50 times as many fatalities. One in four Soviets was wounded or killed. Also, many Soviet cities were demolished. These contrasting situations, as well as political and economic differences, affected the two countries’ postwar goals. (See chart below.)

---

**Superpower Aims in Europe**

**United States**
- Encourage democracy in other countries to help prevent the rise of Communist governments
- Gain access to raw materials and markets to fuel booming industries
- Rebuild European governments to promote stability and create new markets for U.S. goods
- Reunite Germany to stabilize it and increase the security of Europe

**Soviet Union**
- Encourage communism in other countries as part of a worldwide workers’ revolution
- Rebuild its war-ravaged economy using Eastern Europe’s industrial equipment and raw materials
- Control Eastern Europe to protect Soviet borders and balance the U.S. influence in Western Europe
- Keep Germany divided to prevent its waging war again

---

**SKILLBUILDER: Interpreting Maps and Charts**

1. **Drawing Conclusions** Which countries separated the Soviet Union from Western Europe?
2. **Comparing** Which U.S. and Soviet aims in Europe conflicted?
**Eastern Europe’s Iron Curtain**

A major goal of the Soviet Union was to shield itself from another invasion from the west. Centuries of history had taught the Soviets to fear invasion. Because it lacked natural western borders, Russia fell victim to each of its neighbors in turn. In the 17th century, the Poles captured the Kremlin. During the next century, the Swedes attacked. Napoleon overran Moscow in 1812. The Germans invaded Russia during World Wars I and II.

**Soviets Build a Buffer** As World War II drew to a close, the Soviet troops pushed the Nazis back across Eastern Europe. At war’s end, these troops occupied a strip of countries along the Soviet Union’s own western border. Stalin regarded these countries as a necessary buffer, or wall of protection. He ignored the Yalta agreement and installed or secured Communist governments in Albania, Bulgaria, Hungary, Czechoslovakia, Romania, Poland, and Yugoslavia.

The Soviet leader’s American partner at Yalta, Franklin D. Roosevelt, had died on April 12, 1945. To Roosevelt’s successor, Harry S. Truman, Stalin’s reluctance to allow free elections in Eastern European nations was a clear violation of those countries’ rights. Truman, Stalin, and Churchill met at Potsdam, Germany, in July 1945. There, Truman pressed Stalin to permit free elections in Eastern Europe. The Soviet leader refused. In a speech in early 1946, Stalin declared that communism and capitalism could not exist in the same world.

**An Iron Curtain Divides East and West** Europe now lay divided between East and West. Germany had been split into two sections. The Soviets controlled the eastern part, including half of the capital, Berlin. Under a Communist government, East Germany was named the German Democratic Republic. The western zones became the Federal Republic of Germany in 1949. Winston Churchill described the division of Europe:

> From Stettin in the Baltic to Trieste in the Adriatic, an iron curtain has descended across the continent. Behind that line lie all the capitals of the ancient states of Central and Eastern Europe. . . . All these famous cities and the populations around them lie in the Soviet sphere and all are subject in one form or another, not only to Soviet influence but to a very high and increasing measure of control from Moscow.

**PRIMARY SOURCE**

> WINSTON CHURCHILL, “Iron Curtain” speech, March 5, 1946

Churchill’s phrase “iron curtain” came to represent Europe’s division into mostly democratic Western Europe and Communist Eastern Europe.

**United States Tries to Contain Soviets**

U.S.-Soviet relations continued to worsen in 1946 and 1947. An increasingly worried United States tried to offset the growing Soviet threat to Eastern Europe. President Truman adopted a foreign policy called containment. It was a policy directed at blocking Soviet influence and stopping the expansion of communism. Containment policies included forming alliances and helping weak countries resist Soviet advances.
The Truman Doctrine In a speech asking Congress for foreign aid for Turkey and Greece, Truman contrasted democracy with communism:

PRIMARY SOURCE
One way of life is based upon the will of the majority, and is distinguished by free institutions . . . free elections . . . and freedom from political oppression. The second way of life is based upon the will of a minority forcibly imposed upon the majority. It relies upon terror and oppression . . . fixed elections, and the suppression of personal freedoms. I believe it must be the policy of the United States to support free people . . . resisting attempted subjugation [control] by armed minorities or by outside pressures.

PRESIDENT HARRY S. TRUMAN, speech to Congress, March 12, 1947

Truman’s support for countries that rejected communism was called the Truman Doctrine. It caused great controversy. Some opponents objected to American interference in other nations’ affairs. Others argued that the United States could not afford to carry on a global crusade against communism. Congress, however, immediately authorized more than $400 million in aid to Turkey and Greece.

The Marshall Plan Much of Western Europe lay in ruins after the war. There was also economic turmoil—a scarcity of jobs and food. In 1947, U.S. Secretary of State George Marshall proposed that the United States give aid to needy European countries. This assistance program, called the Marshall Plan, would provide food, machinery, and other materials to rebuild Western Europe. (See chart.) As Congress debated the $12.5 billion program in 1948, the Communists seized power in Czechoslovakia. Congress immediately voted approval. The plan was a spectacular success. Even Communist Yugoslavia received aid after it broke away from Soviet domination.

Countries Aided by the Marshall Plan, 1948–1951

The Berlin Airlift While Europe began rebuilding, the United States and its allies clashed with the Soviet Union over Germany. The Soviets wanted to keep their former enemy weak and divided. But in 1948, France, Britain, and the United States decided to withdraw their forces from Germany and allow their occupation zones to form one nation. The Soviet Union responded by holding West Berlin hostage.

Although Berlin lay well within the Soviet occupation zone of Germany, it too had been divided into four zones. (See map on next page.) The Soviet Union cut off highway, water, and rail traffic into Berlin’s western zones. The city faced starvation. Stalin gambled that the Allies would surrender West Berlin or give up

SKILLBUILDER: Interpreting Charts
1. Drawing Conclusions Which country received the most aid from the United States?
2. Making Inferences Why do you think Great Britain and France received so much aid?
their idea of reunifying Germany. But American and British officials flew food and supplies into West Berlin for nearly 11 months. In May 1949, the Soviet Union admitted defeat and lifted the blockade.

**The Cold War Divides the World**

These conflicts marked the start of the Cold War between the United States and the Soviet Union. A cold war is a struggle over political differences carried on by means short of military action or war. Beginning in 1949, the superpowers used spying, propaganda, diplomacy, and secret operations in their dealings with each other. Much of the world allied with one side or the other. In fact, until the Soviet Union finally broke up in 1991, the Cold War dictated not only U.S. and Soviet foreign policy, but influenced world alliances as well.

**Superpowers Form Rival Alliances** The Berlin blockade heightened Western Europe’s fears of Soviet aggression. As a result, in 1949, ten western European nations joined with the United States and Canada to form a defensive military alliance. It was called the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO). An attack on any NATO member would be met with armed force by all member nations.

The Soviet Union saw NATO as a threat and formed its own alliance in 1955. It was called the Warsaw Pact and included the Soviet Union, East Germany, Czechoslovakia, Poland, Hungary, Romania, Bulgaria, and Albania. In 1961, the East Germans built a wall to separate East and West Berlin. The Berlin Wall symbolized a world divided into rival camps. However, not every country joined the new alliances. Some, like India, chose not to align with either side. And China, the largest Communist country, came to distrust the Soviet Union. It remained nonaligned.

**The Threat of Nuclear War** As these alliances were forming, the Cold War threatened to heat up enough to destroy the world. The United States already had atomic bombs. In 1949, the Soviet Union exploded its own atomic weapon. President Truman was determined to develop a more deadly weapon before the Soviets did. He authorized work on a thermonuclear weapon in 1950.
The hydrogen or H-bomb would be thousands of times more powerful than the A-bomb. Its power came from the fusion, or joining together, of atoms, rather than the splitting of atoms, as in the A-bomb. In 1952, the United States tested the first H-bomb. The Soviets exploded their own in 1953.

Dwight D. Eisenhower became the U.S. president in 1953. He appointed the firmly anti-Communist John Foster Dulles as his secretary of state. If the Soviet Union or its supporters attacked U.S. interests, Dulles threatened, the United States would “retaliate instantly, by means and at places of our own choosing.” This willingness to go to the brink, or edge, of war became known as brinkmanship. Brinkmanship required a reliable source of nuclear weapons and airplanes to deliver them. So, the United States strengthened its air force and began producing stockpiles of nuclear weapons. The Soviet Union responded with its own military buildup, beginning an arms race that would go on for four decades.

The Cold War in the Skies The Cold War also affected the science and education programs of the two countries. In August 1957, the Soviets announced the development of a rocket that could travel great distances—an intercontinental ballistic missile, or ICBM. On October 4, the Soviets used an ICBM to push Sputnik, the first unmanned satellite, above the earth’s atmosphere. Americans felt they had fallen behind in science and technology, and the government poured money into science education. In 1958, the United States launched its own satellite.

In 1960, the skies again provided the arena for a superpower conflict. Five years earlier, Eisenhower had proposed that the United States and the Soviet Union be able to fly over each other’s territory to guard against surprise nuclear attacks. The Soviet Union said no. In response, the U.S. Central Intelligence Agency (CIA) started secret high-altitude spy flights over Soviet territory in planes called U-2s. In May 1960, the Soviets shot down a U-2 plane, and its pilot, Francis Gary Powers, was captured. This U-2 incident heightened Cold War tensions.

While Soviet Communists were squaring off against the United States, Communists in China were fighting a civil war for control of that country.

### TERMS & NAMES
1. For each term or name, write a sentence explaining its significance.

- United Nations
- iron curtain
- containment
- Truman Doctrine
- Marshall Plan
- Cold War
- NATO
- Warsaw Pact
- brinkmanship

### MAIN IDEAS
3. What was the purpose in forming the United Nations?
4. What was the goal of the Marshall Plan?
5. What were the goals of NATO and the Warsaw Pact?

### CRITICAL THINKING & WRITING
6. COMPARING AND CONTRASTING What factors help to explain why the United States and the Soviet Union became rivals instead of allies?
7. ANALYZING MOTIVES What were Stalin’s objectives in supporting Communist governments in Eastern Europe?
8. ANALYZING ISSUES Why might Berlin be a likely spot for trouble to develop during the Cold War?
9. WRITING ACTIVITY [ECONOMICS] Draw a political cartoon that shows either capitalism from the Soviet point of view or communism from the U.S. point of view.

### INTERNET KEYWORD
North Atlantic Treaty Organization

### USING YOUR NOTES
2. Which effect of the Cold War was the most significant? Explain.

1945 | 1960
---|---
Yalta conference | U-2 incident
The Space Race

Beginning in the late 1950s, the United States and the Soviet Union competed for influence not only among the nations of the world, but in the skies as well. Once the superpowers had ICBMs (intercontinental ballistic missiles) to deliver nuclear warheads and aircraft for spying missions, they both began to develop technology that could be used to explore—and ultimately control—space. However, after nearly two decades of costly competition, the two superpowers began to cooperate in space exploration.

RESEARCH WEB LINKS Go online for more on the space race.

The Soviet Union launched Sputnik, the first successful artificial space satellite, on October 4, 1957. As it circled the earth every 96 minutes, Premier Nikita Khrushchev boasted that his country would soon be “turning out long-range missiles like sausages.” The United States accelerated its space program. After early failures, a U.S. satellite was launched in 1958.

The joint Apollo and Soyuz mission ushered in an era of U.S.-Soviet cooperation in space.


2. Making Inferences What role might space continue to play in achieving world peace?
# Communists Take Power in China

**MAIN IDEA**

**REVOLUTION** After World War II, Chinese Communists defeated Nationalist forces and two separate Chinas emerged.

**WHY IT MATTERS NOW**

China remains a Communist country and a major power in the world.

**TERMS & NAMES**

- Mao Zedong
- Jiang Jieshi
- commune
- Red Guards
- Cultural Revolution

---

**SETTING THE STAGE** In World War II, China fought on the side of the victorious Allies. But the victory proved to be a hollow one for China. During the war, Japan’s armies had occupied and devastated most of China’s cities. China’s civilian death toll alone was estimated between 10 to 22 million persons. This vast country suffered casualties second only to those of the Soviet Union. However, conflict did not end with the defeat of the Japanese. In 1945, opposing Chinese armies faced one another.

**Communists vs. Nationalists**

As you read in Chapter 14, a bitter civil war was raging between the Nationalists and the Communists when the Japanese invaded China in 1937. During World War II, the political opponents temporarily united to fight the Japanese. But they continued to jockey for position within China.

**World War II in China** Under their leader, **Mao Zedong** (MOW-dzuh•dahng), the Communists had a stronghold in northwestern China. From there, they mobilized peasants for guerrilla war against the Japanese in the northeast. Thanks to their efforts to promote literacy and improve food production, the Communists won the peasants’ loyalty. By 1945, they controlled much of northern China.

Meanwhile, the Nationalist forces under **Jiang Jieshi** (jee•ahng-jee•shee) dominated southwestern China. Protected from the Japanese by rugged mountain ranges, Jiang gathered an army of 2.5 million men. From 1942 to 1945, the United States sent the Nationalists at least $1.5 billion in aid to fight the Japanese. Instead of benefiting the army, however, these supplies and money often ended up in the hands of a few corrupt officers. Jiang’s army actually fought few battles against the Japanese. Instead, the Nationalist army saved its strength for the coming battle against Mao’s Red Army. After Japan surrendered, the Nationalists and Communists resumed fighting.

**Civil War Resumes** The renewed civil war lasted from 1946 to 1949. At first, the Nationalists had the advantage. Their army outnumbered the Communists’ army by as much as three to one. And the United States continued its support by providing nearly $2 billion in aid. The Nationalist forces, however, did little to win popular support. With China’s economy collapsing, thousands of Nationalist soldiers deserted to the Communists. In spring 1949, China’s major cities fell to
the well-trained Red forces. Mao’s troops were also enthusiastic about his promise to return land to the peasants. The remnants of Jiang’s shattered army fled south. In October 1949, Mao Zedong gained control of the country. He proclaimed it the People’s Republic of China. Jiang and other Nationalist leaders retreated to the island of Taiwan, which Westerners called Formosa.

Mao Zedong’s victory fueled U.S. anti-Communist feelings. Those feelings only grew after the Chinese and Soviets signed a treaty of friendship in 1950. Many people in the United States viewed the takeover of China as another step in a Communist campaign to conquer the world.

The Two Chinas Affect the Cold War

China had split into two nations. One was the island of Taiwan, or Nationalist China, with an area of 13,000 square miles. The mainland, or People’s Republic of China, had an area of more than 3.5 million square miles. The existence of two Chinas, and the conflicting international loyalties they inspired, intensified the Cold War.

The Superpowers React After Jiang Jieshi fled to Taiwan, the United States helped him set up a Nationalist government on that small island. It was called the Republic of China. The Soviets gave financial, military, and technical aid to Communist China. In addition, the Chinese and the Soviets pledged to come to each other’s defense if either was attacked. The United States tried to halt Soviet expansion in Asia. For example, when Soviet forces occupied the northern half of Korea after World War II and set up a Communist government, the United States supported a separate state in the south.

China Expands under the Communists In the early years of Mao’s reign, Chinese troops expanded into Tibet, India, and southern, or Inner, Mongolia. Northern, or Outer, Mongolia, which bordered the Soviet Union, remained in the Soviet sphere.

In a brutal assault in 1950 and 1951, China took control of Tibet. The Chinese promised autonomy to Tibetans, who followed their religious leader, the Dalai Lama. When China’s control over Tibet tightened in the late 1950s, the Dalai Lama fled to India. India welcomed many Tibetan refugees after a failed revolt in Tibet in
1893–1976
Born into a peasant family, Mao embraced Marxist socialism as a young man. Though he began as an urban labor organizer, Mao quickly realized the revolutionary potential of China’s peasants. In 1927, Mao predicted:

*The force of the peasantry is like that of the raging winds and driving rain. . . . They will bury beneath them all forces of imperialism, militarism, corrupt officialdom, village bosses and evil gentry.*

Mao’s first attempt to lead the peasants in revolt failed in 1927. But during the Japanese occupation, Mao and his followers won widespread peasant support by reducing rents and promising to redistribute land. In 1959. As a result, resentment between India and China grew. In 1962, they clashed briefly over the two countries’ unclear border. The fighting stopped but resentment continued.

**The Communists Transform China**

For decades, China had been in turmoil, engaged in civil war or fighting with Japan. So, when the Communists took power, they moved rapidly to strengthen their rule over China’s 550 million people. They also aimed to restore China as a powerful nation.

**Communists Claim a New “Mandate of Heaven”** After taking control of China, the Communists began to tighten their hold. The party’s 4.5 million members made up just 1 percent of the population. But they were a disciplined group. Like the Soviets, the Chinese Communists set up two parallel organizations, the Communist party and the national government. Mao headed both until 1959.

**Mao’s Brand of Marxist Socialism** Mao was determined to reshape China’s economy based on Marxist socialism. Eighty percent of the people lived in rural areas, but most owned no land. Instead, 10 percent of the rural population controlled 70 percent of the farmland. Under the Agrarian Reform Law of 1950, Mao seized the holdings of these landlords. His forces killed more than a million landlords who resisted. He then divided the land among the peasants. Later, to further Mao’s socialist principles, the government forced peasants to join collective farms. Each of these farms was comprised of 200 to 300 households.

Mao’s changes also transformed industry and business. Gradually, private companies were nationalized, or brought under government ownership. In 1953, Mao launched a five-year plan that set high production goals for industry. By 1957, China’s output of coal, cement, steel, and electricity had increased dramatically.

**“The Great Leap Forward”** To expand the success of the first Five-Year Plan, Mao proclaimed the “Great Leap Forward” in early 1958. This plan called for still larger collective farms, or *communes*. By the end of 1958, about 26,000 communes had been created. The average commune sprawled over 15,000 acres and supported over 25,000 people. In the strictly controlled life of the communes, peasants worked the land together. They ate in communal dining rooms, slept in communal dormitories, and raised children in communal nurseries. And they owned nothing. The peasants had no incentive to work hard when only the state profited from their labor.

The Great Leap Forward was a giant step backward. Poor planning and inefficient “backyard,” or home, industries hampered growth. The program was ended in 1961 after crop failures caused a famine that killed about 20 million people.

**New Policies and Mao’s Response** China was facing external problems as well as internal ones in the late 1950s. The spirit of cooperation that had bound the Soviet Union and China began to fade. Each sought to lead the worldwide Communist movement. As they also shared the longest border in the world, they faced numerous territorial disputes.
After the failure of the Great Leap Forward and the split with the Soviet Union, Mao reduced his role in government. Other leaders moved away from Mao’s strict socialist ideas. For example, farm families could live in their own homes and could sell crops they grew on small private plots. Factory workers could compete for wage increases and promotions.

Mao thought China’s new economic policies weakened the Communist goal of social equality. He was determined to revive the revolution. In 1966, he urged China’s young people to “learn revolution by making revolution.” Millions of high school and college students responded. They left their classrooms and formed militia units called Red Guards.

**The Cultural Revolution** The Red Guards led a major uprising known as the Cultural Revolution. Its goal was to establish a society of peasants and workers in which all were equal. The new hero was the peasant who worked with his hands. The life of the mind—intellectual and artistic activity—was considered useless and dangerous. To stamp out this threat, the Red Guards shut down colleges and schools. They targeted anyone who resisted the regime. Intellectuals had to “purify” themselves by doing hard labor in remote villages. Thousands were executed or imprisoned.

Chaos threatened farm production and closed down factories. Civil war seemed possible. By 1968, even Mao admitted that the Cultural Revolution had to stop. The army was ordered to put down the Red Guards. Zhou Enlai (joh ehn•leye), Chinese Communist party founder and premier since 1949, began to restore order. While China was struggling to become stable, the Cold War continued to rage. Two full-scale wars were fought—in Korea and in Vietnam.

**Terminology**
- **Mao Zedong**
- **Jiang Jieshi**
- **commune**
- **Red Guards**
- **Cultural Revolution**

**Main Idea**

**Drawing Conclusions**

Why did the Cultural Revolution fail?

**Critical Thinking & Writing**

6. **MAKING INFERENCES** Why did the United States support the Nationalists in the civil war in China?
7. **ANALYZING ISSUES** What policies or actions enabled the Communists to defeat the Nationalists in their long civil war?
8. **IDENTIFYING PROBLEMS** What circumstances prevented Mao’s Great Leap Forward from bringing economic prosperity to China?
9. **WRITING ACTIVITY** Write summaries of the reforms Mao Zedong proposed for China that could be placed on a propaganda poster.

**SECTION ASSESSMENT**

2. **ASSESSMENT**

**TERMS & NAMES**

1. For each term or name, write a sentence explaining its significance.

- Mao Zedong
- Jiang Jieshi
- commune
- Red Guards
- Cultural Revolution

**USING YOUR NOTES**

2. Which effect of the Communist Revolution in China do you think had the most permanent impact? Explain.

**MAIN IDEAS**

3. How did the Chinese Communists increase their power during World War II?
4. What actions did the Nationalists take during World War II?
5. What was the goal of the Cultural Revolution?

**CONNECT TO TODAY**

**CREATING A COMPARISON CHART**

Find political, economic, and demographic information on the People’s Republic of China and Taiwan and make a comparison chart.
TAKING NOTES

SETTING THE STAGE
When World War II ended, Korea became a divided nation. North of the 38th parallel, a line that crosses Korea at 38 degrees north latitude, Japanese troops surrendered to Soviet forces. South of this line, the Japanese surrendered to American troops. As in Germany, two nations developed. (See map on next page.) One was the Communist industrial north, whose government had been set up by the Soviets. The other was the non-Communist rural south, supported by the Western powers.

War in Korea
By 1949, both the United States and the Soviet Union had withdrawn most of their troops from Korea. The Soviets gambled that the United States would not defend South Korea. So they supplied North Korea with tanks, airplanes, and money in an attempt to take over the peninsula.

Standoff at the 38th Parallel
On June 25, 1950, North Koreans swept across the 38th parallel in a surprise attack on South Korea. Within days, North Korean troops had penetrated deep into the south. President Truman was convinced that the North Korean aggressors were repeating what Hitler, Mussolini, and the Japanese had done in the 1930s. Truman’s policy of containment was being put to the test. And Truman resolved to help South Korea resist communism.

South Korea also asked the United Nations to intervene. When the matter came to a vote in the Security Council, the Soviets were absent. They had refused to take part in the Council to protest admission of Nationalist China (Taiwan), rather than...
Communist China, into the UN. As a result, the Soviet Union could not veto the UN’s plan to send an international force to Korea to stop the invasion. A total of 15 nations, including the United States and Britain, participated under the command of General Douglas MacArthur.

Meanwhile, the North Koreans continued to advance. By September 1950, they controlled the entire Korean peninsula except for a tiny area around Pusan in the far southeast. That month, however, MacArthur launched a surprise attack. Troops moving north from Pusan met with forces that had made an amphibious landing at Inchon. Caught in this “pincer action,” about half of the North Koreans surrendered. The rest retreated.

The Fighting Continues The UN troops pursued the retreating North Koreans across the 38th parallel into North Korea. They pushed them almost to the Yalu River at the Chinese border. The UN forces were mostly from the United States. The Chinese felt threatened by these troops and by an American fleet off their coast. In October 1950, they sent 300,000 troops into North Korea. The Chinese greatly outnumbered the UN forces. By January 1951, they had pushed UN and South Korean troops out of North Korea. The Chinese then moved into South Korea and captured the capital of Seoul. “We face an entirely new war,” declared MacArthur. He called for a nuclear attack against China. Truman viewed MacArthur’s proposals as reckless. “We are trying to prevent a world war, not start one,” he said. MacArthur tried to go over the President’s head by taking his case to Congress and the press. In response, Truman removed him.

Over the next two years, UN forces fought to drive the Chinese and North Koreans back. By 1952, UN troops had regained control of South Korea. Finally, in July 1953, the UN forces and North Korea signed a cease-fire agreement. The border between the two Koreas was set near the 38th parallel, almost where it had been before the war. In the meantime, 4 million soldiers and civilians had died.

Aftermath of the War After the war, Korea remained divided. A demilitarized zone, which still exists, separated the two countries. In North Korea, the Communist dictator Kim II Sung established collective farms, developed heavy industry, and built up the military. At Kim’s death in 1994, his son Kim Jong II took power. Under his rule, Communist North Korea developed nuclear weapons but had serious economic problems. On the other hand, South Korea prospered, thanks partly to massive aid from the United States and other countries. In the 1960s, South
Korea concentrated on developing its industry and expanding foreign trade. A succession of dictators ruled the rapidly developing country. With the 1987 adoption of a democratic constitution, however, South Korea established free elections. During the 1980s and 1990s, South Korea had one of the highest economic growth rates in the world.

Political differences have kept the two Koreas apart, despite periodic discussions of reuniting the country. North Korea’s possession of nuclear weapons is a major obstacle. The United States still keeps troops in South Korea.

**War Breaks Out in Vietnam**

Much like its involvement in the Korean War, the involvement of the United States in Vietnam stemmed from its Cold War containment policy. After World War II, stopping the spread of communism was the principal goal of U.S. foreign policy.

**The Road to War** In the early 1900s, France controlled most of resource-rich Southeast Asia. (French Indochina included what are now Vietnam, Laos, and Cambodia.) But nationalist independence movements had begun to develop. A young Vietnamese nationalist, **Ho Chi Minh**, turned to the Communists for help in his struggle. During the 1930s, Ho’s Indochinese Communist party led revolts and strikes against the French.

The French responded by jailing Vietnamese protesters. They also sentenced Ho to death. He fled into exile, but returned to Vietnam in 1941, a year after the Japanese seized control of his country during World War II. Ho and other nationalists founded the Vietminh (Independence) League. The Japanese were forced out of Vietnam after their defeat in 1945. Ho Chi Minh believed that independence would follow, but France intended to regain its colony.

**The Fighting Begins** Vietnamese Nationalists and Communists joined to fight the French armies. The French held most major cities, but the Vietminh had widespread support in the countryside. The Vietminh used hit-and-run tactics to confine the French to the cities. In France the people began to doubt that their colony was worth the lives and money the struggle cost. In 1954, the French suffered a major military defeat at Dien Bien Phu. They surrendered to Ho.

The United States had supported France in Vietnam. With the defeat of the French, the United States saw a rising threat to the rest of Asia. President Eisenhower described this threat in terms of the **domino theory**. The Southeast Asian nations were like a row of dominos, he said. The fall of one to communism would lead to the fall of its neighbors. This theory became a major justification for U.S. foreign policy during the Cold War era.

**Vietnam—A Divided Country** After France’s defeat, an international peace conference met in Geneva to discuss the future of Indochina. Based on these talks, Vietnam was divided at 17° north latitude. North of that line, Ho Chi Minh’s Communist forces governed. To the south, the United States and France set up an anti-Communist government under the leadership of **Ngo Dinh Diem** (NOH dihn D’YEM).

**History Makers**

**Ho Chi Minh**
1890–1969

When he was young, the poor Vietnamese Nguyen That (uhng-wihn thaht) Thanh worked as a cook on a French steamship. In visiting U.S. cities where the boat docked, he learned about American culture and ideals. He later took a new name—Ho Chi Minh, meaning “He who enlightens.” Though a Communist, in proclaiming Vietnam’s independence from France in 1945, he declared, “All men are created equal.”

His people revered him, calling him Uncle Ho. However, Ho Chi Minh did not put his democratic ideals into practice. He ruled North Vietnam by crushing all opposition.

**Making Inferences**

What actions might the United States have justified by the domino theory?
War in Vietnam, 1957–1973

1968—U.S. Marines at the Battle of Hue

1965—U.S. bombing of North Vietnam

1975—Evacuation of the U.S. embassy in Saigon

GEOGRAPHY SKILLBUILDER: Interpreting Maps

1. Human-Environment Interaction Did the Saigon government or the Vietcong control more of South Vietnam in 1973?

2. Movement Through what other countries did North Vietnamese troops move to invade South Vietnam?
Diem ruled the south as a dictator. Opposition to his government grew. Communist guerrillas, called Vietcong, began to gain strength in the south. While some of the Vietcong were trained soldiers from North Vietnam, most were South Vietnamese who hated Diem. Gradually, the Vietcong won control of large areas of the countryside. In 1963, a group of South Vietnamese generals had Diem assassinated. But the new leaders were no more popular than he had been. It appeared that a takeover by the Communist Vietcong, backed by North Vietnam, was inevitable.

The United States Gets Involved

Faced with the possibility of a Communist victory, the United States decided to escalate, or increase, its involvement. Some U.S. troops had been serving as advisers to the South Vietnamese since the late 1950s. But their numbers steadily grew, as did the numbers of planes and other military equipment sent to South Vietnam.

U.S. Troops Enter the Fight In August 1964, U.S. President Lyndon Johnson told Congress that North Vietnamese patrol boats had attacked two U.S. destroyers in the Gulf of Tonkin. As a result, Congress authorized the president to send U.S. troops to fight in Vietnam. By late 1965, more than 185,000 U.S. soldiers were in combat on Vietnamese soil. U.S. planes had also begun to bomb North Vietnam. By 1968, more than half a million U.S. soldiers were in combat there.

The United States had the best-equipped, most advanced army in the world. Yet it faced two major difficulties. First, U.S. soldiers were fighting a guerrilla war in unfamiliar jungle terrain. Second, the South Vietnamese government that they were defending was becoming more unpopular. At the same time, support for the Vietcong grew, with help and supplies from Ho Chi Minh, the Soviet Union, and China. Unable to win a decisive victory on the ground, the United States turned to air power. U.S. forces bombed millions of acres of farmland and forest in an attempt to destroy enemy hideouts. This bombing strengthened peasants’ opposition to the South Vietnamese government.

The United States Withdraws During the late 1960s, the war grew increasingly unpopular in the United States. Dissatisfied young people began to protest the tremendous loss of life in a conflict on the other side of the world. Bowing to intense public pressure, President Richard Nixon began withdrawing U.S. troops from Vietnam in 1969.

Nixon had a plan called Vietnamization. It allowed for U.S. troops to gradually pull out, while the South Vietnamese increased their combat role. To pursue Vietnamization while preserving the South Vietnamese government, Nixon authorized a massive bombing campaign against North Vietnamese bases and supply routes. He also authorized bombings in neighboring Laos and Cambodia to destroy Vietcong hiding places.

In response to protests and political pressure at home, Nixon kept withdrawing U.S. troops. The last left in 1973. Two years later, the North Vietnamese overran South Vietnam. The war ended, but more than 1.5 million Vietnamese and 58,000 Americans lost their lives.

Postwar Southeast Asia

War’s end did not bring an immediate halt to bloodshed and chaos in Southeast Asia. Cambodia (also known as Kampuchea) was under siege by Communist rebels.
During the war, it had suffered U.S. bombing when it was used as a sanctuary by North Vietnamese and Vietcong troops.

**Cambodia in Turmoil** In 1975, Communist rebels known as the Khmer Rouge set up a brutal Communist government under the leadership of Pol Pot. In a ruthless attempt to transform Cambodia into a Communist society, Pol Pot’s followers slaughtered 2 million people. This was almost one quarter of the nation’s population. The Vietnamese invaded in 1978. They overthrew the Khmer Rouge and installed a less repressive government. But fighting continued. The Vietnamese withdrew in 1989. In 1993, under the supervision of UN peacekeepers, Cambodia adopted a democratic constitution and held free elections.

**Vietnam after the War** After 1975, the victorious North Vietnamese imposed tight controls over the South. Officials sent thousands of people to “reeducation camps” for training in Communist thought. They nationalized industries and strictly controlled businesses. They also renamed Saigon, the South’s former capital, Ho Chi Minh City. Communist oppression caused 1.5 million people to flee Vietnam. Most escaped in dangerously overcrowded ships. More than 200,000 “boat people” died at sea. The survivors often spent months in refugee camps in Southeast Asia. About 70,000 eventually settled in the United States or Canada. Although Communists still govern Vietnam, the country now welcomes foreign investment. The United States normalized relations with Vietnam in 1995.

While the superpowers were struggling for advantage during the Korean and Vietnam wars, they also were seeking influence in other parts of the world.

---

**TERMS & NAMES**

1. For each term or name, write a sentence explaining its significance.
   - 38th parallel
   - Douglas MacArthur
   - Ho Chi Minh
   - domino theory
   - Ngo Dinh Diem
   - Vietcong
   - Vietnamization
   - Khmer Rouge

**USING YOUR NOTES**

2. In what ways were the causes and effects of the wars in Korea and Vietnam similar?

**MAIN IDEAS**

3. What role did the United Nations play in the Korean War?
4. How did Vietnam become divided?
5. What was the Khmer Rouge’s plan for Cambodia?

**CRITICAL THINKING & WRITING**

6. **ANALYZING MOTIVES** What role did the policy of containment play in the involvement of the United States in wars in Korea and Vietnam?
7. **IDENTIFYING CAUSES** How might imperialism be one of the causes of the Vietnam War?
8. **FORMING OPINIONS** Do you think U.S. involvement in Vietnam was justified? Why or why not?
9. **WRITING ACTIVITY** [EMPIRE BUILDING] Write a two-paragraph expository essay for either the United States or the Soviet Union supporting its involvement in Asia.

---

**SECTION ASSESSMENT**

3. For each term or name, write a sentence explaining its significance.
   - 38th parallel
   - Douglas MacArthur
   - Ho Chi Minh
   - domino theory
   - Ngo Dinh Diem
   - Vietcong
   - Vietnamization
   - Khmer Rouge

**CONNECT TO TODAY**

**WRITING A BIOGRAPHY**

Research the present-day leader of one of the countries discussed in this section. Then write a three-paragraph biography.
The Cold War Divides the World

MAIN IDEA

**REVOLUTION** The superpowers supported opposing sides in Latin American and Middle Eastern conflicts.

**WHY IT MATTERS NOW** Many of these areas today are troubled by political, economic, and military conflict and crisis.

**TERMS & NAMES**
- Third World
- nonaligned nations
- Fidel Castro
- Anastasio Somoza
- Daniel Ortega
- Ayatollah Ruholla Khomeini

**SETTING THE STAGE** Following World War II, the world’s nations were grouped politically into three “worlds.” The first was the industrialized capitalist nations, including the United States and its allies. The second was the Communist nations led by the Soviet Union. The **Third World** consisted of developing nations, often newly independent, who were not aligned with either superpower. These nonaligned countries provided yet another arena for competition between the Cold War superpowers.

**Fighting for the Third World**

The Third World nations were located in Latin America, Asia, and Africa. They were economically poor and politically unstable. This was largely due to a long history of colonialism. They also suffered from ethnic conflicts and lack of technology and education. Each needed a political and economic system around which to build its society. Soviet-style communism and U.S.-style free-market democracy were the main choices.

**Cold War Strategies** The United States, the Soviet Union, and, in some cases, China, used a variety of techniques to gain influence in the Third World. (See feature on next page.) They backed wars of revolution, liberation, or counterrevolution. The U.S. and Soviet intelligence agencies—the CIA and the KGB—engaged in various covert, or secret, activities, ranging from spying to assassination attempts. The United States also gave military aid, built schools, set up programs to combat poverty, and sent volunteer workers to many developing nations. The Soviets offered military and technical assistance, mainly to India and Egypt.

**Association of Nonaligned Nations** Other developing nations also needed assistance. They became important players in the Cold War competition between the United States, the Soviet Union, and later, China. But not all Third World countries wished to play a role in the Cold War. As mentioned earlier India vowed to remain neutral. Indonesia, a populous island nation in Southeast Asia, also struggled to stay uninvolved. In 1955, it hosted many leaders from Asia and Africa at the Bandung Conference. They met to form what they called a “third force” of independent countries, or **nonaligned nations**. Some nations, such as India and Indonesia, were able to maintain their neutrality. But others took sides with the superpowers or played competing sides against each other.
History in Depth

How the Cold War Was Fought

During the Cold War, the United States and the Soviet Union both believed that they needed to stop the other side from extending its power. What differentiated the Cold War from other 20th century conflicts was that the two enemies did not engage in a shooting war. Instead, they pursued their rivalry by using the strategies shown below.

Major Strategies of the Cold War

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Foreign Aid</th>
<th>Espionage</th>
<th>Multinational Alliances</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The two superpowers tried to win allies by giving financial aid to other nations. For instance, Egypt took aid from the Soviet Union to build the Aswan High Dam (see photograph above).</td>
<td>Fearing the enemy might be gaining the advantage, each side spied on the other. One famous incident was the Soviet downing of a U.S. U-2 spy plane in 1960.</td>
<td>To gain the support of other nations, both the Soviet Union and the United States entered into alliances. Two examples of this were NATO and the Warsaw Pact (shown on map above).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Propaganda</th>
<th>Brinkmanship</th>
<th>Surrogate Wars</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Both superpowers used propaganda to try to win support overseas. For example, Radio Free Europe broadcast radio programs about the rest of the world into Eastern Europe.</td>
<td>The policy of brinkmanship meant going to the brink of war to make the other side back down. One example was the Cuban Missile Crisis.</td>
<td>The word surrogate means substitute. Although the United States and the Soviet Union did not fight each other directly, they fought indirectly by backing opposing sides in many smaller conflicts.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SKILLBUILDER: Interpreting Visuals

1. Generalizing Judging from the map, how would you describe the effect on Europe of multinational alliances?
2. Analyzing Motives What motive did the two superpowers have for fighting surrogate wars?
Confrontations in Latin America

After World War II, rapid industrialization, population growth, and a lingering gap between the rich and the poor led Latin American nations to seek aid from both superpowers. At the same time, many of these countries alternated between short-lived democracy and harsh military rule. As described in Chapter 12, U.S. involvement in Latin America began long before World War II. American businesses backed leaders who protected U.S. interests but who also often oppressed their people. After the war, communism and nationalistic feelings inspired revolutionary movements. These found enthusiastic Soviet support. In response, the United States provided military and economic assistance to anti-Communist dictators.

**Fidel Castro and the Cuban Revolution** In the 1950s, Cuba was ruled by an unpopular dictator, Fulgencio Batista, who had U.S. support. Cuban resentment led to a popular revolution, which overthrew Batista in January 1959. A young lawyer named **Fidel Castro** led that revolution. At first, many people praised Castro for bringing social reforms to Cuba and improving the economy. Yet Castro was a harsh dictator. He suspended elections, jailed or executed his opponents, and tightly controlled the press.

When Castro nationalized the Cuban economy, he took over U.S.-owned sugar mills and refineries. In response, Eisenhower ordered an embargo on all trade with Cuba. Castro then turned to the Soviets for economic and military aid.
In 1960, the CIA began to train anti-Castro Cuban exiles. In April 1961, they invaded Cuba, landing at the Bay of Pigs. However, the United States did not provide the hoped for air support. Castro’s forces easily defeated the invaders, humiliating the United States.

**Nuclear Face-off: the Cuban Missile Crisis** The failed Bay of Pigs invasion convinced Soviet leader Nikita Khrushchev that the United States would not resist Soviet expansion in Latin America. So, in July 1962, Khrushchev secretly began to build 42 missile sites in Cuba. In October, an American spy plane discovered the sites. President John F. Kennedy declared that missiles so close to the U.S. mainland were a threat. He demanded their removal and also announced a naval blockade of Cuba.

Castro protested his country’s being used as a pawn in the Cold War:

**PRIMARY SOURCE**

Cuba did not and does not intend to be in the middle of a conflict between the East and the West. Our problem is above all one of national sovereignty. Cuba does not mean to get involved in the Cold War.

*Fidel Castro*, quoted in an interview October 27, 1962

But Castro and Cuba were deeply involved. Kennedy’s demand for the removal of Soviet missiles put the United States and the Soviet Union on a collision course. People around the world feared nuclear war. Fortunately, Khrushchev agreed to remove the missiles in return for a U.S. promise not to invade Cuba.

The resolution of the Cuban Missile Crisis left Castro completely dependent on Soviet support. In exchange for this support, Castro backed Communist revolutions in Latin America and Africa. Soviet aid to Cuba, however, ended abruptly with the breakup of the Soviet Union in 1991. This loss dealt a crippling blow to the Cuban economy. Eventually, Castro loosened state control of Cuba’s economy and sought better relations with other countries.

**Civil War in Nicaragua** Just as the United States had supported Batista in Cuba, it had funded the Nicaraguan dictatorship of *Anastasio Somoza* and his family since 1933. In 1979, Communist Sandinista rebels toppled Somoza’s son. Both the United States and the Soviet Union initially gave aid to the Sandinistas and their leader, *Daniel Ortega* (awr•TAY•guh). The Sandinistas, however, gave assistance to other Marxist rebels in nearby El Salvador. To help the El Salvadoran government fight those rebels, the United States supported Nicaraguan anti-Communist forces called the Contras or *contrarevolucionarios*.

The civil war in Nicaragua lasted more than a decade and seriously weakened the country’s economy. In 1990, President Ortega agreed to hold free elections, the first in the nation’s history. Violeta Chamorro, a reform candidate, defeated him. The Sandinistas were also defeated in elections in 1996 and 2001. However, Ortega won the election in 2006 and returned to power.
Confrontations in the Middle East

As the map on page 550 shows, Cold War confrontations continued to erupt around the globe. The oil-rich Middle East attracted both superpowers.

**Religious and Secular Values Clash in Iran**
Throughout the Middle East, oil industry wealth fueled a growing clash between traditional Islamic values and modern Western materialism. In no country was this cultural conflict more dramatically shown than in Iran (Persia before 1935). After World War II, Iran’s leader, Shah Mohammed Reza Pahlavi (pah•luh•vee), embraced Western governments and wealthy Western oil companies. Iranian nationalists resented these foreign alliances and united under Prime Minister Muhammed Mossadeq (moh•sah•DEHK). They nationalized a British-owned oil company and, in 1953, forced the shah to flee. Fearing Iran might turn to the Soviets for support, the United States helped restore the shah to power.

**The United States Supports Secular Rule**
With U.S. support, the shah westernized his country. By the end of the 1950s, Iran’s capital, Tehran, featured gleaming skyscrapers, foreign banks, and modern factories. Millions of Iranians, however, still lived in extreme poverty. The shah tried to weaken the political influence of Iran’s conservative Muslim leaders, known as ayatollahs (eye•uh• TOH•luhz), who opposed Western influences. The leader of this religious opposition, Ayatollah Ruholla Khomeini (koh• MAY•nee), was living in exile. Spurred by his tape-recorded messages, Iranians rioted in every major city in late 1978. Faced with overwhelming opposition, the shah fled Iran in 1979. A triumphant Khomeini returned to establish an Islamic state and to export Iran’s militant form of Islam.

**Khomeini’s Anti-U.S. Policies**
Strict adherence to Islam ruled Khomeini’s domestic policies. But hatred of the United States, because of U.S. support for the shah, was at the heart of his foreign policy. In 1979, with the ayatollah’s blessing, young Islamic revolutionaries seized the U.S. embassy in Tehran. They took more than 60 Americans hostage and demanded the United States force the shah to face trial. Most hostages remained prisoners for 444 days before being released in 1981.

Khomeini encouraged Muslim radicals elsewhere to overthrow their secular governments. Intended to unify Muslims, this policy heightened tensions between Iran and its neighbor and territorial rival, Iraq. A military leader, Saddam Hussein (hoo•SAYN), governed Iraq as a secular state.

**VIDEO**
Ayatollah Khomeini

**Main Idea**
Analyzing Motives

Why did the United States support the shah of Iran?
War broke out between Iran and Iraq in 1980. The United States secretly gave aid to both sides because it did not want the balance of power in the region to change. The Soviet Union, on the other hand, had long been a supporter of Iraq. A million Iranians and Iraqis died in the war before the UN negotiated a ceasefire in 1988.

**The Superpowers Face Off in Afghanistan** For several years following World War II, Afghanistan maintained its independence from both the neighboring Soviet Union and the United States. In the 1950s, however, Soviet influence in the country began to increase. In the late 1970s, a Muslim revolt threatened to topple Afghanistan’s Communist regime. This revolt led to a Soviet invasion in 1979.

The Soviets expected to prop up the Afghan Communists and quickly withdraw. Instead, just like the United States in Vietnam, the Soviets found themselves stuck. And like the Vietcong in Vietnam, rebel forces outmaneuvered a military superpower. Supplied with American weapons, the Afgan rebels, called mujahideen, or holy warriors, fought on.

The United States had armed the rebels because they considered the Soviet invasion a threat to Middle Eastern oil supplies. President Jimmy Carter warned the Soviets against any attempt to gain control of the Persian Gulf. To protest the invasion, he stopped U.S. grain shipments to the Soviet Union and ordered a U.S. boycott of the 1980 Moscow Olympics. In the 1980s, a new Soviet president, Mikhail Gorbachev, acknowledged the war's devastating costs. He withdrew all Soviet troops by 1989. By then, internal unrest and economic problems were tearing apart the Soviet Union itself.

**MAIN IDEA**

Comparing

In what ways were U.S. involvement in Vietnam and Soviet involvement in Afghanistan similar?

**CONNECT TO TODAY**

**The Taliban**

Islamic religious students, or taliban, were among the mujahideen rebels who fought the Soviet occupation of Afghanistan. Various groups of students loosely organized themselves during a civil war among mujahideen factions that followed the Soviet withdrawal in 1989.

In 1996, one of these groups, called the Taliban, seized power and established an Islamic government. They imposed a repressive rule especially harsh on women, and failed to improve people’s lives. They also gave sanctuary to international Islamic terrorists. In 2001, an anti-terrorist coalition led by the United States drove them from power. However, they have regrouped and have been fighting NATO forces in Afghanistan since 2006.
In the postwar years, the Soviet Union kept a firm grip on its satellite countries in Eastern Europe. These countries were Poland, Czechoslovakia, Hungary, Romania, Bulgaria, Albania, and East Germany. (Yugoslavia had broken away from Soviet control in 1948, although it remained Communist.) The Soviet Union did not allow them to direct and develop their own economies. Instead, it insisted that they develop industries to meet Soviet needs. These policies greatly hampered Eastern Europe’s economic recovery.

More moderate Soviet leaders came to power after Stalin’s death. They allowed satellite countries somewhat more independence, as long as they remained allied with the Soviet Union. During the 1950s and 1960s, however, growing protest movements in Eastern Europe threatened the Soviet grip on the region. Increasing tensions with China also diverted Soviet attention and forces.

After Stalin died in 1953, Nikita Khrushchev became the dominant Soviet leader. In 1956, the shrewd, tough Khrushchev denounced Stalin for jailing and killing loyal Soviet citizens. His speech signaled the start of a policy called destalinization, or purging the country of Stalin’s memory. Workers destroyed monuments of the former dictator. Khrushchev called for “peaceful competition” with capitalist states.

But this new Soviet outlook did not change life in satellite countries. Their resentment at times turned to active protest. In October 1956, for example, the Hungarian army joined protesters to overthrow Hungary’s Soviet-controlled government. Storming through the capital, Budapest, mobs waved Hungarian flags with the Communist hammer-and-sickle emblem cut out. “From the youngest child to the oldest man,” one protester declared, “no one wants communism.”

A popular and liberal Hungarian Communist leader named Imre Nagy formed a new government. Nagy promised free elections and demanded Soviet troops leave. In response, Soviet tanks and infantry entered Budapest in November. Thousands of Hungarian freedom fighters armed themselves with pistols and bottles, but were overwhelmed. A pro-Soviet government was installed, and Nagy was eventually executed.
The Revolt in Czechoslovakia Despite the show of force in Hungary, Khrushchev lost prestige in his country as a result of the Cuban Missile Crisis in 1962. In 1964, party leaders voted to remove him from power. His replacement, Leonid Brezhnev, quickly adopted repressive domestic policies. The party enforced laws to limit such basic human rights as freedom of speech and worship. Government censors controlled what writers could publish. Brezhnev clamped down on those who dared to protest his policies. For example, the secret police arrested many dissidents, including Aleksandr Solzhenitsyn, winner of the 1970 Nobel Prize for literature. They then expelled him from the Soviet Union.

Brezhnev made clear that he would not tolerate dissent in Eastern Europe either. His policy was put to the test in early 1968. At that time, Czech Communist leader Alexander Dubček (DOOB-chehk) loosened controls on censorship to offer his country socialism with “a human face.” This period of reform, when Czechoslovakia’s capital bloomed with new ideas, became known as Prague Spring. However, it did not survive the summer. On August 20, armed forces from the Warsaw Pact nations invaded Czechoslovakia. Brezhnev justified this invasion by claiming the Soviet Union had the right to prevent its satellites from rejecting communism, a policy known as the Brezhnev Doctrine.

The Soviet-Chinese Split While many satellite countries resisted Communist rule, China was committed to communism. In fact, to cement the ties between Communist powers, Mao and Stalin had signed a 30-year treaty of friendship in 1950. Their spirit of cooperation, however, ran out before the treaty did.

The Soviets assumed the Chinese would follow Soviet leadership in world affairs. As the Chinese grew more confident, however, they resented being in Moscow’s shadow. They began to spread their own brand of communism in Africa and other
parts of Asia. In 1959, Khrushchev punished the Chinese by refusing to share nuclear secrets. The following year, the Soviets ended technical economic aid. The Soviet-Chinese split grew so wide that fighting broke out along their common border. After repeated incidents, the two neighbors maintained a fragile peace.

From Brinkmanship to Détente

In the 1970s, the United States and the Soviet Union finally backed away from the aggressive policies of brinkmanship that they had followed during the early postwar years. The superpowers slowly moved to lower tensions.

Brinkmanship Breaks Down The brinkmanship policy followed during the presidencies of Eisenhower, Kennedy, and Johnson led to one terrifying crisis after another. Though these crises erupted all over the world, they were united by a common fear. Nuclear war seemed possible.

In 1960, the U-2 incident prevented a meeting between the United States and the Soviet Union to discuss the buildup of arms on both sides. Then, during the administration of John F. Kennedy in the early 1960s, the Cuban Missile Crisis made the superpowers’ use of nuclear weapons a real possibility. (See page 551.) The crisis ended when Soviet ships turned back to avoid a confrontation at sea. “We’re eyeball to eyeball,” the relieved U.S. Secretary of State Dean Rusk said, “and I think the other fellow just blinked.” But Kennedy’s secretary of defense, Robert McNamara, admitted how close the world had come to disaster:

Tensions remained high. After the assassination of Kennedy in 1963, Lyndon Johnson assumed the presidency. Committed to stopping the spread of communism, President Johnson escalated U.S. involvement in the war in Vietnam.

The United States Turns to Détente Widespread popular protests wracked the United States during the Vietnam War. And the turmoil did not end with U.S. withdrawal. As it tried to heal its internal wounds, the United States backed away from its policy of direct confrontation with the Soviet Union. Détente, a policy of lessening Cold War tensions, replaced brinkmanship under Richard M. Nixon.

President Nixon’s move toward détente grew out of a philosophy known as realpolitik. This term comes from the German word meaning “realistic politics.” In practice, realpolitik meant dealing with other nations in a practical and flexible manner. While the United States continued to try to contain the spread of communism, the two superpowers agreed to pursue détente and to reduce tensions.

**Détente** is a French word meaning “a loosening.”

---

**Vocabulary**

**Détente** is a French word meaning “a loosening.”
superpowers eyed each other suspiciously. “We want the Chinese with us when we sit down and negotiate with the Russians,” Nixon explained.

Three months after visiting Beijing in February 1972, Nixon visited the Soviet Union. After a series of meetings called the Strategic Arms Limitation Talks (SALT), Nixon and Brezhnev signed the SALT I Treaty. This five-year agreement, limited to 1972 levels the number of intercontinental ballistic and submarine-launched missiles each country could have. In 1975, 33 nations joined the United States and the Soviet Union in signing a commitment to détente and cooperation, the Helsinki Accords.

The Collapse of Détente
Under presidents Nixon and Gerald Ford, the United States improved relations with China and the Soviet Union. In the late 1970s, however, President Jimmy Carter was concerned over harsh treatment of protesters in the Soviet Union. This threatened to prevent a second round of SALT negotiations. In 1979, Carter and Brezhnev finally signed the SALT II agreement. When the Soviets invaded Afghanistan later that year, however, the U.S. Congress refused to ratify SALT II. Concerns mounted as more nations, including China and India, began building nuclear arsenals.

Reagan Takes an Anti-Communist Stance A fiercely anti-Communist U.S. president, Ronald Reagan, took office in 1981. He continued to move away from détente. He increased defense spending, putting both economic and military pressure on the Soviets. In 1983, Reagan also announced the Strategic Defense Initiative (SDI), a program to protect against enemy missiles. It was not put into effect but remained a symbol of U.S. anti-Communist sentiment.

Tensions increased as U.S. activities such as arming Nicaragua’s Contras pushed the United States and Soviet Union further from détente. However, a change in Soviet leadership in 1985 brought a new policy toward the United States and the beginnings of a final thaw in the Cold War. Meanwhile, as you will learn in the next chapter, developing countries continued their own struggles for independence.

CONNECT TO TODAY

WRITING A SUMMARY
Look through a major newspaper or newsmagazine for articles on Eastern European countries. Then, write a brief summary of recent developments there.
**Chapter 17 Assessment**

**TERMS & NAMES**
For each term or name below, briefly explain its connection to the restructuring of the postwar world since 1945.

1. containment
2. Cold War
3. Mao Zedong
4. Cultural Revolution
5. 38th parallel
6. Vietnamization
7. Fidel Castro
8. Nikita Krushchev
9. détente
10. SALT

**MAIN IDEAS**

**Cold War: Superpowers Face Off**
Section 1 (pages 531–537)

11. Why did some Americans oppose the Truman Doctrine?
12. How did the Soviet Union respond to the U.S. policy of brinkmanship?

**Communists Take Power in China**
Section 2 (pages 538–541)

13. Who did the superpowers support in the Chinese civil war?
14. What were the results of Mao Zedong’s Great Leap Forward and Cultural Revolution?

**Wars in Korea and Vietnam**
Section 3 (pages 542–547)

15. What effects did the Korean War have on Korea’s land and its people?
16. What difficulties did the U.S. Army face fighting the war in Vietnam?

**The Cold War Divides the World**
Section 4 (pages 548–553)

17. Why did developing nations often align themselves with one or the other superpower?
18. How did the Soviet Union respond to the Bay of Pigs?

**The Cold War Thaws**
Section 5 (pages 554–557)

19. In what ways did Soviet actions hamper Eastern Europe’s economic recovery after World War II?
20. What policies characterized realpolitik?

**CRITICAL THINKING**

1. **USING YOUR NOTES**
   Use a diagram to show superpower Cold War tactics.

2. **COMPARING**
   In what ways were the United States and the Soviet Union more similar than different?

3. **HYPOTHESIZING**
   How might the Cold War have proceeded if the United States had been economically and physically damaged in World War II?

4. **DRAWING CONCLUSIONS**
   Which two Cold War events do you think had the greatest impact on the U.S. decision to pursue détente?

5. **MAKING INFERENCES**
   Why do you think the United States and the Soviet Union chose cooperation in space after years of competition?
On page 530, you considered what policies a nation might follow to gain allies. Now that you have learned more about the Cold War, would your decision change? Discuss your ideas with a small group.

For additional test practice, go online for:
- Diagnostic tests
- Tutorials
- Strategies

Use the chart and your knowledge of world history to answer question 3.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>U.S.</th>
<th>Soviet</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1,010 Intercontinental ballistic missiles</td>
<td>1,398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>640 Submarine-launched missiles</td>
<td>983</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>260 Long-range bombers</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24,700 Nuclear warheads</td>
<td>36,800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0 Antiballistic missile launchers</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 Aircraft carriers</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2,143,955 Armed forces personnel</td>
<td>5,130,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


1. In Ho’s opinion, who was the enemy in the Vietnam War?
   - A. the South Vietnamese
   - B. the changing seasons
   - C. the United States
   - D. the French

2. What purpose might the North Vietnamese have had in broadcasting this poem?
   - A. to show that their political leader was also a poet
   - B. to warn the United States that it would be defeated
   - C. to single out the North Vietnamese people for special attention
   - D. to be used as propaganda to show that North and South were fighting together

3. The chart clearly shows that
   - A. the United States had more troops than the Soviet Union.
   - B. the Soviet Union had clear superiority in the number of ballistic missiles.
   - C. the United States and the Soviet Union were equal in nuclear warheads.
   - D. the Soviet Union had more aircraft carriers.

Use the quotation and your knowledge of world history to answer questions 1 and 2.

The following poem by Ho Chi Minh was broadcast over Hanoi Radio on January 1, 1968.

**PRIMARY SOURCE**

This Spring far outshines the previous Springs,
Of victories throughout the land come happy tidings.
South and North, rushing heroically together, shall
smite the American invaders!
Go Forward!
Total victory shall be ours.

HO CHI MINH, quoted in America and Vietnam

**Interact with History**

On page 530, you considered what policies a nation might follow to gain allies. Now that you have learned more about the Cold War, would your decision change? Discuss your ideas with a small group.

**FOCUS ON WRITING**

Study the information in the infographic on how the Cold War was fought on page 549. Write a two-page persuasive essay on which means was the most successful for the United States and which was most successful for the Soviet Union. Consider the following:
- who received foreign aid
- whether propaganda was successful
- how strong the military alliances were
- what was gained in surrogate wars

**MULTIMEDIA ACTIVITY**

**Creating an Interactive Time Line**

In October 1962, President John F. Kennedy and his advisers had to defuse a potentially devastating nuclear standoff with the Soviet Union. Using books, the Internet, and other resources, create an interactive time line of the crisis. Use graphics software to add maps and photographs. In addition to noting key dates, use the time line to address some of the following:
- Who were members of Kennedy's inner circle during the crisis?
- What did Kennedy say about the events in his first public address to the nation?
- How did Soviet premier Nikita Krushchev approach the crisis in Cuba?
- What details did Americans learn only after the crisis had been resolved?
The Cuban missile crisis was perhaps the most dangerous event of the Cold War period. For several days in October 1962, the United States and the Soviet Union stood on the brink of nuclear war. The crisis began when the Soviet Union sent weapons, including nuclear missiles, to Cuba. It deepened when the United States blockaded Cuba to prevent the Soviets from delivering more missiles. With Soviet ships sailing toward the blockade, a confrontation seemed inevitable. However, at the last moment, the Soviet ships turned back and war was averted.

Explore the development and resolution of the Cuban missile crisis online. You can find a wealth of information, video clips, primary sources, activities, and more at hmhsocialstudies.com.
Crisis Averted?
Watch the video to see how the Cuban missile crisis brought the United States and the Soviet Union to the brink of nuclear war.

Prelude to Crisis
Watch the video to learn about the buildup to the Cuban missile crisis.

Getting Ready for War
Watch the video to see how the missiles in Cuba created tension between the United States and the Soviet Union.

Crisis Averted?
Watch the video to see how the Cuban missile crisis brought the United States and the Soviet Union to the brink of nuclear war.

Lessons Learned
Watch the video to learn about the impact of the Cuban missile crisis.
Previewing Themes

**REVOLUTION** Independence movements swept Africa and Asia as World War II ended. Through both nonviolent and violent means, revolutionaries overthrew existing political systems to create their own nations.

**Geography** Which continent witnessed the greatest number of its countries gain independence?

**POWER AND AUTHORITY** Systems of government shifted for one billion people when colonies in Africa and Asia gained their freedom. New nations struggled to unify their diverse populations. In many cases, authoritarian rule and military dictatorships emerged.

**Geography** According to the time line, which southeast Asian country dealt with dictatorship in the years following independence?

**ECONOMICS** The emergence of new nations from European- and U.S.-ruled colonies brought a change in ownership of vital resources. In many cases, however, new nations struggled to create thriving economies.

**Geography** Which colonial power had enjoyed the resources from the greatest number of regions of the world?

Israel: Birth of a Nation

- 1982: Britain defeats Argentina in war over Falkland Islands.
- 1991: Soviet Union breaks up into 15 republics.
- 2003: United States drives Saddam Hussein from power in Iraq.
How would you build a new nation?

As a political leader of a former colony, you watch with pride as your country becomes independent. However, you know that difficult days lay ahead. You want peace and prosperity for your nation. To accomplish this, however, you need to create a sound government and a strong economy. In addition, food and adequate health care are scarce and many people receive little education. These and other challenges await your immediate attention.

EXAMINING the ISSUES

- What are the first steps you would take? Why?
- What might be the most difficult challenge to overcome?

As a class, discuss these questions. Remember what you have learned about what makes a stable and unified nation. As you read about the emergence of new nations around the world, note what setbacks and achievements they make in their effort to build a promising future.
The Indian Subcontinent Achieves Freedom

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MAIN IDEA</th>
<th>WHY IT MATTERS NOW</th>
<th>TERMS &amp; NAMES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| POWER AND AUTHORITY New nations emerged from the British colony of India. | India today is the largest democracy in the world. | • Congress Party  
• Muslim League  
• Muhammad Ali Jinnah  
• partition | • Jawaharlal Nehru  
• Indira Gandhi  
• Benazir Bhutto |

**SETTING THE STAGE**
After World War II, dramatic political changes began to take place across the world. This was especially the case with regard to the policy of colonialism. Countries that held colonies began to question the practice. After the world struggle against dictatorship, many leaders argued that no country should control another nation. Others questioned the high cost and commitment of holding colonies. Meanwhile, the people of colonized regions continued to press even harder for their freedom. All of this led to independence for one of the largest and most populous colonies in the world: British-held India.

**A Movement Toward Independence**
The British had ruled India for almost two centuries. Indian resistance to Britain, which had existed from the beginning, intensified in 1939, when Britain committed India’s armed forces to World War II without first consulting the colony’s elected representatives. The move left Indian nationalists stunned and humiliated. Indian leader Mohandas Gandhi launched a nonviolent campaign of noncooperation with the British. Officials imprisoned numerous nationalists for this action. In 1942, the British tried to gain the support of the nationalists by promising governmental changes after the war. But the offer did not include Indian independence.

As they intensified their struggle against the British, Indians also struggled with each other. India has long been home to two main religious groups. In the 1940s, India had approximately 350 million Hindus and about 100 million Muslims. The Indian National Congress, or the Congress Party, was India’s national political party. Most members of the Congress Party were Hindus, but the party at times had many Muslim members.

In competition with the Congress Party was the Muslim League, an organization founded in 1906 in India to protect Muslim interests. Members of the league felt that the mainly Hindu Congress Party looked out primarily for Hindu interests. The leader of the Muslim League, Muhammad Ali Jinnah (mü•HAM•ihd-ah•LEE-JINH•uh), insisted that all Muslims resign from the Congress Party. The Muslim League stated that it would never accept Indian independence if it meant rule by the Hindu-dominated Congress Party. Jinnah stated, “The only thing the Muslim has in common with the Hindu is his slavery to the British.”
Freedom Brings Turmoil

When World War II ended, Britain found itself faced with enormous war debts. As a result, British leaders began to rethink the expense of maintaining and governing distant colonies. With India continuing to push for independence, the stage was set for the British to hand over power. However, a key problem emerged: Who should receive the power—Hindus or Muslims?

Partition and Bloodshed Muslims resisted attempts to include them in an Indian government dominated by Hindus. Rioting between the two groups broke out in several Indian cities. In August 1946, four days of clashes in Calcutta left more than 5,000 people dead and more than 15,000 hurt.

British officials soon became convinced that partition, an idea first proposed by India’s Muslims, would be the only way to ensure a safe and secure region. Partition was the term given to the division of India into separate Hindu and Muslim nations. The northwest and eastern regions of India, where most Muslims lived, would become the new nation of Pakistan. (Pakistan, as the map shows, comprised two separate states in 1947: West Pakistan and East Pakistan.)

The British House of Commons passed an act on July 16, 1947, that granted two nations, India and Pakistan, independence in one month’s time. In that short period, more than 500 independent native princes had to decide which nation they would join. The administration of the courts, the military, the railways, and the police—the whole of the civil service—had to be divided down to the last paper clip. Most difficult of all, millions of Indian citizens—Hindus, Muslims, and yet another significant religious group, the Sikhs—had to decide where to go.

GEOGRAPHY SKILLBUILDER: Interpreting Maps
1. Location Which Muslim country, divided into two states, bordered India on the east and the west?
2. Location Which Buddhist countries bordered India to the north and the south?
During the summer of 1947, 10 million people were on the move in the Indian subcontinent. As people scrambled to relocate, violence among the different religious groups erupted. Muslims killed Sikhs who were moving into India. Hindus and Sikhs killed Muslims who were headed into Pakistan. The following passage is representative of the experiences of people in both the Hindu and Muslim communities:

**PRIMARY SOURCE**

All passengers were forced into compartments like sheep and goats. Because of which the heat and suffocating atmosphere was intensified and it was very hard to breathe. In the ladies compartment women and children were in a terrible condition. Women tried in vain to calm down and comfort their children.

If you looked out the window you could see dead bodies lying in the distance. At many places you could see corpses piled on top of each other and no one seemed to have any concern. . . . These were the scenes that made your heart bleed and everybody loudly repented their sins and recited verses asking God’s forgiveness. Every moment seemed to be the most terrifying and agonizing.

ZAHIDA AMJAD ALI, quoted in Freedom, Trauma, Continuities

In all, an estimated 1 million died. “What is there to celebrate?” Gandhi mourned. “I see nothing but rivers of blood.” Gandhi personally went to the Indian capital of Delhi to plead for fair treatment of Muslim refugees. While there, he himself became a victim of the nation’s violence. A Hindu extremist who thought Gandhi too protective of Muslims shot and killed him on January 30, 1948.

**The Battle for Kashmir**

As if partition itself didn’t result in enough bloodshed between India’s Muslims and Hindus, the two groups quickly squared off over the small region of Kashmir. Kashmir lay at the northern point of India next to Pakistan. Although its ruler was Hindu, Kashmir had a majority Muslim population. Shortly after independence, India and Pakistan began battling each other for control of the region. The fighting continued until the United Nations arranged a cease-fire in 1949. The cease-fire left a third of Kashmir under Pakistani control and the rest under Indian control. The two countries continue to fight over the region today.

**Modern India**

With the granting of its independence on August 15, 1947, India became the world’s largest democracy. As the long-awaited hour of India’s freedom approached, Jawaharlal Nehru, the independent nation’s first prime minister, addressed the country’s political leaders:

**PRIMARY SOURCE**

Long years ago, we made a tryst [appointment] with destiny, and now the time comes when we shall redeem our pledge, not wholly or in full measure, but very substantially. At the stroke of the midnight hour, when the world sleeps, India will wake to life and freedom.

JAWAHARLAL NEHRU, speech before the Constituent Assembly, August 14, 1947
Jawaharlal Nehru
1889–1964

Nehru's father was an influential attorney, and so the first prime minister of India grew up amid great wealth. As a young man, he lived and studied in England. “In my likes and dislikes I was perhaps more an Englishman than an Indian,” he once remarked.

Upon returning to India, however, he became moved by the horrible state in which many of his fellow Indians lived. “A new picture of India seemed to rise before me,” he recalled, “naked, starving, crushed, and utterly miserable.” From then on, he devoted his life to improving conditions in his country.

Nehru Leads India

Nehru served as India’s leader for its first 17 years of independence. He had been one of Gandhi’s most devoted followers. Educated in Britain, Nehru won popularity among all groups in India. He emphasized democracy, unity, and economic modernization.

Nehru used his leadership to move India forward. He led other newly independent nations of the world in forming an alliance of countries that were neutral in the Cold War conflicts between the United States and the Soviet Union. On the home front, Nehru called for a reorganization of the states by language. He also pushed for industrialization and sponsored social reforms. He tried to elevate the status of the lower castes, or those at the bottom of society, and help women gain the rights promised by the constitution.

Troubled Times

Nehru died in 1964. His death left the Congress Party with no leader strong enough to hold together the many political factions that had emerged with India’s independence. Then, in 1966, Nehru’s daughter, Indira Gandhi, was chosen prime minister. After a short spell out of office, she was reelected in 1980.

Although she ruled capably, Gandhi faced many challenges, including the growing threat from Sikh extremists who themselves wanted an independent state. The Golden Temple at Amritsar stood as the religious center for the Sikhs. From there, Sikh nationalists ventured out to attack symbols of Indian authority. In June 1984, Indian army troops overran the Golden Temple. They killed about 500 Sikhs and destroyed sacred property. In retaliation, Sikh bodyguards assigned to Indira Gandhi gunned her down. This violent act set off another murderous frenzy, causing the deaths of thousands of Sikhs.

In the wake of the murder of Indira Gandhi, her son, Rajiv (rah•JEV) Gandhi, took over as prime minister. His party, however, lost its power in 1989 because of accusations of widespread corruption. In 1991, while campaigning again for prime minister near the town of Madras, Rajiv was killed by a bomb. Members of a group opposed to his policies claimed responsibility.

Twenty-First Century Challenges

India's prime minister, Manmohan Singh, is a Sikh—the first non-Hindu to hold the job. He and his nation face a number of problems. Simmering religious tensions still occasionally boil over in episodes of violence and reprisal. Also, India’s population continues to increase and is expected to surpass that of China by 2035. More acutely, Maoist rebels in the nation’s eastern states continue to pose a serious military threat to the government’s authority.

Even more troubling are India’s tense relations with its neighbor Pakistan, and the fact that both have become nuclear powers. In 1974, India exploded a “peaceful” nuclear device. For the next 24 years, the nation quietly worked on building up its nuclear capability. In 1998, Indian officials conducted five underground nuclear tests. Meanwhile, the Pakistanis had been building their own nuclear program. Shortly after India conducted its nuclear tests, Pakistan demonstrated that it, too, had nuclear weapons. The presence of these weapons in the hands of such bitter
enemies and neighbors has become a matter of great international concern, especially in light of their continuing struggle over Kashmir:

**PRIMARY SOURCE**
Now that India and Pakistan have tested nuclear weapons . . . [There is] fear that a remote but savage ethnic and religious conflict could deteriorate into a nuclear exchange with global consequences. India and Pakistan must learn to talk to each other and move toward a more trusting relationship.


In 2002, the two nations came close to war over Kashmir. However, in 2003 a peace process began to ease tension.

**Pakistan Copes with Freedom**

The history of Pakistan since independence has been no less turbulent than that of India. Pakistan actually began as two separate and divided states, East Pakistan and West Pakistan. East Pakistan lay to the east of India, West Pakistan to the northwest. These regions were separated by more than 1,000 miles of Indian territory. In culture, language, history, geography, economics, and ethnic background, the two regions were very different. Only the Islamic religion united them.

**Civil War** From the beginning, the two regions of Pakistan experienced strained relations. While East Pakistan had the larger population, it was often ignored by West Pakistan, home to the central government. In 1970, a giant cyclone and tidal wave struck East Pakistan and killed an estimated 266,000 residents. While international aid poured into Pakistan, the government in West Pakistan did not quickly transfer that aid to East Pakistan. Demonstrations broke out in East Pakistan, and protesters called for an end to all ties with West Pakistan.

---

**A Turbulent History**

**Pakistan**

1977 **Ali Bhutto**

Prime Minister Ali Bhutto of Pakistan is deposed in a coup led by General Zia. Bhutto is later arrested for having ordered the assassination of a political opponent.

1988 **General Zia**

President of Pakistan, dies in a mysterious plane crash.

1999 **General Pervez Musharraf**

Siezes control of government in a military coup.

2007 **Benazir Bhutto**

Ali Bhutto’s daughter also comes to a violent end, the victim of a suicide bomber while campaigning for parliamentary elections.

**India**

1984 **Indira Gandhi**

Indira Gandhi is gunned down by two of her Sikh bodyguards. Her murder is in retaliation for an attack she ordered on a Sikh temple.

1991 **Rajiv Gandhi**

Rajiv Gandhi is killed by a bomb while campaigning. The bomb is carried by a woman opposed to Gandhi’s policies.

2008 **Ten gunmen attack the Indian city of Mumbai, in which more than 170 are killed. The attack was planned in and staged from Pakistan, which raised tensions between the two nations.**
On March 26, 1971, East Pakistan declared itself an independent nation called Bangladesh. A civil war followed between Bangladesh and Pakistan. Eventually, Indian forces stepped in and sided with Bangladesh. Pakistan forces surrendered. More than 1 million people died in the war. Pakistan lost about one-seventh of its area and about one-half of its population to Bangladesh.

**A Pattern of Instability** Muhammad Ali Jinnah, the first governor-general of Pakistan, died shortly after independence. Beginning in 1958, Pakistan went through a series of military coups. Ali Bhutto took control of the country following the civil war. A military coup in 1977 led by General Zia removed Bhutto, who was later executed for crimes allegedly committed while in office.

After Zia’s death, Bhutto’s daughter, **Benazir Bhutto**, was twice elected prime minister. However, she was removed from office in 1996. Nawaz Sharif became prime minister after the 1997 elections. In 1999, army leaders led by General Pervez Musharraf ousted Sharif in yet another coup and imposed military rule over Pakistan. By 2007, however, he faced growing political opposition at home. Meanwhile, Benazir Bhutto had returned from exile abroad, only to be assassinated in December 2007. By August 2008, Musharraf had resigned, with Bhutto’s widower, Asif Ali Zadari, winning the presidency the following month.

**Bangladesh and Sri Lanka Struggle**

Meanwhile, the newly created nations of Bangladesh and Sri Lanka struggled with enormous problems of their own in the decades following independence.

**Bangladesh Faces Many Problems** The war with Pakistan had ruined the economy of Bangladesh and fractured its communications system. Rebuilding the shattered country seemed like an overwhelming task. Sheik Mujibur Rahman became the nation’s first prime minister. He soon took over all authority and declared Bangladesh a one-party state. In August 1975, military leaders assassinated him.

Over the years Bangladesh has attempted with great difficulty to create a more democratic form of government. Charges of election fraud and government corruption are common. In recent years, however, the government has become more stable. The latest elections were held in December 2008, and Hasina Wazed took over as the nation’s prime minister.

Bangladesh also has had to cope with crippling natural disasters. Bangladesh is a low-lying nation that is subject to many cyclones and tidal waves. Massive storms...
regularly flood the land, ruin crops and homes, and take lives. A cyclone in 1991 killed approximately 139,000 people. Such catastrophes, along with a rapidly growing population, have put much stress on the country’s economy. Bangladesh is one of the poorest nations in the world. The per capita income there is about $360 per year.

**Civil Strife Grips Sri Lanka** Another newly freed and deeply troubled country on the Indian subcontinent is Sri Lanka, a small, teardrop-shaped island nation just off the southeast coast of India. Formerly known as Ceylon, Sri Lanka gained its independence from Britain in February of 1948. Two main ethnic groups dominate the nation. Three-quarters of the population are Sinhalese, who are Buddhists. A fifth are Tamils, a Hindu people of southern India and northern Sri Lanka.

Sri Lanka’s recent history has also been one of turmoil. A militant group of Tamils has long fought an armed struggle for a separate Tamil nation. Since 1981, thousands of lives have been lost. In an effort to end the violence, Rajiv Gandhi and the Sri Lankan president tried to reach an accord in 1987. The agreement called for Indian troops to enter Sri Lanka and help disarm Tamil rebels. This effort was unsuccessful, and Indian troops left in 1990. But in 2009, a government military offensive decisively defeated Tamil separatist forces.

As difficult as post-independence has been for the countries of the Indian subcontinent, the same can be said for former colonies elsewhere. As you will read in the next section, a number of formerly held territories in Southeast Asia faced challenges as they became independent nations.

### TERMS & NAMES
1. For each term or name, write a sentence explaining its significance.
   - Congress Party
   - Muslim League
   - Muhammad Ali Jinnah
   - partition
   - Jawaharlal Nehru
   - Indira Gandhi
   - Benazir Bhutto

### USING YOUR NOTES
2. What tragic connection did many of the leaders share?

### MAIN IDEAS
3. Why did British officials partition India into India and Pakistan?
4. In what way did Pakistan also undergo a partition?
5. What is the main cause today of civil strife in Sri Lanka?

### CRITICAL THINKING & WRITING
6. **SYNTHESIZING** Why might India’s political and economic success be so crucial to the future of democracy in Asia?
7. **ANALYZING ISSUES** How did religious and cultural differences create problems for newly emerging nations?
8. **DRAWING CONCLUSIONS** Why has the conflict between India and Pakistan over Kashmir become such a concern to the world today?
9. **WRITING ACTIVITY** **POWER AND AUTHORITY** Write several paragraphs detailing the problems shared by leaders of India and Pakistan.

### CONNECT TO TODAY
**CREATING A GRAPHIC**
Research the current percentages of religions in India, Pakistan, Bangladesh, or Sri Lanka. Create a graphic of your choosing to illustrate your findings.
Southeast Asian Nations
Gain Independence

MAIN IDEA
ECONOMICS Former colonies in Southeast Asia worked to build new governments and economies.

WHY IT MATTERS NOW
The power and influence of the Pacific Rim nations are likely to expand during the next century.

TERMS & NAMES
• Ferdinand Marcos
• Corazón Aquino
• Aung San Suu Kyi
• Sukarno
• Suharto

SETTING THE STAGE
World War II had a significant impact on the colonized groups of Southeast Asia. During the war, the Japanese seized much of Southeast Asia from the European nations that had controlled the region for many years. The Japanese conquest helped the people of Southeast Asia see that the Europeans were far from invincible. When the war ended, and the Japanese themselves had been forced out, many Southeast Asians refused to live again under European rule. They called for and won their independence, and a series of new nations emerged.

The Philippines Achieves Independence
The Philippines became the first of the world’s colonies to achieve independence following World War II. The United States granted the Philippines independence in 1946, on the anniversary of its own Declaration of Independence, the Fourth of July.

The United States and the Philippines
The Filipinos’ immediate goals were to rebuild the economy and to restore the capital of Manila. The city had been badly damaged in World War II. The United States had promised the Philippines $620 million in war damages. However, the U.S. government insisted that Filipinos approve the Bell Act in order to get the money. This act would establish free trade between the United States and the Philippines for eight years, to be followed by gradually increasing tariffs. Filipinos were worried that American businesses would exploit the resources and environment of the Philippines. In spite of this concern, Filipinos approved the Bell Act and received their money.

The United States also wanted to maintain its military presence in the Philippines. With the onset of the Cold War (see Chapter 17), the United States needed to protect its interests in Asia. Both China and the Soviet Union were rivals of the United States at the time. Both were Pacific powers with bases close to allies of the United States and to resources vital to U.S. interests. Therefore, the United States demanded a 99-year lease on its military and naval bases in the Philippines. The bases, Clark Air Force Base and Subic Bay Naval Base near Manila, proved to be critical to the United States later in the staging of the Korean and Vietnam wars.

Use the graphic organizer online to take notes on the major challenges that Southeast Asian nations faced after independence.
These military bases also became the single greatest source of conflict between the United States and the Philippines. Many Filipinos regarded the bases as proof of American imperialism. Later agreements shortened the terms of the lease, and the United States gave up both bases in 1992.

After World War II, the Philippine government was still almost completely dependent on the United States economically and politically. The Philippine government looked for ways to lessen this dependency. It welcomed Japanese investments. It also broadened its contacts with Southeast Asian neighbors and with nonaligned nations.

From Marcos to Ramos Ferdinand Marcos was elected president of the Philippines in 1965. The country suffered under his rule from 1966 to 1986. Marcos imposed an authoritarian regime and stole millions of dollars from the public treasury. Although the constitution limited Marcos to eight years in office, he got around this restriction by imposing martial law from 1972 to 1981. Two years later, his chief opponent, Benigno Aquino, Jr., was assassinated as he returned from the United States to the Philippines, lured by the promise of coming elections.

In the elections of 1986, Aquino’s widow, Corazón Aquino, challenged Marcos. Aquino won decisively, but Marcos refused to acknowledge her victory. When he declared himself the official winner, a public outcry resulted. He was forced into exile in Hawaii, where he later died. In 1995, the Philippines succeeded in recovering $475 million Marcos had stolen from his country and deposited in Swiss banks.
Aung San Suu Kyi
1945–

Aung San Suu Kyi won the Nobel Peace Prize in 1991 for her efforts to establish democracy in Myanmar. She could not accept the award in person, however, because she was still under house arrest.

The Nobel Prize committee said that in awarding her the peace prize, it intended:

**to show its support for the many people throughout the world who are striving to attain democracy, human rights, and ethnic conciliation by peaceful means. Suu Kyi's struggle is one of the most extraordinary examples of civil courage in Asia in recent decades.**

As she took the oath of office, Aquino promised to usher in a more open and democratic form of government.

**PRIMARY SOURCE**
I pledge a government dedicated to upholding truth and justice, morality and decency in government, freedom and democracy. I ask our people not to relax, but to maintain more vigilance in this, our moment of triumph. The Motherland can't thank them enough, yet we all realize that more is required of each of us to achieve a truly just society for our people. This is just the beginning.

**CORAZÓN AQUINO**, inaugural speech, Feb. 24, 1986

During Aquino’s presidency, the Philippine government ratified a new constitution. It also negotiated successfully with the United States to end the lease on the U.S. military bases. In 1992, Fidel V. Ramos succeeded Aquino as president. Ramos was restricted by the constitution to a single six-year term. The single-term limit is intended to prevent the abuse of power that occurred during Marcos’s 20-year rule.

**The Government Battles Rebels** Since gaining its independence, the Philippines has had to battle its own separatist group. For centuries, the southern part of the country has been a stronghold of Muslims known as the Moros. In the early 1970s, a group of Moros formed the Moro National Liberation Front (MNLF). They began an armed struggle for independence from Philippine rule.

In 1996, the government and rebels agreed to a cease-fire, and the Moros were granted an autonomous region in the southern Philippines. The agreement, however, did not satisfy a splinter group of the MNLF called Abu Sayyaf. These rebels have continued fighting the government, often using terror tactics to try to achieve their goals. In 2000, they kidnapped 21 people including foreign tourists. While the group eventually was freed, subsequent kidnappings and bombings by Abu Sayyaf have killed and injured hundreds of people. The current Philippines president, Gloria Macapagal Arroyo, has launched an all-out military response to this group. The United States has provided military assistance to the government’s efforts.

**British Colonies Gain Independence**

Britain’s timetable for granting independence to its Southeast Asian colonies depended on local circumstances. Burma had been pressing for independence from Britain for decades. It became a sovereign republic in 1948. In 1989, Burma was officially named Myanmar (myahn•MAH), its name in the Burmese language.

**Burma Experiences Turmoil** After gaining freedom, Burma suffered one political upheaval after another. Its people struggled between repressive military governments and pro-democracy forces. Conflict among Communists and ethnic minorities also disrupted the nation. In 1962, General Ne Win set up a military government, with the goal of making Burma a socialist state. Although Ne Win stepped down in 1988, the military continued to rule repressively.

In 1988, **Aung San Suu Kyi** (owng sahn soo chee) returned to Burma after many years abroad. She is the
daughter of Aung San, a leader of the Burmese nationalists’ army killed years before by political rivals. Aung San Suu Kyi became active in the newly formed National League for Democracy. For her pro-democracy activities, she was placed under house arrest for six years by the government. In the 1990 election—the country’s first multiparty election in 30 years—the National League for Democracy won 80 percent of the seats. The military government refused to recognize the election, and it kept Aung San Suu Kyi under house arrest. She was finally released in 1995, only to be placed under house arrest again in 2000. Freed in 2002, she was detained again in 2003. In June 2007, Aung San Suu Kyi’s house arrest was extended for another year.

**Malaysia and Singapore** During World War II, the Japanese conquered the Malay Peninsula, formerly ruled by the British. The British returned to the peninsula after the Japanese defeat in 1945. They tried, unsuccessfully, to organize the different peoples of Malaya into one state. They also struggled to put down a Communist uprising. Ethnic groups resisted British efforts to unite their colonies on the peninsula and in the northern part of the island of Borneo. Malays were a slight majority on the peninsula, while Chinese were the largest group on the southern tip, the island of Singapore.

In 1957, officials created the Federation of Malaya from Singapore, Malaya, Sarawak, and Sabah. The two regions—on the Malay Peninsula and on northern Borneo—were separated by 400 miles of ocean. In 1965, Singapore separated from the federation and became an independent city-state. The federation, consisting of Malaya, Sarawak, and Sabah, became known as Malaysia. A coalition of many ethnic groups maintained steady economic progress in Malaysia.

Singapore, which has one of the busiest ports in the world, has become an extremely prosperous nation. Lee Kuan Yew ruled Singapore as prime minister from 1959 to 1990. Under his guidance, Singapore emerged as a banking center as well as a center of trade. It had a standard of living far higher than any of its Southeast Asian neighbors. In 1997, the Geneva World Economic Forum listed the world’s strongest economies. Singapore topped the list. It was followed, in order, by Hong Kong, the United States, Canada, New Zealand, Switzerland, and Great Britain.
Indonesia Gains Independence from the Dutch

Like members of other European nations, the Dutch, who ruled the area of Southeast Asia known as Indonesia, saw their colonial empire crumble with the onset of World War II. The Japanese conquered the region and destroyed the Dutch colonial order. When the war ended and the defeated Japanese were forced to leave, the people of Indonesia moved to establish a free nation.

Sukarno Leads the Independence Movement Leading the effort to establish an independent Indonesia was Sukarno (soo•KAHR•noh), known only by his one name. In August 1945, two days after the Japanese surrendered, Sukarno proclaimed Indonesia’s independence and named himself president. A guerrilla army backed him. The Dutch, supported initially by Britain and the United States, attempted to regain control of Indonesia. But after losing the support of the United Nations and the United States, the Dutch agreed to grant Indonesia its independence in 1949.

The new Indonesia became the world’s fourth most populous nation. It consisted of more than 13,600 islands, with 300 different ethnic groups, 250 languages, and most of the world’s major religions. It contained the world’s largest Islamic population. Sukarno, who took the official title of “life-time president,” attempted to guide this diverse nation in a parliamentary democracy.

Instability and Turmoil Sukarno’s efforts to build a stable democratic nation were unsuccessful. He was not able to manage Indonesia’s economy, and the country slid downhill rapidly. Foreign banks refused to lend money to Indonesia and inflation occasionally soared as high as one thousand percent. In 1965, a group of junior army officers attempted a coup. A general named Suharto (suh•HAHR•toh) put down the rebellion. He then seized power for himself and began a bloodbath in which 500,000 to 1 million Indonesians were killed.

Suharto, officially named president in 1967, turned Indonesia into a police state and imposed frequent periods of martial law. Outside observers heavily criticized him for his annexation of nearby East Timor in 1976 and for human rights violations there. (See the map on page 571.) Suharto’s government also showed little tolerance for religious freedoms.

Bribery and corruption became commonplace. The economy improved under Suharto for a while but from 1997 through 1998 the nation suffered one of the worst financial crises in its history. Growing unrest over both government repression and a crippling economic crisis prompted Suharto to step down in 1998. While turmoil continued to grip the country, it moved slowly toward democracy. The daughter of Sukarno, Megawati Sukarnoputri, was elected to the presidency in 2001.

Upon taking office, the new president hailed the virtues of democracy and urged her fellow Indonesians to do what they could to maintain such a form of government:

**PRIMARY SOURCE**

Democracy requires sincerity and respect for the rules of the game. Beginning my duty, I urge all groups to sincerely and openly accept the outcome of the democratic process . . . . In my opinion, respect for the people’s voice, sincerity in accepting it, and respect for the rules of game are the main pillars of democracy which we will further develop. I urge all Indonesians to look forward to the future and unite to improve the life and our dignity as a nation.

MEGAWATI SUKARNOPUTRI, July 23, 2001

**Vocabulary**

A coup is the sudden overthrow of a government by a small group of people.
Indonesia’s current president, Susilo Bambang Yudhoyono, faces enormous challenges, including ethnic strife and government corruption.

**East Timor Wins Independence** As Indonesia worked to overcome its numerous obstacles, it lost control of East Timor. Indonesian forces had ruled the land with brutal force since Suharto seized it in the 1970s. The East Timorese, however, never stopped pushing to regain their freedom. Jose Ramos Horta, an East Timorese independence campaigner, won the 1996 Nobel Peace Prize (along with East Timor’s Roman Catholic bishop) for his efforts to gain independence for the region without violence.

In a United Nations-sponsored referendum held in August 1999, the East Timorese voted for independence. The election angered pro-Indonesian forces. They ignored the referendum results and went on a bloody rampage. They killed hundreds and forced thousands into refugee camps in West Timor, which is a part of Indonesia. UN intervention forces eventually brought peace to the area. In 2002 East Timor celebrated independence. In May 2007, Jose Ramos Horta won the presidency. Today, President Horta faces the challenges of developing the resources of his young nation.

As on the Indian subcontinent, violence and struggle were part of the transition in Southeast Asia from colonies to free nations. The same would be true in Africa, where numerous former colonies shed European rule and created independent countries in the wake of World War II.

**TERMS & NAMES**
- Ferdinand Marcos
- Corazón Aquino
- Aung San Suu Kyi
- Sukarno
- Suharto

**USING YOUR NOTES**
2. Which nation faced the greatest challenges? Why?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nation</th>
<th>Challenges Following Independence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Philippines</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indonesia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**MAIN IDEAS**
3. Why did the retention of U.S. military bases in the Philippines so anger Filipinos?
4. What was the outcome of the 1990 Myanmar election? How did the government respond?
5. How did Suharto come to power in Indonesia?

**CRITICAL THINKING & WRITING**
6. **CLARIFYING** How did World War II play a role in the eventual decolonization of Southeast Asia?
7. **MAKING INFERENCES** Why do you think that the United States demanded a 99-year lease on military and naval bases in the Philippines?
8. **COMPARING AND CONTRASTING** What was similar and different about the elections that brought defeat to the ruling governments in the Philippines and in Burma?
9. **WRITING ACTIVITY** **ECONOMICS** Write a two-paragraph expository essay contrasting Singapore’s economy with others in Southeast Asia.

**CONNECT TO TODAY** **CREATING A TELEVISION NEWS SCRIPT**
Locate several of the most recent news articles about one of the countries discussed in this section. Combine the stories into a brief television news script and present it to the class.
Changing Times in Southeast Asia

As you have read, many countries in Southeast Asia have undergone revolutionary changes in their political and social organization. The region continues to struggle with its past and to face new challenges, but democratic reforms are becoming more common.

The past and present exist side by side throughout much of Southeast Asia. For an increasing number of Southeast Asians, housing, transportation, even purchasing food are a mixture of old and new. These images explore the differences between traditional and modern, rich and poor, past and present.

Transportation

The water buffalo-drawn cart (shown above) is a common sight in rural Thailand. It is a mode of transport that reaches deep into the past.

In Bangkok, Thailand (shown below)—with its cars, motorcycles, and public buses—transportation is a very different thing. These distinctly past and present modes of transportation symbolize the changes many Southeast Asian countries are facing.

Housing

The luxury apartment building (background) in Jakarta, Indonesia, towers over the shabby and polluted slum of Muarabaru (foreground). Indonesia declared its independence in 1945, but was not recognized by the United Nations until 1950. Since independence, Indonesians have enjoyed relative economic prosperity, but bridging the gap between rich and poor is an issue that faces Indonesia and much of Southeast Asia.
SOUTHEAST ASIA

Geography
• Eleven countries are generally referred to as Southeast Asia: Brunei, Cambodia, East Timor, Indonesia, Laos, Malaysia, Myanmar, the Philippines, Singapore, Thailand, and Vietnam.

Population
• About 9 percent of the world’s population lives in Southeast Asia.
• Indonesia is the world’s fourth most populous country, behind China, India, and the United States.

Economics
• Ten Southeast Asian nations—Indonesia, Malaysia, the Philippines, Singapore, Brunei, Cambodia, Laos, Vietnam, Myanmar, and Thailand—make up a trading alliance known as the Association of South-East Asian Nations (ASEAN)

▲ ▼
Markets
As the post-colonial economies of Southeast Asia grow, traditional markets, like the floating market in Thailand (shown below), give way to the modern convenience of stores with prepackaged foods, like this street-side store (above) in Vietnam.

▲ ▼
Transportation
The water buffalo-drawn cart (shown above) is a common sight in rural Thailand. It is a mode of transport that reaches deep into the past. In Bangkok, Thailand (shown below)—with its cars, motorcycles, and public buses—transportation is a very different thing. These distinctly past and present modes of transportation symbolize the changes many Southeast Asian countries are facing.

Connect to Today
2. Forming and Supporting Opinions Are the issues facing Southeast Asians discussed here also a concern for Americans? Why or why not?
Throughout the first half of the 20th century, Africa resembled little more than a European outpost. As you recall, the nations of Europe had marched in during the late 1800s and colonized much of the continent. Like the diverse groups living in Asia, however, the many different peoples of Africa were unwilling to return to colonial domination after World War II. And so, in the decades following the great global conflict, they, too, won their independence from foreign rule and went to work building new nations.

**Achieving Independence**

The African push for independence actually began in the decades before World War II. French-speaking Africans and West Indians began to express their growing sense of black consciousness and pride in traditional Africa. They formed the Negritude movement, a movement to celebrate African culture, heritage, and values.

When World War II erupted, African soldiers fought alongside Europeans to “defend freedom.” This experience made them unwilling to accept colonial domination when they returned home. The war had changed the thinking of Europeans too. Many began to question the cost, as well as the morality, of maintaining colonies abroad. These and other factors helped African colonies gain their freedom throughout the 1950s and 1960s.

The ways in which African nations achieved independence, however, differed across the continent. In Chapter 11, you learned that European nations employed two basic styles of government in colonial Africa—direct and indirect. Under indirect rule, local officials did much of the governing and colonists enjoyed limited self-rule. As a result, these colonies generally experienced an easier transition to independence. For colonies under direct rule, in which foreigners governed at all levels and no self-rule existed, independence came with more difficulty. Some colonies even had to fight wars of liberation, as European settlers refused to surrender power to African nationalist groups.

No matter how they gained their freedom, however, most new African nations found the road to a strong and stable nation to be difficult. They had to deal with everything from creating a new government to establishing a postcolonial economy. Many new countries were also plagued by great ethnic strife. In colonizing Africa, the Europeans had created artificial borders that had little to
do with the areas where ethnic groups actually lived. While national borders separated people with similar cultures, they also enclosed traditional enemies who began fighting each other soon after the Europeans left. For many African nations, all of this led to instability, violence, and an overall struggle to deal with their newly gained independence.

Ghana Leads the Way

The British colony of the Gold Coast became the first African colony south of the Sahara to achieve independence. Following World War II, the British in the Gold Coast began making preparations. For example, they allowed more Africans to be nominated to the Legislative Council. However, the Africans wanted full freedom. The leader of their largely nonviolent movement was Kwame Nkrumah (KWAH•mee-uhn•KROO•muh). Starting in 1947, he worked to liberate the Gold Coast from the British. Nkrumah organized strikes and boycotts and was often imprisoned by the British government. Ultimately, his efforts were successful.

On receiving its independence in 1957, the Gold Coast took the name Ghana. This name honored a famous West African kingdom of the past. Nkrumah became Ghana’s first prime minister and later its president-for-life. Nkrumah pushed through new roads, new schools, and expanded health facilities. These costly projects soon crippled the country. His programs for industrialization, health and welfare, and expanded educational facilities showed good intentions. However, the expense of the programs undermined the economy and strengthened his opposition.

In addition, Nkrumah was often criticized for spending too much time on Pan-African efforts and neglecting economic problems in his own country. He dreamed of a “United States of Africa.” In 1966, while Nkrumah was in China, the army and police in Ghana seized power. Since then, the country has shifted back and forth between civilian and military rule and has struggled for economic stability. In 2000, Ghana held its first open elections.

Fighting for Freedom

In contrast to Ghana, nations such as Kenya and Algeria had to take up arms against their European rulers in order to ultimately win their freedom.

Kenya Claims Independence The British ruled Kenya, and many British settlers resisted Kenyan independence—especially those who had taken over prize farmland in the northern highlands of the country. They were forced to accept African self-government as a result of two developments. One was the strong leadership of Kenyan nationalist Jomo Kenyatta. The second was the rise of a group known as the Mau Mau (MOW mow). This was a secret society made up mostly of native Kenyan farmers forced out of the highlands by the British.

Using guerrilla war tactics, the Mau Mau sought to push the white farmers into leaving the highlands. Kenyatta claimed to have no connection to the Mau Mau. However, he refused to condemn the organization. As a result, the
1. Place Which countries in Africa were already independent in 1955?
2. Location In what decade did most of the African nations gain their independence?
British imprisoned him for nearly a decade. By the time the British granted Kenya independence in 1963, more than 10,000 Africans and 100 settlers had been killed.

Kenyatta became president of the new nation. He worked hard to unite the country’s various ethnic and language groups. Kenyatta died in 1978. His successor, Daniel arap Moi, was less successful in governing the country. Moi faced increasing opposition to his one-party rule. Adding to the nation’s woes were corruption in Moi’s government and ethnic conflicts that killed hundreds and left thousands homeless. Moi stepped down in 2002, and a new party gained power through free elections.

**Algeria Struggles with Independence** France’s principal overseas colony, Algeria, had a population of one million French colonists and nine million Arabs and Berber Muslims. After World War II, the French colonists refused to share political power with the native Algerians. In 1954, the Algerian National Liberation Front, or FLN, announced its intention to fight for independence. The French sent about half a million troops into Algeria to fight the FLN. Both sides committed atrocities. The FLN prevailed, and Algeria gained its independence in July 1962.

The leader of the FLN, **Ahmed Ben Bella**, became first president of the newly independent Algeria. He attempted to make Algeria a socialist state, but was overthrown in 1965 by his army commander. From 1965 until 1988, Algerians tried unsuccessfully to modernize and industrialize the nation. Unemployment and dissatisfaction with the government contributed to the rise of religious fundamentalists who wanted to make Algeria an Islamic state. The chief Islamic party, the Islamic Salvation Front (FIS), won local and parliamentary elections in 1990 and 1991. However, the ruling government and army refused to accept the election results. As a result, a civil war broke out between Islamic militants and the government. The war continues, on and off, to this day.

**Civil War in Congo and Angola**

Civil war also plagued the new nations of Congo and Angola. Congo’s problems lay in its corrupt dictatorship and hostile ethnic groups. Meanwhile, Angola’s difficulties stemmed from intense political differences.

**Freedom and Turmoil for Congo** Of all the European possessions in Africa, one of the most exploited was the Belgian Congo. Belgium had ruthlessly plundered the colony’s rich resources of rubber and copper. In addition, Belgian officials ruled with a harsh hand and provided the population with no social services. They also had made no attempt to prepare the people for independence. Not surprisingly, Belgium’s granting of independence in 1960 to the Congo (known as Zaire from 1971 to 1997) resulted in upheaval.

After years of civil war, an army officer, Colonel Joseph Mobutu, later known as **Mobutu Sese Seko** (moh•BOO•too-SAY•say-SAY•koh), seized power in 1965. For 32 years, Mobutu ruled the country that he renamed Zaire. He maintained control though a combination of force, one-party rule, and gifts to supporters. Mobutu successfully withstood several armed rebellions. He was finally overthrown in 1997 by rebel leader Laurent Kabila after months of civil war. Shortly thereafter, the country was renamed the Democratic Republic of the Congo.

On becoming president, Kabila promised a transition to democracy and free elections by April 1999. Such elections never came. By 2000 the nation endured another round of civil war, as three separate rebel groups sought to overthrow Kabila’s autocratic rule. In January 2001, a bodyguard assassinated Kabila.
In East Africa, both Rwanda and Darfur, a region in Sudan, have suffered from campaigns of genocide.

In the spring of 1994, the Rwandan president, a Hutu, died in a suspicious plane crash. In the months that followed, Hutus slaughtered about 1 million Tutsis before Tutsi rebels put an end to the killings. The United Nations set up a tribunal to punish those responsible for the worst acts of genocide.

In 2004, Sudanese government forces and pro-government militias began killing villagers in Darfur as part of a campaign against rebel forces. In 2007, President Bush announced fresh sanctions against Sudan.

Almost immediately, the Communist-leaning MPLA (Popular Movement for the Liberation of Angola) declared itself the new nation’s rightful government. This led to a prolonged civil war, as various rebel groups fought the government and each other for power. Each group received help from outside sources. The MPLA was assisted by some 50,000 Cuban troops and by the Soviet Union. The major opposition to the MPLA was UNITA (National Union for the Total Independence of Angola), to which South Africa and the United States lent support. For decades, the two sides agreed to and then abandoned various cease-fire agreements. In 2002, the warring sides agreed to a peace accord, and the long civil war came to an end.

As the colonies of Africa worked to become stable nations, the new nation of Israel was emerging in the Middle East. Its growth, as you will read in the next section, upset many in the surrounding Arab world and prompted one of the longest-running conflicts in modern history.
Conflicts in the Middle East

MAIN IDEA

Power and Authority

Division of Palestine after World War II made the Middle East a hotbed of competing nationalist movements.

Why It Matters Now

Conflicts in the Middle East threaten the stability of the world today.

Terms & Names

- Anwar Sadat
- Golda Meir
- PLO
- Yasir Arafat
- Camp David Accords
- intifada
- Oslo Peace Accords

Setting the Stage

In the years following World War II, the Jewish people won what for so long had eluded them: their own state. The gaining of their homeland along the eastern coast of the Mediterranean Sea, however, came at a heavy price. A Jewish state was unwelcome in this mostly Arab region, and the resulting hostility led to a series of wars. Perhaps no Arab people, however, have been more opposed to a Jewish state than the Palestinians, who claim that much of the Jewish land belongs to them.

Israel Becomes a State

The land called Palestine now consists of Israel, the West Bank, and the Gaza Strip. To Jews, their claim to the land dates back 3,000 years, when Jewish kings ruled the region from Jerusalem. To Palestinians (both Muslim and Christian), the land has belonged to them since the Jews were driven out around A.D. 135. To Arabs, the land has belonged to them since their conquest of the area in the 7th century.

After being forced out of Palestine during the second century, the Jewish people were not able to establish their own state and lived in different countries throughout the world. The global dispersal of the Jews is known as the Diaspora. During the late 19th and early 20th centuries, a group of Jews began returning to the region their ancestors had fled so long ago. They were known as Zionists, people who favored a Jewish national homeland in Palestine. At this time, Palestine was still part of the Ottoman Empire, ruled by Islamic Turks. After the defeat of the Ottomans in World War I, the League of Nations asked Britain to oversee Palestine until it was ready for independence.

By this time, the Jews had become a growing presence in Palestine, and were already pressing for their own nation in the territory. The Arabs living in the region strongly opposed such a move. In a 1917 letter to Zionist leaders, British Foreign Secretary Sir Arthur Balfour promoted the idea of creating a Jewish homeland in Palestine while protecting the “rights of existing non-Jewish communities.” Despite the Balfour Declaration, however, efforts to create a Jewish state failed—and hostility between Palestinian Arabs and Jews continued to grow.

At the end of World War II, the United Nations took action. In 1947, the UN General Assembly voted to partition Palestine into an Arab Palestinian state and...
a Jewish state. Jerusalem was to be an international city owned by neither side. The terms of the partition gave Jews 55 percent of the area even though they made up only 34 percent of the population. In the wake of the war and the Holocaust, the United States and many European nations felt great sympathy for the Jews.

All of the Islamic countries voted against partition, and the Palestinians rejected it outright. They argued that the UN did not have the right to partition a territory without considering the wishes of the majority of its people. Finally, the date was set for the formation of Israel, May 14, 1948. On that date, David Ben Gurion, long-time leader of the Jews residing in Palestine, announced the creation of an independent Israel.

**Israel and Arab States in Conflict**


Largely as a result of this fighting, the state that the UN had set aside for Arabs never came into being. Israel seized half the land in the 1948–1949 fighting. While the fighting raged, at least 600,000 Palestinians fled, migrating from the areas under Israeli control. They settled in UN-sponsored refugee camps that ringed the borders of their former homeland. Meanwhile, various Arab nations seized other Palestinian lands. Egypt took control of the Gaza Strip, while Jordan annexed the West Bank of the Jordan River. (See the map at left.)

**The 1956 Suez Crisis**  The second Arab-Israeli war followed in 1956. That year, Egypt seized control of the Suez Canal, which ran along Egypt’s eastern border between the Gulf of Suez and the Mediterranean Sea. Egyptian president Gamal Abdel Nasser sent in troops to take the canal, which was controlled by British interests. The military action was prompted in large part by Nasser’s anger over the loss of U.S. and British financial support for the building of Egypt’s Aswan Dam.

Outraged, the British made an agreement with France and Israel to retake the canal. With air support provided by their European allies, the Israelis marched on the Suez Canal and quickly defeated the Egyptians. However, pressure from the world community, including the United States and the Soviet Union, forced Israel and the Europeans to
Recognizing Effects

What were some of the effects of the Arab-Israeli conflicts?

Arab-Israeli Wars Continue

Tensions between Israel and the Arab states began to build again in the years following the resolution of the Suez Crisis. By early 1967, Nasser and his Arab allies, equipped with Soviet tanks and aircraft, felt ready to confront Israel. “We are eager for battle in order to force the enemy to awake from his dreams,” Nasser announced, “and meet Arab reality face to face.” He moved to close off the Gulf of Aqaba, Israel’s outlet to the Red Sea.

Soon after the strikes on Arab airfields began, the Israelis struck airfields in Egypt, Iran, Jordan, and Syria. Safe from air attack, Israeli ground forces struck like lightning on three fronts. Israel defeated the Arab states in what became known as the Six-Day War, because it was over in six days. Israel lost 800 troops in the fighting, while Arab losses exceeded 15,000.

As a consequence of the Six-Day War, Israel gained control of the old city of Jerusalem, the Sinai Peninsula, the Golan Heights, and the West Bank. Israelis saw these new holdings along their southern, eastern, and western borders as a key buffer zone against further Arab attacks. Arabs who lived in Jerusalem were given the choice of Israeli or Jordanian citizenship. Most chose the latter. People who lived in the other areas were not offered Israeli citizenship and simply came under Jewish control.

A fourth Arab-Israeli conflict erupted in October 1973. Nasser’s successor, Egyptian president Anwar Sadat (AHN•wahr suh•DAT), planned a joint Arab attack on the date of Yom Kippur, the holiest of Jewish holidays. This time the Israelis were caught by surprise. Arab forces inflicted heavy casualties and recaptured some of the territory lost in 1967. The Israelis, under their prime minister, Golda Meir (MY•uhr), launched a counterattack and regained most of the lost territory. Both sides agreed to a truce after several weeks of fighting, and the Yom Kippur war came to an end. ^

The Palestine Liberation Organization

As Israel and its Arab neighbors battled each other, Arab Palestinians struggled for recognition. While the United Nations had granted the Palestinians their own homeland, the Israelis had seized much of that land, including the West Bank and Gaza Strip, during its various wars. Israel insisted that such a move was vital to its national security.

In 1964, Palestinian officials formed the Palestine Liberation Organization (PLO) to push for the formation of an Arab Palestinian state that would include land claimed by Israel. Originally, the PLO was an umbrella organization made up of different groups—laborers, teachers, lawyers, and guerrilla fighters. Soon, guerrilla groups came to dominate the organization and insisted that the only way to achieve their goal was through armed struggle. In 1969 Yasir Arafat (YAH•sur AR•uh•FAT) became chairman of the PLO. Throughout the 1960s and 1970s the group carried out numerous terrorist attacks against Israel. Some of Israel’s Arab neighbors supported the PLO’s goals by allowing PLO guerrillas to operate from their lands.
The Palestinian View

Writer Fawaz Turki articulates the view held by many of his fellow Palestinians—that the Israelis are illegal occupiers of Palestinian land.

PRIMARY SOURCE

These people have walked off with our home and homeland, with our movable and immovable property, with our land, our farms, our shops, our public buildings, our paved roads, our cars, our theaters, our clubs, our parks, our furniture, our tricycles. They hounded us out of ancestral patrimony [land] and shoved us in refugee camps. . . . Now they were astride the whole of historic Palestine and then some, jubilant at the new role as latter day colonial overlords.

FAWAZ TURKI, quoted in The Arab-Israeli Conflict

The Israeli View

Many Israelis, including former Israeli General Abraham Tamir, feel that controlling the disputed lands is vital to their security.

PRIMARY SOURCE

Since the establishment of the State of Israel, its national security policy has been designed to defend its existence, integrity and security, and not for expansionist territorial aspirations. Hence, if Arab confrontation states did not initiate wars against Israel or pose threats to its existence, then Israel would not start a war . . . to extend its territories . . . Our national security policy created from its very beginning the linkage between Israel’s political willingness for peace and Israel’s military capability to repel aggression of any kind and scale.

ABRAHAM TAMIR, quoted in From War to Peace

DOCUMENT-BASED QUESTIONS

1. Analyzing Issues Why does Fawaz Turki refer to the Israelis as colonizers?

2. Drawing Conclusions What might be the best way for the Palestinians to regain control of their land, according to Abraham Tamir?

Efforts at Peace

In November 1977, just four years after the Yom Kippur war, Anwar Sadat stunned the world by extending a hand to Israel. No Arab country up to this point had recognized Israel’s right to exist. In a dramatic gesture, Sadat went before the Knesset, the Israeli parliament, and invited his one-time enemies to join him in a quest for peace.

PRIMARY SOURCE

Today, through my visit to you, I ask you why don’t we stretch our hands with faith and sincerity and so that together we might . . . remove all suspicion of fear, betrayal, and bad intention? Why don’t we stand together with the same courage and daring to erect a huge edifice [building] of peace? An edifice that . . . serves as a beacon for generations to come with the human message for construction, development, and the dignity of man.

ANWAR SADAT, Knesset speech, November 20, 1977

Sadat emphasized that in exchange for peace Israel would have to recognize the rights of Palestinians. Furthermore, it would have to withdraw from territory seized in 1967 from Egypt, Jordan, and Syria.

U.S. president Jimmy Carter recognized that Sadat had created a historic opportunity for peace. In 1978, Carter invited Sadat and Israeli prime minister Menachem Begin (meh•AHK•hehm BAY•gihn) to Camp David, the presidential retreat in rural Maryland. Isolated from the press and from domestic political pressures, Sadat and Begin worked to reach an agreement. After 13 days of negotiations, Carter triumphantly announced that Egypt recognized Israel as a legitimate state. In exchange, Israel agreed to return the Sinai Peninsula to Egypt. Signed in 1979, the Camp David Accords ended 30 years of hostilities between Egypt and Israel and became the first signed agreement between Israel and an Arab country.
While world leaders praised Sadat, his peace initiative enraged many Arab countries. In 1981, a group of Muslim extremists assassinated him. However, Egypt's new leader, Hosni Mubarak (HAHS•nee•BAHR•uhk), has worked to maintain peace with Israel.

**Israeli-Palestinian Tensions Increase** One Arab group that continued to clash with the Israelis was the Palestinians, a large number of whom lived in the West Bank and Gaza Strip—lands controlled by Israel. During the 1970s and 1980s, the military wing of the PLO conducted a campaign against Israel. Israel responded forcefully, bombing suspected rebel bases in Palestinian towns. In 1982, the Israeli army invaded Lebanon in an attempt to destroy strongholds in Palestinian villages. The Israelis became involved in Lebanon's civil war and were forced to withdraw.

In 1987, Palestinians began to express their frustrations in a widespread campaign of civil disobedience called the intifada, or “uprising.” The intifada took the form of boycotts, demonstrations, attacks on Israeli soldiers, and rock throwing by unarmed teenagers. The intifada continued into the 1990s, with little progress made toward a solution. However, the civil disobedience affected world opinion, which, in turn, put pressure on Israel to seek negotiations with the Palestinians. Finally, in October 1991, Israeli and Palestinian delegates met for a series of peace talks.

**The Oslo Peace Accords** Negotiations between the two sides made little progress, as the status of the Palestinian territories proved to be a bitterly divisive issue. In 1993, however, secret talks held in Oslo, Norway, produced a surprise agreement: a document called the Declaration of Principles, also known as the **Oslo Peace Accords**. Israel, under the leadership of Prime Minister Yitzhak Rabin (YIHTS•rah•BEEN), agreed to grant the Palestinians self-rule in the Gaza Strip and the West Bank, beginning with the town of Jericho. Rabin and Arafat signed the agreement on September 13, 1993.

The difficulty of making the agreement work was demonstrated by the assassination of Rabin in 1995. He was killed by a right-wing Jewish extremist who opposed concessions to the Palestinians. Rabin was succeeded as prime minister by Benjamin Netanyahu (neh•tan•YAH•hoo), who had opposed the Oslo Accords. Still, Netanyahu made efforts to keep to the agreement. In January 1997, Netanyahu met with Arafat to work out plans for a partial Israeli withdrawal from the West Bank.
Peace Slips Away

In 1999, the slow and difficult peace negotiations between Israel and the Palestinians seemed to get a boost. Ehud Barak won election as Israeli prime minister. Many observers viewed him as a much stronger supporter of the peace plan than Netanyahu had been. The world community, led by the United States, was determined to take advantage of such a development.

In July of 2000, U.S. president Bill Clinton hosted a 15-day summit meeting at Camp David between Ehud Barak and Yasser Arafat. The two men, however, could not reach a compromise, and the peace plan once again stalled. Just two months later, Israeli political leader Ariel Sharon visited Jerusalem’s Temple Mount, a site holy to both Jews and Muslims. The next day, the Voice of Palestine, the Palestinian Authority’s official radio station, called upon Palestinians to protest the visit. Riots broke out in Jerusalem and the West Bank, and a second intifada, sometimes called the Al-Aqsa intifada, was launched.

The Conflict Intensifies  The second intifada began much like the first with demonstrations, attacks on Israeli soldiers, and rock throwing by unarmed teenagers. But this time the Palestinian militant groups increasingly used suicide bombers. Their attacks on Jewish settlements in occupied territories and on civilian locations throughout Israel significantly raised the level of bloodshed. As the second intifada continued through 2007, thousands of Israelis and Palestinians had died in the conflict.
In response to the uprising, Israeli forces moved into Palestinian refugee camps and clamped down on terrorists. Troops destroyed buildings in which they suspected extremists were hiding and bulldozed entire areas of Palestinian towns and camps. The Israeli army bombed Arafat’s headquarters, trapping him inside his compound for many days.

Arab-Israeli relations did not improve with Israel’s next prime minister, Ariel Sharon. Sharon, a former military leader, refused to negotiate with the Palestinians until attacks on Israelis stopped. Eventually, under intense pressure from the world community, Arafat agreed to take a less prominent role in peace talks.

In early 2003, the Palestinian Authority appointed its first-ever prime minister, PLO official Mahmoud Abbas. Shortly afterward, U.S. president George W. Bush brought together Sharon and Abbas to begin working on a new peace plan known as the “road map.” But violence increased again in 2003, and talks stalled.

**Shifting Power and Alliances** In the summer of 2005, Israel unilaterally evacuated all its settlers and military from the Gaza Strip. Then in 2006, Hamas, a militant terrorist group intent on replacing Israel with an Islamic state, won majority control in Palestinian Authority elections.

Israel refused to recognize the new Hamas government. Instead, in August 2007, Israeli Prime Minister Ehud Olmert began a series of formal talks with Mahmoud Abbas. In 2010, indirect talks resumed between Abbas and Olmert’s successor, Benjamin Netanyahu. U.S. envoy George Mitchell acted as go-between, shuttling between the two leaders, but little progress had been made by mid-year.
Central Asia Struggles

SETTING THE STAGE For thousands of years, the different peoples of Central Asia suffered invasions and domination by powerful groups such as the Mongols, Byzantines, Ottomans, and finally the Communist rulers of the Soviet Union. While such occupation brought many changes to this region, its various ethnic groups worked to keep alive much of their culture. They also longed to create nations of their own, a dream they realized in the early 1990s with the collapse of the Soviet Union. In the decade since then, however, these groups have come to know the challenges of building strong and stable independent nations.

Freedom Brings New Challenges

In 1991 the Soviet Union collapsed, and the republics that it had conquered emerged as 15 independent nations. Among them were those that had made up the Soviet empire’s southern borders. Geographers often group these new nations into two geographic areas.

The Transcaucasian Republics: Armenia, Azerbaijan, and Georgia make up the Transcaucasian Republics. These three nations lie in the Caucasus Mountains between the Black and Caspian seas. East of the Caspian Sea and extending to the Tian Shan and Pamir mountains lie the five nations known as the Central Asian Republics. They are Uzbekistan, Turkmenistan, Tajikistan, Kazakhstan, and Kyrgyzstan.

Economic Struggles Since gaining independence, these nations have struggled economically and are today some of the poorest countries in the world. Much of the problem stems from their heavy reliance on the Soviet Union for economic help. As a result, they have had a difficult time standing on their own. Economic practices during the Soviet era have created additional problems. The Soviets, for example, converted much of the available farmland in the Central Asian Republics to grow “white gold”—cotton. Dependence on a single crop has hurt the development of a balanced economy in these nations.

Azerbaijan, which is located among the oil fields of the Caspian Sea, has the best chance to build a solid economy based on the income from oil and oil products. Meanwhile, Kazakhstan and Turkmenistan are working hard to tap their large reserves of oil and natural gas.

Ethnic and Religious Strife Fighting among various ethnic and religious groups has created another obstacle to stability for many of the newly independent
countries of Central Asia. The region is home to a number of different peoples, including some with long histories of hostility toward each other. With their iron-fisted rule, the Soviets kept a lid on these hostilities and largely prevented any serious ethnic clashes. After the breakup of the Soviet Union, however, long-simmering ethnic rivalries erupted into fighting. Some even became small regional wars.

Such was the case in Azerbaijan. Within this mostly Muslim country lies Nagorno-Karabakh, a small region of mainly Armenian Christians. In the wake of the Soviet Union’s collapse, the people of this area declared their independence. Azerbaijan had no intention of letting go of this land, and fighting quickly broke out. Neighboring Armenia rushed to aid the Armenian people in the district. The war raged from 1991 through 1994, when the two sides agreed to a cease-fire. As of 2007, the status of Nagorno-Karabakh remained unresolved.

**Afghanistan and the World**

Just to the south of the Central Asian Republics lies one of the region’s more prominent nations. Afghanistan is a small nation with both mountainous and desert terrain. It is one of the least-developed countries in the world, as most of its inhabitants are farmers or herders. And yet, over the past several decades, this mostly Muslim nation has grabbed the world’s attention with two high-profile wars—one against the Soviet Union and the other against the United States.

**Struggle for Freedom**  Afghanistan has endured a long history of struggle. During the 1800s, both Russia and Britain competed for control of its land. Russia wanted access to the Indian Ocean through Afghanistan, while Britain wanted control of the land in order to protect the northern borders of its Indian Empire. Britain fought three separate wars with the Afghanis before eventually leaving in 1919.

**GEOGRAPHY SKILLBUILDER: Interpreting Maps**

1. **Location** Which Transcaucasian Republic nation extends the farthest east?

2. **Place** Which is the only Central Asian Republic that neither contains nor has access to a sea or lake?
That year, Afghanistan declared itself an independent nation and established a monarchy. The government implemented various reforms and tried to modernize the country. In 1964, the country devised a constitution that sought to establish a more democratic style of government. However, officials could not agree on a reform program and most people showed little interest in the effort to transform the government. As a result, a democratic system failed to develop.

**Pushing Back the Soviets** Nonetheless, Afghanistan had grown stable enough to establish good relations with many Western European nations and to hold its own on the world stage. When the Cold War conflict between the United States and Soviet Union broke out, Afghanistan chose to remain neutral. However, over the years, it received aid from both of the opposing superpowers.

Situating so close to the Soviet Union, however, Afghanistan could not hold out against the force of communism forever. In 1973, military leaders overthrew the government. Five years later, in 1978, a rival group with strong ties to the Soviet Union seized control of the country. Much of the population opposed the group and its strong association with communism. Many Afghans felt that Communist policies conflicted with the teachings of Islam.

The opposition forces banded together to form a group known as the mujahideen (moo•JAH•heh•DEEN), or holy warriors. These rebels took up arms and fought fiercely against the Soviet-supported government. The rebellion soon prompted the Soviet Union to step in. In 1979 and 1980, Soviet troops rolled into Afghanistan to conquer the country and add it to their Communist empire.

With the Soviets’ superior military force and advanced weaponry, the war had all the makings of a quick and lopsided affair. But the Afghan rebels used the land and guerrilla tactics to their advantage. In addition, the United States provided financial and military assistance. After nearly 10 years of bloody and fruitless fighting, the Soviet Union withdrew its troops. The Afghans had taken on the world’s Communist superpower and won.

**Rise and Fall of the Taliban** With the Soviets gone, various Afghan rebel groups began battling each other for control of the country. A conservative Islamic group known as the Taliban emerged as the victor. By 1998, it controlled 90 percent of the country. Another rebel group, the Northern Alliance, held the northwest corner of the country. Observers initially viewed the Taliban as a positive force, as it brought order to the war-torn nation, rooted out corruption, and promoted the growth of business.

However, the group followed an extreme interpretation of Islamic law and applied it to nearly every aspect of Afghan society. Taliban leaders restricted women’s lives by forbidding them to go to school or hold jobs. They banned everything from television and movies to modern music. Punishment for violating the rules included severe beatings, amputation, and even execution.

Even more troubling to the world community was the Taliban’s role in the growing problem of world terrorism, which you will read more about in Chapter 20. Western
Freedom Brings New Challenges

A. Afghanistan and the World

A. In the Afghanistan elections, the ballot included photographs of the candidates and symbols for each party.

leaders accused the Taliban of allowing terrorist groups to train in Afghanistan. The Taliban also provided refuge for terrorist leaders, including Osama bin Laden, whose al-Qaeda organization is thought to be responsible for numerous attacks on the West—including the attacks on the World Trade Center in New York and the Pentagon in Washington, D.C., on September 11, 2001.

In the wake of the September 11 attacks, the U.S. government demanded that the Taliban turn over bin Laden. After its leaders refused, the United States took military action. In October 2001, U.S. forces began bombing Taliban air defense, airfields, and command centers, as well as al-Qaeda training camps. On the ground, the United States provided assistance to anti-Taliban forces, such as the Northern Alliance. By December, the United States had driven the Taliban from power.

Challenges Ahead While the Taliban regrouped in remote parts of Afghanistan and Pakistan, Afghan officials selected a new government under the leadership of Hamid Karzai. Later, in 2004, he was elected president for a five-year term. His government faced the task of rebuilding a country that had endured more than two decades of warfare. However, in 2006, the Taliban appeared resurgent, and NATO troops took over military operations in the South. Heavy fighting with the Taliban continued into 2007.

The challenge before Afghanistan, is neither unique nor new. As you will read in the next chapter, over the past 50 years countries around the world have attempted to shed their old and often repressive forms of rule and implement a more democratic style of government.

TERMS & NAMES

1. For each term or name, write a sentence explaining its significance.

- Transcaucasian Republics
- Central Asian Republics
- mujahideen
- Taliban

USING YOUR NOTES

2. Which challenge for the Central Asian nations is most difficult to overcome?

Freedom Brings New Challenges

A. Afghanistan and the World

A. In the Afghanistan elections, the ballot included photographs of the candidates and symbols for each party.

MAIN IDEA

3. What countries make up the Transcaucasian Republics? the Central Asian Republics?

4. Why did Afghanis oppose the notion of Communist rule?

5. Why did the United States take military action against the Taliban?

CRITICAL THINKING & WRITING

6. MAKING INFERENCES Some historians call the Soviet-Afghan war the Soviet Union’s “Vietnam.” What do they mean by this reference? Do you agree with it?

7. DRAWING CONCLUSIONS Why might Afghanis have been willing to accept Taliban rule by 1998?

8. IDENTIFYING PROBLEMS Why did the new nations of Central Asia experience such economic difficulties?

9. WRITING ACTIVITY [POWER AND AUTHORITY] Imagine you are a speechwriter for Hamid Karzai. Write what you feel would be an appropriate first paragraph for his initial speech upon taking power.

CONNECT TO TODAY CREATING A TIME LINE

Choose one of the countries discussed in this section and create a time line of the eight to ten most significant events in its history over the last 50 years.

The Colonies Become New Nations 593
The Struggle for Independence

The time line shows the dates on which various countries in Asia and Africa achieved their independence after World War II. It also shows (in parentheses) the countries from which they achieved independence.

1945
- 1946 the Philippines (United States)
- 1947 India, Pakistan (Great Britain)
- 1948 Israel (Great Britain)
- 1949 Indonesia (The Netherlands)

1950
- 1957 Ghana (Great Britain)

1960
- 1962 Algeria (France)
- 1963 Kenya (Great Britain)

1965
- 1965 Singapore (Great Britain, Malaysia)
- 1971 Congo (Belgium)
- 1971 Bangladesh (Pakistan)
- 1975 Angola (Portugal)

1975
- 1971 Bangladesh

MAIN IDEAS

The Indian Subcontinent Achieves Freedom
Section 1 (pages 563–569)
- 9. What two nations emerged from the British colony of India in 1947?
- 10. Briefly explain the reason for the civil disorder in Sri Lanka.

Southeast Asian Nations Gain Independence
Section 2 (pages 570–577)
- 11. What were some concerns the Filipinos had regarding the Bell Act?
- 12. Who was Sukarno?

New Nations in Africa
Section 3 (pages 578–582)
- 13. Why were Kwame Nkrumah’s politics criticized?
- 14. Why did Zaire face such difficulty upon gaining independence?

Conflicts in the Middle East
Section 4 (pages 583–589)
- 15. What was the Suez Crisis?
- 16. What were the Camp David Accords?

Central Asia Struggles
Section 5 (pages 590–593)
- 17. Which nations comprise the Transcaucasian Republics?
- 18. What was the Taliban?

CRITICAL THINKING

1. USING YOUR NOTES
Use a web diagram to show some of the challenges that newly independent nations have faced.

2. FORMING AND SUPPORTING OPINIONS
   - REVOLUTION Do you think there should be a limit to the methods revolutionaries use? Explain your opinion.

3. ANALYZING ISSUES
   - ECONOMICS Why have so many of the new nations that emerged over the past half-century struggled economically?

4. DRAWING CONCLUSIONS
   In your view, was religion a unifying or destructive force as colonies around the world became new nations? Support your answer with specific examples from the text.
Use the following excerpt from the Balfour Declaration and your knowledge of world history to answer questions 1 and 2.

**PRIMARY SOURCE**

His Majesty’s Government view with favour the establishment in Palestine of a national home for the Jewish people, and will use their best endeavours to facilitate the achievement of this object, it being clearly understood that nothing shall be done which may prejudice the civil and religious rights of existing non-Jewish communities in Palestine, or the rights and political status enjoyed by Jews in any other country.

ARTHUR JAMES BALFOUR, in a letter to Lord Rothschild, November 2, 1917

1. The intent of the British government was to
   A. give all of Palestine to the Jewish people.
   B. leave Palestine in the hands of the Arabs.
   C. divide Palestine between Jews and Arabs.
   D. ensure justice for Jews around the world.

2. The group most likely to have opposed the Balfour Declaration was the
   A. Arabs.
   B. Jews.
   C. French.
   D. Americans.

3. Aquino was expected by many to “clean up” the Philippines by ending years of
   A. slavery.
   B. dictatorship.
   C. business corruption.
   D. unchecked pollution.

For additional test practice, go online for:
- Diagnostic tests
- Strategies
- Tutorials

**INTERACT WITH HISTORY**

On page 562, you discussed the most important areas to address in building a new nation. Now that you have read about the efforts by so many former colonies to forge new countries, do you think that you focused on the right areas? Work as a class to identify the main factors that determine whether a new nation struggles or thrives. Be sure to cite specific examples from the text.

**FOCUS ON WRITING**

**POWER AND AUTHORITY** Select one of the leaders discussed in this chapter. Review the decisions the leader made while in power. Write an evaluation of the leader’s decisions and his or her impact on the country. Consider the following:
- the leader’s views on government and democracy
- the leader’s handling of the economy
- the leader’s accomplishments and failures

**MULTIMEDIA ACTIVITY**

**Creating a Database**

Use the Internet, library, and other reference materials to create a database showing the economic growth of any four countries discussed in this chapter. Create one table for each country, with column headings for each measure of economic growth you chose to record and row headings for each 10-year period. Then insert the most current data you can find. Consider the following questions to get started:
- What statistics will be most useful in making comparisons between nations?
- Which nations have capitalist economies? What other types of economies did you discover?
- Which nations have “one crop” economies?
Struggles for Democracy, 1945–Present

Essential Question
How did China and nations in Latin America, Africa, and the former Soviet bloc struggle for democracy?

What You Will Learn
In this chapter you will learn about the struggles for change in Latin America, Africa, the former Soviet bloc, and China.

SECTION 1 Democracy
Case Study: Latin American Democracies
Main Idea: In Latin America, economic problems and authoritarian rule delayed democracy.

SECTION 2 The Challenge of Democracy in Africa
Main Idea: As the recent histories of Nigeria and South Africa show, ethnic and racial conflicts can hinder democracy.

SECTION 3 The Collapse of the Soviet Union
Main Idea: Democratic reforms brought important changes to the Soviet Union.

SECTION 4 Changes in Central and Eastern Europe
Main Idea: Changes in the Soviet Union led to changes throughout Central and Eastern Europe.

SECTION 5 China: Reform and Reaction
Main Idea: In response to contact with the West, China’s government has experimented with capitalism but has rejected calls for democracy.

Previewing Themes

ECONOMICS Many nations, such as Brazil, Poland, Russia, and China, discovered that economic stability is important for democratic progress.

Geography Which type of government seems to predominate in the Western Hemisphere?

REVOLUTION In 1989, revolutions overthrew Communist governments in the Soviet Union and Central and Eastern Europe. In China, the Communist government and the army put down a student protest calling for democracy.

Geography Which two countries in the Eastern Hemisphere are still Communist?

CULTURAL INTERACTION Chinese students imported democratic ideas from the West. Democratic reforms spread across Central and Eastern Europe, causing Communist governments to fall.

Geography Which type of government predominates in the labeled countries of Europe?
Struggles for Democracy, 1945–Present

1978
Deng Xiaoping begins economic reforms in China.

1985
1980
Ronald Reagan elected president.

1988
1989
Berlin Wall comes down.

1994
South Africa holds its first multiracial election.

2008
Kosovo declares independence from Serbia.

2005
Barack Obama elected president.

2008
George W. Bush elected president.
**Why do so many people want democracy?**

Your grandparents came to the United States because they wanted to live in a democracy. Although that was more than 50 years ago, you know that people in many parts of the world still seek democracy today. On the news, you watch stories about protesters, who are demanding more democracy and freedom. Their demonstrations are often led by students and sometimes help to bring about democratic reform.

One evening you and a friend are watching a news story about a leader who has promised his people greater democracy. What might you answer when your friend asks why so many people want democracy?

---

**EXAMINING the ISSUES**

- **What rights and institutions are necessary for a government to be democratic?**

- **How do citizens participate in a democracy? How can participation be encouraged?**

Discuss these questions in class and list important points on the board. For your discussion, consider what you know about democracy in ancient Greece and in the United States. As you read this chapter, think about the challenges many countries face in trying to develop democratic systems.
Democracy

Setting the Stage
By definition, democracy is government by the people. Direct democracy, in which all citizens meet to pass laws, is not practical for nations. Therefore, democratic nations developed indirect democracies, or republics, in which citizens elect representatives to make laws for them. For example, the United States is a republic. But democracy is more than a form of government. It is also a way of life and an ideal goal. A democratic way of life includes practices such as free and open elections.

Democracy As a Goal
The chart below lists four practices in a democracy, together with conditions that help these democratic practices succeed. Many nations follow these practices to a large degree. However, establishing democracy is a process that takes years. Even in the United States, the establishment of democracy has taken time. Although the principle of equality is part of the Constitution, many Americans have struggled for equal rights. To cite one example, women did not receive the right to vote until 1920. Democracy is always a “work in progress.”

Making Democracy Work

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common</th>
<th>Conditions That Foster Those Practices</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Free elections</td>
<td>• Having more than one political party</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Universal suffrage—all adult citizens can vote</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citizen participation</td>
<td>• High levels of education and literacy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Economic security</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Freedoms of speech, press, and assembly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Majority rule, minority rights</td>
<td>• All citizens equal before the law</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Shared national identity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Protection of such individual rights as freedom of religion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Representatives elected by citizens to carry out their will</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Constitutional government</td>
<td>• Clear body of traditions and laws on which government is-based</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Widespread education about how government works</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• National acceptance of majority decisions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Shared belief that no one is above the law</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Case Study: Latin American Democracies
In Latin America, economic problems and authoritarian rule delayed democracy. By the mid-1990s, almost all Latin American nations had democratic governments.

Case Study
Latin American Democracies

Economics
In Latin America, economic problems and authoritarian rule delayed democracy. By the mid-1990s, almost all Latin American nations had democratic governments.

Common
• Free elections
• Citizen participation
• Majority rule, minority rights
• Constitutional government

Conditions That Foster Those Practices
• Having more than one political party
• Universal suffrage—all adult citizens can vote
• High levels of education and literacy
• Economic security
• Freedoms of speech, press, and assembly
• All citizens equal before the law
• Shared national identity
• Protection of such individual rights as freedom of religion
• Representatives elected by citizens to carry out their will
• Clear body of traditions and laws on which government is-based
• Widespread education about how government works
• National acceptance of majority decisions
• Shared belief that no one is above the law
Democratic institutions may not ensure stable, civilian government if other conditions are not present. The participation of a nation’s citizens in government is essential to democracy. Education and literacy—the ability to read and write—give citizens the tools they need to make political decisions. Also, a stable economy with a strong middle class and opportunities for advancement helps democracy. It does so by giving citizens a stake in the future of their nation.

Other conditions advance democracy. First, a firm belief in the rights of the individual promotes the fair and equal treatment of citizens. Second, rule by law helps prevent leaders from abusing power without fear of punishment. Third, a sense of national identity helps encourage citizens to work together for the good of the nation.

The struggle to establish democracy continued into the 21st century as many nations abandoned authoritarian rule for democratic institutions. However, a United Nations study released in July 2002 warned that the spread of democracy around the world could be derailed if free elections in poor countries are not followed by economic growth. The UN Development Program’s annual report warned particularly about Latin America.

**CASE STUDY: Brazil**

**Dictators and Democracy**

Many Latin American nations won their independence from Spain and Portugal in the early 1800s. However, three centuries of colonial rule left many problems. These included powerful militaries, economies that were too dependent on a single crop, and large gaps between rich and poor. These patterns persisted in the modern era.

After gaining independence from Portugal in 1822, Brazil became a monarchy. This lasted until 1889, when Brazilians established a republican government, which a wealthy elite controlled. Then, in the 1930s, Getulio Vargas became dictator. Vargas suppressed political opposition. At the same time, however, he promoted economic growth and helped turn Brazil into a modern industrial nation.

**Kubitschek’s Ambitious Program** After Vargas, three popularly elected presidents tried to steer Brazil toward democracy. Juscelino Kubitschek (zhoo•suh•LEE•nuh-KOO•bih•chehk), who governed from 1956 to 1961, continued to develop Brazil’s economy. Kubitschek encouraged foreign investment to help pay for development projects. He built a new capital city, Brasília (bruh•ZIH•lyuh), in the country’s interior. Kubitschek’s dream proved expensive. The nation’s foreign debt soared and inflation shot up.

Kubitschek’s successors proposed reforms to ease economic and social problems. Conservatives resisted this strongly. They especially opposed the plan for land reform—breaking up large estates and distributing that land to peasants. In 1964, with the blessing of wealthy Brazilians, the army seized power in a military coup.

**Military Dictators** For two decades military dictators ruled Brazil. Emphasizing economic growth, the generals fostered foreign investment. They began huge development projects in the Amazon jungle. The economy boomed.

The boom had a downside, though. The government froze wages and cut back on social programs. This caused a decline in the standard of living, or level of material comfort, which is judged by the amount of goods people have. When Brazilians protested, the government imposed censorship. It also jailed, tortured, and sometimes killed government critics. Nevertheless, opposition to military rule continued to grow.

**The Road to Democracy** By the early 1980s, a recession, or slowdown in the economy, gripped Brazil. At that point, the generals decided to open up the political system. They allowed direct elections of local, state, and national officials.
GEOGRAPHY SKILLBUILDER: Interpreting Maps

1. Location Which country—Argentina, Brazil, or Mexico—spans the equator?
2. Region Which one of the three countries has a coast on the Caribbean Sea?
In 1985, a new civilian president, José Sarney (zhoh•ZAY SAHR•nay), took office. Sarney inherited a country in crisis because of foreign debt and inflation. He proved unable to solve the country’s problems and lost support. The next elected president fared even worse. He resigned because of corruption charges.

In 1994 and again in 1998, Brazilians elected Fernando Henrique Cardoso, who achieved some success in tackling the nation’s economic and political problems. Although trained as a Marxist scholar, Cardoso became a strong advocate of free markets. One of his main concerns was the widening income gap in Brazil. He embarked on a program to promote economic reform.

The 2002 Presidential Election In the presidential election of October 2002, Cardoso’s handpicked successor to lead his centrist coalition was José Serra. Serra faced two candidates who proposed a sharp break with Cardoso’s pro-business policies. These candidates included Luiz Inácio Lula da Silva, a candidate of the leftist Workers Party.

An economic crisis hit many countries in South America, including Brazil, in 2002. Because of stalled economic growth, rising unemployment, and poverty, there was a backlash against free-market economic policies. This made the election of 2002 a close contest. Da Silva, the leftist candidate, won the hotly disputed election, defeating the ruling party candidate, Serra. Da Silva, who was reelected in 2006, has proved a more moderate president than his supporters and opponents had expected. Although Brazil faces many challenges, it continues on the path of democracy.

CASE STUDY: Mexico

One-Party Rule

Unlike Brazil, Mexico enjoyed relative political stability for most of the 20th century. Following the Mexican Revolution, the government passed the Constitution of 1917. The new constitution outlined a democracy and promised reforms.

Beginnings of One-Party Domination From 1920 to 1934, Mexico elected several generals as president. However, these men did not rule as military dictators. They did create a ruling party—the National Revolutionary Party, which dominated Mexico under various names for the rest of the 20th century.
From 1934 to 1940, President Lázaro Cárdenas (KAHR•day•nahs) tried to improve life for peasants and workers. He carried out land reform and promoted labor rights. He nationalized the Mexican oil industry, kicking out foreign oil companies and creating a state-run oil industry. After Cárdenas, however, a series of more conservative presidents turned away from reform.

**The Party Becomes the PRI** In 1946, the main political party changed its name to the Institutional Revolutionary Party, or PRI. In the half-century that followed, the PRI became the main force for political stability in Mexico.

Although stable, the government was an imperfect democracy. The PRI controlled the congress and won every presidential election. The government allowed opposition parties to compete, but fraud and corruption tainted the elections.

Even as the Mexican economy rapidly developed, Mexico continued to suffer severe economic problems. Lacking land and jobs, millions of Mexicans struggled for survival. In addition, a huge foreign debt forced the government to spend money on interest payments. Two episodes highlighted Mexico’s growing difficulties. In the late 1960s, students and workers began calling for economic and political change. On October 2, 1968, protesters gathered at the site of an ancient Aztec market in Mexico City. Soldiers hidden in the ruins opened fire on the protesters. The massacre claimed several hundred lives.

A second critical episode occurred during the early 1980s. By that time, huge new oil and natural gas reserves had been discovered in Mexico. The economy had become dependent on oil and gas exports. In 1981, world oil prices fell, cutting Mexico’s oil and gas revenues in half. Mexico went into an economic decline.

**Economic and Political Crises** The 1980s and 1990s saw Mexico facing various crises. In 1988, opposition parties challenged the PRI in national elections. The PRI candidate, Carlos Salinas, won the presidency. Even so, opposition parties won seats in the congress and began to force a gradual opening of the political system.

**Recognizing Effects**

Why does over-reliance on one product weaken an economy?

**SKILLBUILDER:**

**Interpreting Visual Sources**

1. **Drawing Conclusions** Do dictators typically take into account the opinions of the people they rule?

2. **Making Inferences** What does this cartoon suggest about the dictator’s attitude toward the opinion of the people he rules?

**Analyzing Political Cartoons**

**Military Rule and Democracy**

Throughout the 20th century, many Latin American countries were ruled by military dictators or political bosses. Most typically, the dictator’s support came from the wealthy and the military. But sometimes the dictator’s support came from the people.
During his presidency, Salinas signed NAFTA, the North American Free Trade Agreement. NAFTA removed trade barriers between Mexico, the United States, and Canada. In early 1994, peasant rebels in the southern Mexican state of Chiapas (chee•AH•pahs) staged a major uprising. Shortly afterward, a gunman assassinated Luis Donaldo Colosio, the PRI presidential candidate for the upcoming election.

**The PRI Loses Control** After these events, Mexicans grew increasingly concerned about the prospects for democratic stability. Nevertheless, the elections of 1994 went ahead. The new PRI candidate, Ernesto Zedillo (zuh•DEE•yoh), won. Opposition parties continued to challenge the PRI.

In 1997, two opposition parties each won a large number of congressional seats, denying the PRI control of congress. Then, in 2000, Mexican voters ended 71 years of PRI rule by electing center-right candidate Vicente Fox as president.

**New Policies and Programs** Fox’s agenda was very ambitious. He advocated reforming the police, rooting out political corruption, ending the rebellion in Chiapas, and opening up Mexico’s economy to free-market forces.

Fox also argued that the United States should legalize the status of millions of illegal Mexican immigrant workers. Fox hoped that a negotiated agreement between the United States and Mexico would provide amnesty for these undocumented Mexican workers in the United States. After Felipe Calderon, a conservative, was elected president in 2006, he continued many of Fox’s policies. However, tensions between the Mexican and U.S. governments grew over Washington’s plan to build a fence along the two countries’ border.

**CASE STUDY: Argentina**

**Political and Economic Disorder**

Mexico and Brazil were not the only Latin American countries where democracy had made progress. By the late 1990s, most of Latin America was under democratic rule.

**Perón Rules Argentina** Argentina had struggled to establish democracy. It was a major exporter of grain and beef. It was also an industrial nation with a large working class. In 1946, Argentine workers supported an army officer, Juan Perón, who won the presidency and then established a dictatorship.
Perón did not rule alone. He received critical support from his wife, Eva—known as Evita to the millions of Argentines who idolized her. Together, the Peróns created a welfare state. The state offered social programs with broad popular appeal but limited freedoms. After Eva’s death in 1952, Perón’s popularity declined and his enemies—the military and the Catholic Church—moved against him. In 1955, the military ousted Perón and drove him into exile.

**Repression in Argentina** For many years, the military essentially controlled Argentine politics. Perón returned to power once more, in 1973, but ruled for only a year before dying in office. By the mid-1970s, Argentina was in chaos.

In 1976, the generals seized power again. They established a brutal dictatorship and hunted down political opponents. For several years, torture and murder were everyday events. By the early 1980s, several thousand Argentines had simply disappeared, kidnapped by their own government.

**Democracy and the Economy** In 1982, the military government went to war with Britain over the nearby Falkland Islands and suffered a defeat. Disgraced, the generals agreed to step down. In 1983, Argentines elected Raúl Alfonsín (ahl•fohn•SEEN) president in the country’s first free election in 37 years.

During the 1980s, Alfonsín worked to rebuild democracy and the economy. Carlos Menem gained the presidency in 1989 and continued the process. He attempted to stabilize the currency and privatize industry. By the late 1990s, however, economic problems intensified as the country lived beyond its means.

**A Growing Crisis** In December 2001, the International Monetary Fund (IMF) refused to provide financial aid to Argentina. Then President Fernando de la Rua resigned in the face of protests over the economy. He was succeeded by Eduardo Duhalde, who tried to deal with the economic and social crisis. In 2002, Argentina had an unemployment rate of about 24 percent. The country defaulted on $132 billion in debt, the largest debt default in history, and devalued its currency. In 2003, under then president Nestor Kirchner, the nation renegotiated its debt with the IMF. In 2006, Argentina successfully repaid its debt.
The Challenge of Democracy in Africa

**MAIN IDEA**

As the recent histories of Nigeria and South Africa show, ethnic and racial conflicts can hinder democracy.

**WHY IT MATTERS NOW**

In 1996, as Nigeria struggled with democracy, South Africa adopted a bill of rights that promotes racial equality.

**TERMS & NAMES**

- federal system
- martial law
- dissident
- apartheid
- Nelson Mandela

**SETTING THE STAGE**

Beginning in the late 1950s, dozens of European colonies in Africa gained their independence and became nations. As in Latin America, the establishment of democracy in Africa proved difficult. In many cases, the newly independent nations faced a host of problems that slowed their progress toward democracy. The main reason for Africa’s difficulties was the negative impact of colonial rule. European powers had done little to prepare their African colonies for independence.

**Colonial Rule Limits Democracy**

The lingering effects of colonialism undermined efforts to build stable, democratic economies and states. This can be seen throughout Africa.

**European Policies Cause Problems**

When the Europeans established colonial boundaries, they ignored existing ethnic or cultural divisions. New borders divided peoples of the same background or threw different—often rival—groups together. Because of this, a sense of national identity was difficult to develop. After independence, the old colonial boundaries became the borders of the newly independent states. As a result, ethnic and cultural conflicts remained.

Other problems had an economic basis. European powers had viewed colonies as sources of wealth for the home country. The colonial powers encouraged the export of one or two cash crops, such as coffee or rubber, rather than the production of a range of products to serve local needs. Europeans developed plantations and mines but few factories. Manufactured goods were imported from European countries. These policies left new African nations with unbalanced economies and a small middle class. Such economic problems lessened their chances to create democratic stability.

European rule also disrupted African family and community life. In some cases, colonial powers moved Africans far from their families and villages to work in mines or on plantations. In addition, most newly independent nations still lacked a skilled, literate work force that could take on the task of building a new nation.

**Short-Lived Democracies**

When Britain and France gave up their colonies, they left fragile democratic governments in place. Soon problems threatened those governments. Rival ethnic groups often fought for power. Strong militaries became tools for ambitious leaders. In many cases, a military dictatorship replaced democracy.
Civil War in Nigeria

Nigeria, a former British colony, won its independence peacefully in 1960. Nigeria is Africa’s most populous country and one of its richest. However, the country was ethnically divided. This soon created problems that led to war.

A Land of Many Peoples  Three major ethnic groups live within Nigeria’s borders. In the north are the Hausa-Fulani, who are mostly Muslim. In the south are the Yoruba and the Igbo (also called Ibo), who are mostly Christians, Muslims, or animists, who believe that spirits are present in animals, plants, and natural objects. The Yoruba, a farming people with a tradition of kings, live to the west. The Igbo, a farming people who have a democratic tradition, live to the east.

After independence, Nigeria adopted a federal system. In a federal system, power is shared between state governments and a central authority. The Nigerians set up three states, one for each region and ethnic group, with a political party in each.

War with Biafra  Although one group dominated each state, the states also had ethnic minorities. In the Western Region, non-Yoruba minorities began to resent Yoruba control. In 1963, they tried to break away and form their own region. This led to fighting. In January 1966, a group of army officers, most of them Igbo, seized power in the capital city of Lagos. These officers abolished the regional governments and declared martial law, or temporary military rule.

The Hausa-Fulani, who did not trust the Igbo, launched an attack from the north. They persecuted and killed many Igbo. The survivors fled east. In 1967, the Eastern Region seceded from Nigeria, declaring itself the new nation of Biafra (bee•AF•ruh).

The Nigerian government then went to war to reunite the country. The Igbo were badly outnumbered and outgunned. In 1970, Biafra surrendered. Nigeria was reunited, but perhaps more than a million Igbo died, most from starvation.
Ken Saro-Wiwa

On November 10, 1995, Nigeria hanged nine political prisoners—all critics of the military government. Many around the world believed the nine were convicted on false charges to silence them. One of the nine was Ken Saro-Wiwa, a noted writer and activist. Shortly before his death, Saro-Wiwa smuggled several manuscripts out of prison.

DOCUMENT-BASED QUESTIONS

1. Drawing Conclusions What do Saro-Wiwa’s imprisonment and execution suggest about the government of the military dictator, General Sani Abacha?

2. Making Inferences What seems to be Saro-Wiwa’s attitude toward his persecutors?

Nigeria’s Nation-Building

After the war, Nigerians returned to the process of nation-building. “When the war ended,” noted one officer, “it was like a referee blowing a whistle in a football game. People just put down their guns and went back to the business of living.” The Nigerian government did not punish the Igbo. It used federal money to rebuild the Igbo region.

Federal Government Restored The military governed Nigeria for most of the 1970s. During this time, Nigerian leaders tried to create a more stable federal system, with a strong central government and a number of regional units. The government also tried to build a more modern economy, based on oil income.

In 1979, the military handed power back to civilian rulers. Nigerians were cheered by the return to democracy. Some people, however, remained concerned about ethnic divisions in the nation. Nigerian democracy was short-lived. In 1983, the military overthrew the civilian government, charging it with corruption. A new military regime, dominated by the Hausa-Fulani, took charge.

A Return to Civilian Rule In the years that followed, the military governed Nigeria, while promising to bring back civilian rule. The army held elections in 1993, which resulted in the victory of popular leader Moshood Abiola. However, officers declared the results invalid, and a dictator, General Sani Abacha, took control.

General Abacha banned political activity and jailed dissidents, or government opponents. Upon Abacha’s death in 1998, General Abdulsalami Abubakar seized power and promised to end military rule. He kept his word. In 1999, Nigerians elected their first civilian president, Olusegun Obasanjo, in nearly 20 years. In 2003, Obasanjo was reelected.

Injustice stalks the land like a tiger on the prowl. To be at the mercy of buffoons [fools] is the ultimate insult. To find the instruments of state power reducing you to dust is the injury . . . .

It is also very important that we have chosen the path of non-violent struggle. Our opponents are given to violence and we cannot meet them on their turf, even if we wanted to. Non-violent struggle offers weak people the strength which they otherwise would not have. The spirit becomes important, and no gun can silence that. I am aware, though, that non-violent struggle occasions more death than armed struggle. And that remains a cause for worry at all times. Whether the Ogoni people will be able to withstand the rigors of the struggle is yet to be seen. Again, their ability to do so will point the way of peaceful struggle to other peoples on the African continent. It is therefore not to be underrated.

KEN SARO-WIWA, A Month and a Day: A Detention Diary
**Civilian Presidents**  Obasanjo was an ethnic Yoruba from southwest Nigeria. As a critic of Nigerian military regimes, he had spent three years in jail (1995–1998) under Sani Abacha. As a former general, Obasanjo had the support of the military.

Obasanjo worked for a strong, unified Nigeria. He made some progress in his battle against corruption. He also attempted to draw the attention of the world to the need for debt relief for Nigeria. Obasanjo saw debt relief as essential to the relief of hunger and the future of democracy in Africa.

The controversial 2007 elections brought President Umaru Yar’Adua to power. Like his mentor Mr. Obasanjo, President Yar’Adua faced a variety of problems. These included war, violence, corruption, poverty, pollution, and hunger. In addition, militant groups are threatening Nigeria’s oil exports and economic growth.

**South Africa Under Apartheid**

In South Africa, racial conflict was the result of colonial rule. From its beginnings under Dutch and British control, South Africa was racially divided. A small white minority ruled a large black majority. In 1910, South Africa gained self-rule as a dominion of the British Empire. In 1931, it became an independent member of the British Commonwealth. Although South Africa had a constitutional government, the constitution gave whites power and denied the black majority its rights.

**Apartheid Segregates Society** In 1948, the National Party came to power in South Africa. This party promoted Afrikaner, or Dutch South African, nationalism. It also instituted a policy of *apartheid*, complete separation of the races. The minority government banned social contacts between whites and blacks. It established segregated schools, hospitals, and neighborhoods.

In 1959, the minority government set up reserves, called homelands, for the country’s major black groups. Blacks were forbidden to live in white areas unless they worked as servants or laborers for whites. The homelands policy was totally unbalanced. Although blacks made up about 75 percent of the population, the government set aside only 13 percent of the land for them. Whites kept the best land.

**Blacks Protest** The blacks of South Africa resisted the controls imposed by the white minority. In 1912, they formed the African National Congress (ANC) to fight for their rights. The ANC organized strikes and boycotts to protest racist policies. The government banned the ANC and imprisoned many of its members. One was ANC leader **Nelson Mandela** (man•DEHL•uh).

The troubles continued. In 1976, riots over school policies broke out in the black township of Soweto, leaving about 600 students dead. In 1977, police beat popular protest leader Stephen Biko to death while he was in custody. As protests mounted, the government declared a nationwide state of emergency in 1986.

*MAIN IDEA*

**Making Inferences** ✈ How did the policy of apartheid strengthen whites’ hold on power?

▼ A young South African poll worker helps an elderly man to vote in the first election open to citizens of all races.
**Struggle for Democracy**

By the late 1980s, South Africa was under great pressure to change. For years, a black South African bishop, Desmond Tutu, had led an economic campaign against apartheid. He asked foreign nations not to do business with South Africa. In response, many nations imposed trade restrictions. They also isolated South Africa in other ways, for example, by banning South Africa from the Olympic Games. (In 1984, Tutu won the Nobel Peace Prize for his nonviolent methods.)

**The First Steps** In 1989, white South Africans elected a new president, F. W. de Klerk. His goal was to transform South Africa and end its isolation. In February 1990, he legalized the ANC and also released Nelson Mandela from prison.

These dramatic actions marked the beginning of a new era in South Africa. Over the next 18 months, the South African parliament repealed apartheid laws that had segregated public facilities and restricted land ownership by blacks. World leaders welcomed these changes and began to ease restrictions on South Africa.

Although some legal barriers had fallen, others would remain until a new constitution was in place. First, the country needed to form a multiracial government. After lengthy negotiations, President de Klerk agreed to hold South Africa's first universal elections, in which people of all races could vote, in April 1994.

**Majority Rule** Among the candidates for president were F. W. de Klerk and Nelson Mandela. During the campaign, the Inkatha Freedom Party—a rival party to the ANC—threatened to disrupt the process. Nevertheless, the vote went smoothly. South Africans of all races peacefully waited at the polls in long lines. To no one’s surprise, the ANC won 63 percent of the vote. They won 252 of 400 seats in the National Assembly (the larger of the two houses in Parliament). Mandela was elected president. Mandela stepped down in 1999, but the nation’s democratic government continued.

**A New Constitution** In 1996, after much debate, South African lawmakers passed a new, more democratic constitution. It guaranteed equal rights for all citizens. The constitution included a bill of rights modeled on the U.S. Bill of Rights. The political changes that South Africa had achieved gave other peoples around the world great hope for the future of democracy.

**South Africa Today** In 1999, ANC official Thabo Mbeki won election as president in a peaceful transition of power. As Mbeki assumed office, he faced a number of serious challenges. These included high crime rates—South Africa's
South Africa, 1948–Present

1948 National Party comes to power, passes apartheid laws
1959 Black homelands established
1962 Nelson Mandela jailed
1976 600 black students killed during Soweto protest
1989 F. W. de Klerk elected president
1990 ANC legalized and Mandela released
1994 ANC wins 63% of the vote; Mandela elected president
1996 New constitution adopted
1999 ANC candidate Thabo Mbeki elected president
2009 ANC candidate Jacob Zuma elected president

South Africa
both
Nigeria
1962
Nelson Mandela jailed
1999
ANC candidate Thabo Mbeki elected president
1959
Black homelands established
1994
ANC wins 63% of the vote; Mandela elected president
1996
New constitution adopted
1990
ANC legalized and Mandela released
1976
600 black students killed during Soweto protest
1948
National Party comes to power, passes apartheid laws

TERMS & NAMES
1. For each term or name, write a sentence explaining its significance.
- federal system
- martial law
- dissident
- apartheid
- Nelson Mandela

USING YOUR NOTES
2. Which country is more democratic? Explain.

MAIN IDEAS
3. What effect did old colonial boundaries have on newly independent African states?
4. What was the outcome of the war between Nigeria and Biafra?
5. What were the homelands in South Africa?

CRITICAL THINKING & WRITING
6. IDENTIFYING PROBLEMS What do you think is the main problem that Nigeria must overcome before it can establish a democratic government?
7. ANALYZING ISSUES What are some of the important issues facing South Africa today?
8. RECOGNIZING EFFECTS What were the main negative effects of the economic policies of European colonizers?
9. WRITING ACTIVITY REVOLUTION Working in small teams, write biographies of South African leaders who were instrumental in the revolutionary overturn of apartheid. Include pictures if possible.

CONNECT TO TODAY MAKING AN ORAL REPORT
Do research on the current policy of Jacob Zuma and the South African government on HIV and AIDS in South Africa. Report your findings in an oral report to the class.

rape and murder rates were among the highest in the world. Unemployment stood at about 40 percent among South Africa’s blacks, and about 60 percent lived below the poverty level. In addition, an economic downturn discouraged foreign investment.

Mbeki promoted a free-market economic policy to repair South Africa’s infrastructure and to encourage foreign investors. In 2002, South Africa was engaged in negotiations to establish free-trade agreements with a number of countries around the world, including those of the European Union as well as Japan, Canada, and the United States. This was an attempt at opening the South African economy to foreign competition and investment, and promoting growth and employment.

One of the biggest problems facing South Africa was the AIDS epidemic. Some estimates concluded that 6 million South Africans were likely to die of AIDS by 2010. Mbeki disputed that AIDS was caused by HIV (human immunodeficiency virus). His opinion put South Africa at odds with the scientific consensus throughout the world. However, in 2009, South African president Jacob Zuma broadened the country’s AIDS policy.

In Section 3, you will read how democratic ideas changed another part of the world, the Communist Soviet Union.
The Collapse of the Soviet Union

MAIN IDEA
Revolution Democratic reforms brought important changes to the Soviet Union.

WHY IT MATTERS NOW
Russia continues to struggle to establish democracy.

TERMS & NAMES
- Politburo
- Mikhail Gorbachev
- glasnost
- perestroika
- Boris Yeltsin
- CIS
- “shock therapy”

SETTING THE STAGE
After World War II, the Soviet Union and the United States engaged in a Cold War, which you read about in Chapter 17. Each tried to increase its worldwide influence. The Soviet Union extended its power over much of Eastern Europe. By the 1960s, it appeared that communism was permanently established in the region. During the 1960s and 1970s, the Soviet Union’s Communist leadership kept tight control over the Soviet people. But big changes, including democratic reforms, were on the horizon.

Gorbachev Moves Toward Democracy

Soviet premier Leonid Brezhnev and the Politburo—the ruling committee of the Communist Party—crushed all political disagreement. Censors decided what writers could publish. The Communist Party also restricted freedom of speech and worship. After Brezhnev’s death in 1982, the aging leadership of the Soviet Union tried to hold on to power. However, each of Brezhnev’s two successors died after only about a year in office. Who would succeed them?

A Younger Leader
To answer that question, the Politburo debated between two men. One was Mikhail Gorbachev (mih•KYL-GAWR•buh•chawf). Gorbachev’s supporters praised his youth, energy, and political skills. With their backing, Gorbachev became the party’s new general secretary. In choosing him, Politburo members did not realize they were unleashing another Russian Revolution.

The Soviet people welcomed Gorbachev’s election. At 54, he was the youngest Soviet leader since Stalin. Gorbachev was only a child during Stalin’s ruthless purge of independent-minded party members. Unlike other Soviet leaders, Gorbachev decided to pursue new ideas.

Glasnost Promotes Openness
Past Soviet leaders had created a totalitarian state. It rewarded silence and discouraged individuals from acting on their own. As a result, Soviet society rarely changed, and the Soviet economy stagnated. Gorbachev realized that economic and social reforms could not occur without a free flow of ideas and information. In 1985, he announced a policy known as glasnost (GLAHS•muhst), or openness.

Glasnost brought remarkable changes. The government allowed churches to open. It released dissidents from prison and allowed the publication of books by previously banned authors. Reporters investigated problems and criticized officials.
**SKILLBUILDER:**
**Interpreting Visual Sources**

1. **Making Inferences**
   One arrow points down the road toward stagnation. Where is the other arrow, pointing in the opposite direction, likely to lead?

2. **Drawing Conclusions**
   Why might the Soviet Union look different to the figure in the cartoon?

---

**Reforming the Economy and Politics**

The new openness allowed Soviet citizens to complain about economic problems. Consumers protested that they had to stand in lines to buy food and other basics.

**Economic Restructuring**

Gorbachev blamed these problems on the Soviet Union’s inefficient system of central planning. Under central planning, party officials told farm and factory managers how much to produce. They also told them what wages to pay and what prices to charge. Because individuals could not increase their pay by producing more, they had little motive to improve efficiency.

In 1985, Gorbachev introduced the idea of **perestroika** (pehr•ih•STROY•kuh), or economic restructuring. In 1986, he made changes to revive the Soviet economy. Local managers gained greater authority over their farms and factories, and people were allowed to open small private businesses. Gorbachev’s goal was not to throw out communism, but to make the economic system more efficient and productive.

**Democratization Opens the Political System**

Gorbachev also knew that for the economy to improve, the Communist Party would have to loosen its grip on Soviet society and politics. In 1987, he unveiled a third new policy, called democratization. This would be a gradual opening of the political system.

The plan called for the election of a new legislative body. In the past, voters had merely approved candidates who were handpicked by the Communist Party. Now, voters could choose from a list of candidates for each office. The election produced many surprises. In several places, voters chose lesser-known candidates and reformers over powerful party bosses.

**Foreign Policy**

Soviet foreign policy also changed. To compete militarily with the Soviet Union, President Ronald Reagan had begun the most expensive military buildup in peacetime history, costing more than $2 trillion. Under pressure from U.S. military spending, Gorbachev realized that the Soviet economy could not afford the costly arms race. Arms control became one of Gorbachev’s top priorities. In December 1987, he and Reagan signed the Intermediate-Range Nuclear Forces (INF) Treaty. This treaty banned nuclear missiles with ranges of 300 to 3,400 miles.
Chapter 19

Yeltsin made a dramatic comeback and won him for the sake of party unity. Working against perestroika, Gorbachev fired into a bitter speech criticizing conservatives for him into trouble. At one meeting, he launched Moscow in 1985. Yeltsin's outspokenness got him into trouble. At one meeting, he launched into a bitter speech criticizing conservatives for working against perestroika. Gorbachev fired him for the sake of party unity.


The Soviet Union Faces Turmoil

Gorbachev’s new thinking led him to support movements for change in both the economic and political systems within the Soviet Union. Powerful forces for democracy were building in the country, and Gorbachev decided not to oppose reform. Glasnost, perestroika, and democratization were all means to reform the system. However, the move to reform the Soviet Union ultimately led to its breakup.

Various nationalities in the Soviet Union began to call for their freedom. More than 100 ethnic groups lived in the Soviet Union. Russians were the largest, most powerful group. However, non-Russians formed a majority in the 14 Soviet republics other than Russia.

Ethnic tensions brewed beneath the surface of Soviet society. As reforms loosened central controls, unrest spread across the country. Nationalist groups in Georgia, Ukraine, and Moldavia (now Moldova) demanded self-rule. The Muslim peoples of Soviet Central Asia called for religious freedom.

Lithuania Defies Gorbachev The first challenge came from the Baltic nations of Lithuania, Estonia, and Latvia. These republics had been independent states between the two world wars, until the Soviets annexed them in 1940. Fifty years later, in March 1990, Lithuania declared its independence. To try to force it back into the Soviet Union, Gorbachev ordered an economic blockade of the republic.

Although Gorbachev was reluctant to use stronger measures, he feared that Lithuania’s example might encourage other republics to secede. In January 1991, Soviet troops attacked unarmed civilians in Lithuania’s capital. The army killed 14 and wounded hundreds.

Yeltsin Denounces Gorbachev The assault in Lithuania and the lack of economic progress damaged Gorbachev’s popularity. People looked for leadership to Boris Yeltsin. He was a member of parliament and former mayor of Moscow. Yeltsin criticized the crackdown in Lithuania and the slow pace of reforms. In June 1991, voters chose Yeltsin to become the Russian Federation’s first directly elected president.

In spite of their rivalry, Yeltsin and Gorbachev faced a common enemy in the old guard of Communist officials. Hard-liners—conservatives who opposed reform—were furious that Gorbachev had given up the Soviet Union’s role as the dominant force in Eastern Europe. They also feared losing their power and privileges. These officials vowed to overthrow Gorbachev and undo his reforms.
The Breakup of the Soviet Union, 1991

The August Coup  On August 18, 1991, the hardliners detained Gorbachev at his vacation home on the Black Sea. They demanded his resignation as Soviet president. Early the next day, hundreds of tanks and armored vehicles rolled into Moscow. However, the Soviet people had lost their fear of the party. They were willing to defend their freedoms. Protesters gathered at the Russian parliament building, where Yeltsin had his office.

Around midday, Yeltsin emerged and climbed atop one of the tanks. As his supporters cheered, Yeltsin declared, “We proclaim all decisions and decrees of this committee to be illegal. . . . We appeal to the citizens of Russia to . . . demand a return of the country to normal constitutional developments.”

On August 20, the hardliners ordered troops to attack the parliament building, but they refused. Their refusal turned the tide. On August 21, the military withdrew its forces from Moscow. That night, Gorbachev returned to Moscow.

End of the Soviet Union  The coup attempt sparked anger against the Communist Party. Gorbachev resigned as general secretary of the party. The Soviet parliament voted to stop all party activities. Having first seized power in 1917 in a coup that succeeded, the Communist Party now collapsed because of a coup that failed.

The coup also played a decisive role in accelerating the breakup of the Soviet Union. Estonia and Latvia quickly declared their independence. Other republics soon followed. Although Gorbachev pleaded for unity, no one was listening. By early December, all 15 republics had declared independence.

Yeltsin met with the leaders of other republics to chart a new course. They agreed to form the Commonwealth of Independent States, or CIS, a loose federation of former Soviet territories. Only the Baltic republics and Georgia declined to

GEOGRAPHY SKILLBUILDER: Interpreting Maps
1. Place What are the 15 republics of the former Soviet Union?
2. Region Which republic received the largest percentage of the former Soviet Union’s territory?
join. The formation of the CIS meant the death of the Soviet Union. On Christmas Day 1991, Gorbachev announced his resignation as president of the Soviet Union, a country that ceased to exist.

**Russia Under Boris Yeltsin**

As president of the large Russian Federation, Boris Yeltsin was now the most powerful figure in the CIS. He would face many problems, including an ailing economy, tough political opposition, and an unpopular war.

**Yeltsin Faces Problems** One of Yeltsin’s goals was to reform the Russian economy. He adopted a bold plan known as “shock therapy,” an abrupt shift to free-market economics. Yeltsin lowered trade barriers, removed price controls, and ended subsidies to state-owned industries.

Initially, the plan produced more shock than therapy. Prices soared; from 1992 to 1994, the inflation rate averaged 800 percent. Many factories dependent on government money had to cut production or shut down entirely. This forced thousands of people out of work. By 1993, most Russians were suffering economic hardship:

**PRIMARY SOURCE**

A visitor to Moscow cannot escape the feeling of a society in collapse. Child beggars accost foreigners on the street. . . . Children ask why they should stay in school when educated professionals do not make enough money to survive. . . . A garment worker complains that now her wages do not cover even the food bills, while fear of growing crime makes her dread leaving home.

DAVID M. KOTZ, “The Cure That Could Kill”

Economic problems fueled a political crisis. In October 1993, legislators opposed to Yeltsin’s policies shut themselves inside the parliament building. Yeltsin ordered troops to bombard the building, forcing hundreds of rebel legislators to surrender. Many were killed. Opponents accused Yeltsin of acting like a dictator.

**Chechnya Rebels** Yeltsin’s troubles included war in Chechnya (CHEHCH•nee•uh), a largely Muslim area in southwestern Russia. In 1991, Chechnya declared its independence, but Yeltsin denied the region’s right to secede. In 1994, he ordered 40,000 Russian troops into the breakaway republic. Russian forces reduced the capital city of Grozny (GROHZ•nee) to rubble. News of the death and destruction sparked anger throughout Russia.

With an election coming, Yeltsin sought to end the war. In August 1996, the two sides signed a cease-fire. That year, Yeltsin won reelection. War soon broke out again between Russia and Chechnya, however. In 1999, as the fighting raged, Yeltsin resigned and named Vladimir Putin as acting president.
Russia Under Vladimir Putin


Putin Struggles with Chechnya  Putin’s war in Chechnya helped draw terrorism into the Russian capital itself. In October 2002, Chechens seized a theater in Moscow, and more than 150 people died in the rescue attempt by Russian forces.

As the war in Chechnya dragged on, Russian popular support faded, and Putin moved to suppress his critics. The 2005 Chechen elections helped restore order, and as of 2010, under current Russian president, Dmitry Medvedev, the rebels had been largely quieted. But rebellion still simmers.

Economic, Political, and Social Problems  Since the collapse of the Soviet Union, Russia has seen growth in homelessness, domestic violence, and unemployment, and a decrease in life expectancy. Some observers have wondered whether Russian democracy could survive. Putin’s presidency has not settled the question. Russia has been moving towards greater participation in world trade by modernizing banking, insurance, and tax codes. At the same time, attacks on democratic institutions such as a free press have not built the world’s confidence.

The histories of Russia and its European neighbors have always been intertwined. Unrest in the Soviet Union had an enormous impact on Central and Eastern Europe, as you will read in the next section.
Changes in Central and Eastern Europe

### Setting the Stage

The Soviet reforms of the late 1980s brought high hopes to the people of Central and Eastern Europe. For the first time in decades, they were free to make choices about the economic and political systems governing their lives. However, they soon discovered that increased freedom sometimes challenges the social order. Mikhail Gorbachev’s new thinking in the Soviet Union led him to urge Central and Eastern European leaders to open up their economic and political systems.

**Poland and Hungary Reform**

The aging Communist rulers of Europe resisted reform. However, powerful forces for democracy were building in their countries. In the past, the threat of Soviet intervention had kept such forces in check. Now, Gorbachev was saying that the Soviet Union would not oppose reform.

Poland and Hungary were among the first countries in Eastern Europe to embrace the spirit of change. In 1980, Polish workers at the Gdansk shipyard went on strike, demanding government recognition of their union, **Solidarity**. When millions of Poles supported the action, the government gave in to the union’s demands. Union leader **Lech Walesa** became a national hero.

**Solidarity Defeats Communists**

The next year, however, the Polish government banned Solidarity again and declared martial law. The Communist Party discovered that military rule could not revive Poland’s failing economy. In the 1980s, industrial production declined, while foreign debt rose to more than $40 billion.

Public discontent deepened as the economic crisis worsened. In August 1988, defiant workers walked off their jobs. They demanded raises and the legalization of Solidarity. The military leader, General Jaruzelski (**Y AH•roo•ZEHL•skee**), agreed to hold talks with Solidarity leaders. In April 1989, Jaruzelski legalized Solidarity and agreed to hold Poland’s first free election since the Communists took power.

In elections during 1989 and 1990, Polish voters voted against Communists and overwhelmingly chose Solidarity candidates. They elected Lech Walesa president.

**Poland Votes Out Walesa**

After becoming president in 1990, Lech Walesa tried to revive Poland’s bankrupt economy. Like Boris Yeltsin, he adopted a strategy of shock therapy to move Poland toward a free-market economy. As in Russia, inflation and unemployment shot up. By the mid-1990s, the economy was improving.
Nevertheless, many Poles remained unhappy with the pace of economic progress. In the elections of 1995, they turned Walesa out of office in favor of a former Communist, Aleksander Kwasniewski (kfahts•N’YEHF•skee).

**Poland Under Kwasniewski** President Kwasniewski led Poland in its drive to become part of a broader European community. In 1999, Poland became a full member of NATO. As a NATO member, Poland provided strong support in the war against terrorism after the attack on the World Trade Center in New York on September 11, 2001.

In 2005 Lech Kacynski of the conservative Law and Justice Party won the presidency. The following year Kacynski’s twin brother Jaroslaw became prime minister. The Kaczynskis have fought Poland’s pervasive corruption, opposed rapid reforms of the free market, and supported the American-led campaign in Iraq.

**Hungarian Communists Disband** Inspired by the changes in Poland, Hungarian leaders launched a sweeping reform program. To stimulate economic growth, reformers encouraged private enterprise and allowed a small stock market to operate. A new constitution permitted a multiparty system with free elections.

The pace of change grew faster when radical reformers took over a Communist Party congress in October 1989. The radicals deposed the party’s leaders and then dissolved the party itself. Here was another first: a European Communist Party had voted itself out of existence. A year later, in national elections, the nation’s voters put a non-Communist government in power.

In 1994, a socialist party—largely made up of former Communists—won a majority of seats in Hungary’s parliament. The socialist party and a democratic party formed a coalition, or alliance, to rule.

In parliamentary elections in 1998, a liberal party won the most seats in the National Assembly. In 1999, Hungary joined the North Atlantic Treaty Organization as a full member. In the year 2001, there was a general economic downturn in Hungary. This was due to weak exports, decline in foreign investment, and excessive spending on state pensions and increased minimum wages.

**Germany Reunifies**

While Poland and Hungary were moving toward reform, East Germany’s 77-year-old party boss, Erich Honecker, dismissed reforms as unnecessary. Then, in 1989, Hungary allowed vacationing East German tourists to cross the border into Austria. From there they could travel to West Germany. Thousands of East Germans took this new escape route to the west.

**Fall of the Berlin Wall** In response, the East German government closed its borders entirely. By October 1989, huge demonstrations had broken out.
in cities across East Germany. The protesters demanded the right to travel freely, and later added the demand for free elections. Honecker lost his authority with the party and resigned on October 18.

In June 1987, President Reagan had stood before the Berlin Wall and demanded: “Mr. Gorbachev, tear down this wall!” Two years later, the wall was indeed about to come down. The new East German leader, Egon Krenz, boldly gambled that he could restore stability by allowing people to leave East Germany. On November 9, 1989, he opened the Berlin Wall. The long-divided city of Berlin erupted in joyous celebration. Krenz’s dramatic gamble to save communism did not work. By the end of 1989, the East German Communist Party had ceased to exist.

**Reunification** With the fall of Communism in East Germany, many Germans began to speak of **reunification**—the merging of the two Germanyys. However, the movement for reunification worried many people, who feared a united Germany.

The West German chancellor, Helmut Kohl, assured world leaders that Germans had learned from the past. They were now committed to democracy and human rights. Kohl’s assurances helped persuade other European nations to accept German reunification. Germany was officially reunited on October 3, 1990.

**Germany’s Challenges** The newly united Germany faced serious problems. More than 40 years of Communist rule had left eastern Germany in ruins. Its railroads, highways, and telephone system had not been modernized since World War II. East German industries produced goods that could not compete in the global market.

Rebuilding eastern Germany’s bankrupt economy was going to be a difficult, costly process. To pay these costs, Kohl raised taxes. As taxpayers tightened their belts, workers in eastern Germany faced a second problem—unemployment. Inefficient factories closed, depriving millions of workers of their jobs.

**Economic Challenges** In 1998, voters turned Kohl out of office and elected a new chancellor, Gerhard Schroeder, of the Socialist Democratic Party (SDP). Schroeder started out as a market reformer, but slow economic growth made the task of reform difficult. Although Germany had the world’s third largest economy, it had sunk to fifth by 2005. Germany’s unemployment rate was among the highest in Europe, and rising inflation was a problem. However, in 2006, a year after Angela Merkel of the Christian Democrats (CDU) was elected chancellor, unemployment fell below 4 million, and Germany’s budget deficit was kept to within EU limits.

Reunification has also forced Germany—as Central Europe’s largest country—to rethink its role in international affairs.
The Romanian Language

The Romanians are the only people in Eastern Europe whose ancestry and language go back to the ancient Romans. Romanian is the only Eastern European language that developed from Latin. For this reason, Romanian is very different from the other languages spoken in the region.

Today's Romanians are descended from the Dacians (the original people in the region), the Romans, and tribes that arrived later, such as the Goths, Huns, and Slavs.

Romanian remains the official language today. Minority groups within Romania (such as Hungarians, Germans, Gypsies, Jews, Turks, and Ukrainians) sometimes speak their own ethnic languages among themselves. Nonetheless, almost all the people speak Romanian as well.

INTERNET ACTIVITY

Go online to create a poster on all the Romance languages that developed from Latin.

Social History

The Romanian Language

The Romanians are the only people in Eastern Europe whose ancestry and language go back to the ancient Romans. Romanian is the only Eastern European language that developed from Latin. For this reason, Romanian is very different from the other languages spoken in the region.

Today's Romanians are descended from the Dacians (the original people in the region), the Romans, and tribes that arrived later, such as the Goths, Huns, and Slavs.

Romanian remains the official language today. Minority groups within Romania (such as Hungarians, Germans, Gypsies, Jews, Turks, and Ukrainians) sometimes speak their own ethnic languages among themselves. Nonetheless, almost all the people speak Romanian as well.

Democracy Spreads in Czechoslovakia

Changes in East Germany affected other European countries, including Czechoslovakia and Romania.

Czechoslovakia Reforms While huge crowds were demanding democracy in East Germany, neighboring Czechoslovakia remained quiet. A conservative government led by Milos Jakes resisted all change. In 1989, the police arrested several dissidents. Among these was the Czech playwright Václav Havel (VAH•islahv HAH•vehl), a popular critic of the government.

On October 28, 1989, about 10,000 people gathered in Wenceslas Square in the center of Prague. They demanded democracy and freedom. Hundreds were arrested. Three weeks later, about 25,000 students inspired by the fall of the Berlin Wall gathered in Prague to demand reform. Following orders from the government, the police brutally attacked the demonstrators and injured hundreds.

The government crackdown angered the Czech people. Huge crowds gathered in Wenceslas Square. They demanded an end to Communist rule. On November 25, about 500,000 protesters crowded into downtown Prague. Within hours, Milos Jakes and his entire Politburo resigned. One month later, a new parliament elected Václav Havel president of Czechoslovakia.

Czechoslovakia Breaks Up In Czechoslovakia, reformers also launched an economic program based on “shock therapy.” The program caused a sharp rise in unemployment. It especially hurt Slovakia, the republic occupying the eastern third of Czechoslovakia.

Unable to agree on economic policy, the country’s two parts—Slovakia and the Czech Republic—drifted apart. In spite of President Václav Havel’s pleas for unity, a movement to split the nation gained support among the people. Havel resigned because of this. Czechoslovakia split into two countries on January 1, 1993.

Havel was elected president of the Czech Republic. He won reelection in 1998. Then, in 2003, Havel stepped down as president, in part because of ill health. The Czech parliament chose Václav Klaus, a right-wing economist and former prime minister, to succeed him. The economy of the Czech Republic has steadily improved in the face of some serious problems, aided by its becoming a full member of the European Union (EU) in 2004.

Slovakia, too, proceeded on a reformist, pro-Western path. It experienced one of the highest economic growth rates in the region in 2002. In 2004 it elected Ivan Gasparovic president and joined both NATO and the EU.

Overthrow in Romania

By late 1989, only Romania seemed unmoved by the calls for reform. Romania’s ruthless Communist dictator Nicolae Ceausescu (chow•SHES•koo) maintained a firm grip on power. His secret police enforced his orders brutally. Nevertheless, Romanians were aware of the reforms in other countries. They began a protest movement of their own.

A Popular Uprising In December, Ceausescu ordered the army to fire on demonstrators in the city of Timisoara.
The army killed and wounded hundreds of people. The massacre in Timisoara ignited a popular uprising against Ceausescu. Within days, the army joined the people. Shocked by the collapse of his power, Ceausescu and his wife attempted to flee. They were captured, however, and then tried and executed on Christmas Day, 1989. Elections have been held regularly since then. In 2004 Traian Basescu was elected president.

**The Romanian Economy** Throughout the 1990s, Romania struggled with corruption and crime as it tried to salvage its economy. In 2001, overall production was still only 75 percent of what it had been in 1989, the year of Ceausescu's overthrow. In the first years of the 21st century, two-thirds of the economy was still state owned.

However, the government made economic reforms to introduce elements of capitalism. The government also began to reduce the layers of bureaucracy in order to encourage foreign investors. In 2007 Romania joined the European Union, as the Romanian government began to move away from a state controlled economy.

*The Breakup of Yugoslavia*

Ethnic conflict plagued Yugoslavia. This country, formed after World War I, had eight major ethnic groups—Serbs, Croats, Muslims, Slovenes, Macedonians, Albanians, Hungarians, and Montenegrins. Ethnic and religious differences dating back centuries caused these groups to view one another with suspicion. After World War II, Yugoslavia became a federation of six republics. Each republic had a mixed population.

**A Bloody Breakup** Josip Tito, who led Yugoslavia from 1945 to 1980, held the country together. After Tito's death, ethnic resentments boiled over. Serbian leader Slobodan Milosevic (mee•LOH•sheh•viich) asserted leadership over Yugoslavia. Many Serbs opposed Milosevic and his policies and fled the country.

Two republics, Slovenia and Croatia, declared independence. In June 1991, the Serbian-led Yugoslav army invaded both republics. After months of bloody fighting, both republics freed themselves from Serbian rule. Early in 1992, Bosnia-Herzegovina joined Slovenia and Croatia in declaring independence. (In April, Serbia and Montenegro formed a new Yugoslavia.) Bosnia's population included Muslims (44 percent), Serbs (31 percent), and Croats (17 percent). While Bosnia's Muslims and Croats backed independence, Bosnian Serbs strongly opposed it. Supported by Serbia, the Bosnian Serbs launched a war in March 1992.

During the war, Serbian military forces used violence and forced emigration against Bosnian Muslims living in Serb-held lands. Called **ethnic cleansing**, this policy was intended to rid Bosnia of its Muslim population. By 1995, the Serbian military controlled 70 percent of Bosnia. In December of that year, leaders of the three factions involved in the war signed a UN- and U.S.-brokered peace treaty. In September 1996, Bosnians elected a three-person presidency, one leader from each ethnic group. By
Ethnic Groups in the Former Yugoslavia

Many ethnic and religious groups lived within Yugoslavia, which was a federation of six republics. The map shows how the ethnic groups were distributed. Some of those groups held ancient grudges against one another. The chart summarizes some of the cultural differences among the groups.

**Ethnic Groups in the Former Yugoslavia, 1992**

**Differences Among the Ethnic Groups**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Language (slavic unless noted)</th>
<th>Religion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Albanians</td>
<td>Albanian (not Slavic)</td>
<td>mostly Muslim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Croats</td>
<td>dialect of Serbo-Croatian*</td>
<td>mostly Roman Catholic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hungarians</td>
<td>Magyar (not Slavic)</td>
<td>many types of Christians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macedonians</td>
<td>Macedonian</td>
<td>mostly Eastern Orthodox</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Montenegrins</td>
<td>dialect of Serbo-Croatian*</td>
<td>mostly Eastern Orthodox</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muslims</td>
<td>dialect of Serbo-Croatian*</td>
<td>Muslim (converted under Ottoman rule)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serbs</td>
<td>dialect of Serbo-Croatian*</td>
<td>mostly Eastern Orthodox</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slovenes</td>
<td>Slovenian</td>
<td>mostly Roman Catholic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Since Yugoslavia broke apart, many residents of the former republics have started to refer to their dialects as separate languages: Croatian for Croats, Bosnian for Muslims, Serbian for Serbs and Montenegrins.

**SKILLBUILDER: Interpreting Visuals**

1. **Analyzing Issues** Use the chart to find out information about the various groups that lived in Bosnia and Herzegovina (as shown on the map). What were some of the differences among those groups?

2. **Contrasting** Kosovo was a province within Serbia. What group was in the majority there, and how did it differ from Serbs?
2001, Bosnia and Herzegovina began to stand on its own without as much need for supervision by the international community.

Rebellion in Kosovo The Balkan region descended into violence and bloodshed again in 1998, this time in Kosovo, a province in southern Serbia made up almost entirely of ethnic Albanians. As an independence movement in Kosovo grew increasingly violent, Serbian military forces invaded the province. In response to growing reports of atrocities—and the failure of diplomacy to bring peace—NATO began a bombing campaign against Yugoslavia in the spring of 1999. After enduring more than two months of sustained bombing, Yugoslav leaders finally withdrew their troops from Kosovo. In 2007, talks continued over the status of Kosovo.

The Region Faces Its Problems In the early years of the 21st century, there were conflicting signs in Yugoslavia. Slobodan Milosevic was extradited to stand trial for war crimes but died in 2006, while his trial was continuing. A large portion of the country’s foreign debt was erased. Despite an independence movement in Kosovo, parliamentary elections under UN supervision took place in November 2001 without violence.

In Montenegro (which together with Serbia made up Yugoslavia), an independence referendum in May 2006 revealed that most voters wanted to separate from Serbia. As the Montenegrins declared independence in 2006, Serbia accepted the new situation peacefully. In 2007 Serbia held a parliamentary election in which the ultra-nationalist Radical Party made some gains, but could not win enough seats to form a new government.

The nations of Central and Eastern Europe made many gains in the early years of the 21st century. Even so, they continued to face serious obstacles to democracy. Resolving ethnic conflicts remained crucial, as did economic progress. If the nations of Central and Eastern Europe and the former Soviet Union can improve their standard of living, democracy may have a better chance to grow. Meanwhile, economic reforms in Communist China sparked demands for political reforms, as you will read in the next section.

**SECTION ASSESSMENT**

**TERMS & NAMES**

1. For each term or name, write a sentence explaining its significance.
   - Solidarity
   - Lech Walesa
   - reunification
   - ethnic cleansing

**USING YOUR NOTES**

2. Which nation seems to have done best since the breakup? Explain.

**MAIN IDEAS**

3. How did Solidarity affect Communist rule in Poland?
4. What effect did reunification have on Germany’s international role?
5. What was the main cause of the breakup of Czechoslovakia?

**CRITICAL THINKING & WRITING**

6. ANALYZING CAUSES Why did ethnic tension become such a severe problem in the Soviet Union and Yugoslavia?
7. DRAWING CONCLUSIONS What are some of the problems faced in Central and Eastern Europe in the 21st century?
8. RECOGNIZING EFFECTS What effect did economic reform have on Slovakia?
9. WRITING ACTIVITY With a partner, create a cause-and-effect diagram to show how democratic reform spread through Central and Eastern Europe. The diagram should show the order in which reform happened and which countries influenced others.

**CONNECT TO TODAY**

Making a Pie Graph

Research the size of the populations of Central and Eastern Europe countries mentioned in this section. Construct a pie graph showing the comparative sizes of the populations.
SETTING THE STAGE The trend toward democracy around the world also affected China to a limited degree. A political reform movement arose in the late 1980s. It built on economic reforms begun earlier in the decade. However, although the leadership of the Communist Party in China generally supported economic reform, it opposed political reform. China’s Communist government clamped down on the political reformers. At the same time, it maintained a firm grip on power in the country.

The Legacy of Mao

After the Communists came to power in China in 1949, Mao Zedong set out to transform China. Mao believed that peasant equality, revolutionary spirit, and hard work were all that was needed to improve the Chinese economy.

However, lack of modern technology damaged Chinese efforts to increase agricultural and industrial output. In addition, Mao’s policies stifled economic growth. He eliminated incentives for higher production. He tried to replace family life with life in the communes. These policies took away the peasants’ motive to work for the good of themselves and their families.

Facing economic disaster, some Chinese Communists talked of modernizing the economy. Accusing them of “taking the capitalist road,” Mao began the Cultural Revolution in 1966 to cleanse China of antirevolutionary influences.

Mao’s Attempts to Change China

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mao’s Programs</th>
<th>Program Results</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First Five-Year Plan</td>
<td>• Industry grew 15 percent a year.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1953–1957</td>
<td>• Agricultural output grew very slowly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Great Leap Forward</td>
<td>• China suffered economic disaster—industrial declines and food shortages.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cultural Revolution</td>
<td>• Mao regained influence by backing radicals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1966–1976</td>
<td>• Purges and conflicts among leaders created economic, social, and political chaos.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Instead of saving radical communism, however, the Cultural Revolution turned many people against it. In the early 1970s, China entered another moderate period under Zhou Enlai (joh ehn•ly). Zhou had been premier since 1949. During the Cultural Revolution, he had tried to restrain the radicals.

**China and the West**

Throughout the Cultural Revolution, China played almost no role in world affairs. In the early 1960s, China had split with the Soviet Union over the leadership of world communism. In addition, China displayed hostility toward the United States because of U.S. support for the government on Taiwan.

**China Opened Its Doors** China’s isolation worried Zhou. He began to send out signals that he was willing to form ties to the West. In 1971, Zhou startled the world by inviting an American table-tennis team to tour China. It was the first visit by an American group to China since 1949.

The visit began a new era in Chinese-American relations. In 1971, the United States reversed its policy and endorsed UN membership for the People’s Republic of China. The next year, President Nixon made a state visit to China. He met with Mao and Zhou. The three leaders agreed to begin cultural exchanges and a limited amount of trade. In 1979, the United States and China established diplomatic relations.

**Economic Reform** Both Mao and Zhou died in 1976. Shortly afterward, moderates took control of the Communist Party. They jailed several of the radicals who had led the Cultural Revolution. By 1980, Deng Xiaoping (duhng show•pihng) had emerged as the most powerful leader in China. He was the last of the “old revolutionaries” who had ruled China since 1949.

Although a lifelong Communist, Deng boldly supported moderate economic policies. Unlike Mao, he was willing to use capitalist ideas to help China’s economy. He embraced a set of goals known as the **Four Modernizations**. These called for progress in agriculture, industry, defense, and science and technology. Deng launched an ambitious program of economic reforms.

First, Deng eliminated Mao’s communes and leased the land to individual farmers. The farmers paid rent by delivering a fixed quota of food to the government. They could then grow crops and sell them for a profit. Under this system, food production increased by 50 percent in the years 1978 to 1984.

Deng extended his program to industry. The government permitted private businesses to operate. It gave the managers of state-owned industries more freedom to set production goals. Deng also welcomed foreign technology and investment.

Deng’s economic policies produced striking changes in Chinese life. As incomes increased, people began to buy appliances and televisions. Chinese youths now wore stylish clothes and listened to Western music. Gleaming hotels filled with foreign tourists symbolized China’s new policy of openness.

**Recognizing Effects**

What was the ultimate result of Mao’s radical Communist policies?
Massacre in Tiananmen Square

Deng’s economic reforms produced a number of unexpected problems. As living standards improved, the gap between the rich and poor widened. Increasingly, the public believed that party officials profited from their positions.

Furthermore, the new policies admitted not only Western investments and tourists but also Western political ideas. Increasing numbers of Chinese students studied abroad and learned about the West. In Deng’s view, the benefits of opening the economy exceeded the risks. Nevertheless, as Chinese students learned more about democracy, they began to question China’s lack of political freedom.

Students Demand Democracy In 1989, students sparked a popular uprising that stunned China’s leaders. Beginning in April of that year, more than 100,000 students occupied Tiananmen (tyahn•ahn•mehn) Square, a huge public space in the heart of Beijing. The students mounted a protest for democracy. (See photograph on page 630.)

The student protest won widespread popular support. When thousands of students began a hunger strike to highlight their cause, people poured into Tiananmen Square to support them. Many students called for Deng Xiaoping to resign.

Deng Orders a Crackdown Instead of considering political reform, Deng declared martial law. He ordered about 100,000 troops to surround Beijing. Although many students left the square after martial law was declared, about 5,000 chose to remain and continue their protest. The students revived their spirits by defiantly erecting a 33-foot statue that they named the “Goddess of Democracy.”

On June 4, 1989, the standoff came to an end. Thousands of heavily armed soldiers stormed Tiananmen Square. Tanks smashed through barricades and crushed the Goddess of Democracy. Soldiers sprayed gunfire into crowds of frightened students. They also attacked protesters elsewhere in Beijing. The assault killed hundreds and wounded thousands.

Analyzing Primary Sources

Training the Chinese Army

After the massacre in Tiananmen Square, Xiao Ye (a former Chinese soldier living in the United States) explained how Chinese soldiers are trained to obey orders without complaint.

Primary Source

We usually developed bleeding blisters on our feet after a few days of . . . hiking. Our feet were a mass of soggy peeling flesh and blood, and the pain was almost unbearable. . . . We considered the physical challenge a means of tempering [hardening] ourselves for the sake of the Party. . . . No one wanted to look bad. . . .

And during the days in Tiananmen, once again the soldiers did not complain. They obediently drove forward, aimed, and opened fire on command. In light of their training, how could it have been otherwise?

XIAO YE, “Tiananmen Square: A Soldier’s Story”

Document-Based Questions

1. Making Inferences For whom did the soldiers seem to believe they were making their physical sacrifices?

2. Drawing Conclusions What attitude toward obeying orders did their training seem to encourage in the soldiers?
The attack on Tiananmen Square marked the beginning of a massive government campaign to stamp out protest. Police arrested thousands of people. The state used the media to announce that reports of a massacre were untrue. Officials claimed that a small group of criminals had plotted against the government. Television news, however, had already broadcast the truth to the world.

**China Enters the New Millennium**

The brutal repression of the prodemocracy movement left Deng firmly in control of China. During the final years of his life, Deng continued his program of economic reforms.

Although Deng moved out of the limelight in 1995, he remained China’s leader. In February 1997, after a long illness, Deng died. Communist Party General Secretary Jiang Zemin (jie•ahng zeh•meen) assumed the presidency.

**China Under Jiang**

Many questions arose after Deng’s death. What kind of leader would Jiang be? Would he be able to hold on to power and ensure political stability? A highly intelligent and educated man, Jiang had served as mayor of Shanghai. He was considered skilled, flexible, and practical. However, he had no military experience. Therefore, Jiang had few allies among the generals. He also faced challenges from rivals, including hard-line officials who favored a shift away from Deng’s economic policies.

Other questions following Deng’s death had to do with China’s poor human rights record, its occupation of Tibet, and relations with the United States. During the 1990s, the United States pressured China to release political prisoners and ensure basic rights for political opponents. China remained hostile to such pressure. Its government continued to repress the prodemocracy movement. Nevertheless, the desire for freedom still ran through Chinese society. If China remained economically open but politically closed, tensions seemed bound to surface.

In late 1997, Jiang paid a state visit to the United States. During his visit, U.S. protesters demanded more democracy in China. Jiang admitted that China had made some mistakes but refused to promise that China’s policies would change.

President Jiang Zemin and Premier Zhu Rongji announced their retirement in late 2002. Jiang’s successor was Hu Jintao. However, Jiang was expected to wield influence over his successor behind the scenes. Hu became president of the country and general secretary of the Communist Party. Jiang remained political leader of the military. Both supported China’s move to a market economy.

**Transfer of Hong Kong**

Another major issue for China was the status of Hong Kong. Hong Kong was a thriving business center and British colony on the southeastern coast of China. On July 1, 1997, Great Britain handed Hong Kong over to China, ending 155 years of colonial rule. As part of the transfer, China promised to respect Hong Kong’s economic system and political liberties for 50 years.

Many of Hong Kong’s citizens worried about Chinese rule and feared the loss of their freedoms. Others, however, saw the transfer as a way to reconnect with their Chinese
heritage. In the first four or five years after the transfer, the control of mainland China over Hong Kong tightened.

**China Beyond 2000**

The case of China demonstrates that the creation of democracy can be a slow, fitful, and incomplete process. Liberal reforms in one area, such as the economy, may not lead immediately to political reforms.

**Economics and Politics** In China, there has been a dramatic reduction in poverty. Some experts argue that China managed to reform its economy and reduce poverty because it adopted a gradual approach to selling off state industries and privatizing the economy rather than a more abrupt approach. China’s strategy has paid off: by 2007, the country had the world’s fourth largest economy, after the United States, Japan, and Germany. Cheap consumer goods from China are filling shops and department stores worldwide.

But China’s economic strength has come with a cost. The wealth gap between urban and rural areas has widened, with inequality leading to social unrest. In addition, rapid industrialization has caused pollution and severe environmental problems.

As countries are increasingly linked through technology and trade, they will have more opportunity to influence each other politically. When the U.S. Congress voted to normalize trade with China, supporters of such a move argued that the best way to prompt political change in China is through greater engagement rather than isolation. Another sign of China’s increasing engagement with the world was its successful hosting of the 2008 Summer Olympics in Beijing.

**TERMS & NAMES** 1. For each term or name, write a sentence explaining its significance.

- Zhou Enlai
- Deng Xiaoping
- Four Modernizations
- Tiananmen Square
- Hong Kong

**USING YOUR NOTES** 2. Other than the demonstration in Tiananmen Square, which of these events was most important? Explain.

**MAIN IDEAS**

3. What effect did Mao’s policies have on economic growth?
4. What were some of Deng Xiaoping’s economic reforms?
5. How would you describe China’s record on human rights?

**CRITICAL THINKING & WRITING**

6. **Supporting Opinions** Judging from what you have read about the Chinese government, do you think Hong Kong will keep its freedoms under Chinese rule? Explain.
7. **Following Chronological Order** What were some of the events that followed the demonstration in Tiananmen Square?
8. **Comparing and Contrasting** Has there been greater progress in political or economic reform in China?
9. **Writing Activity** Imagine that you are a Chinese student visiting the West. Write a letter home in which you explain what you have seen abroad.

**CONNECT TO TODAY**

**Making a Poster**

China will be hosting the 2008 Summer Olympics in Beijing. Research the efforts that China is making to prepare the city for the festivities and present your findings in a poster.
Photojournalism

From the earliest days of photography, magazines and newspapers have used photographs to convey the news. Photojournalists must respond quickly to recognize a history-making moment and to record that moment before it passes. As the photographs on this page demonstrate, photojournalists have captured many of the democratic struggles that have occurred in the last few decades. In some cases, news photographs have helped protesters or oppressed people gain the support of the world.

Flight from Srebrenica ➤
During the conflicts in Bosnia and Herzegovina, the United Nations declared the city of Srebrenica a safe area. Even so, the Bosnian Serb army invaded in July 1995 and expelled more than 20,000 Muslims—nearly all of them women, children, or elderly people. In addition, the soldiers held more than 7,000 men and boys prisoner and over a five-day period massacred them.

Man Defying Tanks
A single Chinese man blocked tanks on their way to crush pro-democracy protests in Tiananmen Square in June 1989. No one knows for sure what happened to the man afterward—or even who he was. Even so, this image has become one of the enduring photographs of the 20th century; it has come to stand for one man’s courage in defying tyranny.
Fall of the Wall

When the East German government opened the Berlin Wall in November 1989, a huge celebration broke out. Some people began to use pickaxes to demolish the wall entirely. Others danced on top of the wall. (See also the image on page 619.)

Abuelas de Plaza de Mayo

From 1976 to 1983, the military government of Argentina tortured and killed thousands of political dissidents and sometimes stole their children. In this demonstration in December 1979, the Abuelas de Plaza de Mayo (Grandmothers of the Plaza de Mayo) demanded to know the fate of their relatives. The banner they carried reads “Disappeared Children.”

Voting Line

When South Africa held its first all-race election in April 1994, people were so eager to vote that they stood in lines that sometimes stretched nearly a kilometer (0.62 mile).

Connect to Today

1. Forming and Supporting Opinions
   Which of these photographs do you think has the greatest impact on the viewer? Explain why.

2. Forming and Supporting Opinions
   Using Internet or library resources, find a news photograph that you think effectively shows a recent historic event. Bring a copy of the photograph to class, and explain orally or in writing what it conveys about the event.
TERMS & NAMES
For each term or name below, briefly explain its connection to the democratic movements that took place from 1945 to the present.

1. PRI
2. apartheid
3. Nelson Mandela
4. Mikhail Gorbachev
5. glasnost
6. Lech Walesa
7. Deng Xiaoping
8. Tiananmen Square

MAIN IDEAS
Case Study: Latin American Democracies Section 1 (pages 599–605)
9. What are four common democratic practices?
10. What group held up democratic progress in both Brazil and Argentina until the 1980s?

The Challenge of Democracy in Africa Section 2 (pages 606–611)
11. What brought about the civil war in Nigeria?
12. What were three significant steps toward democracy taken by South Africa in the 1990s?

The Collapse of the Soviet Union Section 3 (pages 612–617)
13. What were the main reforms promoted by Soviet leader Mikhail Gorbachev?
14. What was the August Coup and how did it end?

Changes in Central and Eastern Europe Section 4 (pages 618–624)
15. Which nations overthrew Communist governments in 1989?
16. What led to the breakup of Yugoslavia?

China: Reform and Reaction Section 5 (pages 625–631)
17. What changes took place in China during the 1970s?
18. How did the Chinese government react to demands for democratic reform?

CRITICAL THINKING
1. USING YOUR NOTES
List several leaders who helped their nations make democratic progress. For each, cite one positive action.

2. ANALYZING ISSUES
[CULTURAL INTERACTION] What are some examples from this chapter in which the negative impact of one culture on another blocked democratic progress?

3. SYNTHESIZING
Consider what conditions helped democratic movements succeed and what conditions caused difficulties for them. What do you think were their hardest challenges?

4. DRAWING CONCLUSIONS
[ECONOMICS] How does a nation’s economy affect its democratic progress?

5. SUMMARIZING
What were Deng Xiaoping’s economic reforms for China?
Use the quotation and your knowledge of world history to answer questions 1 and 2.

**PRIMARY SOURCE**

Whatever else you can say about the new Hong Kong, it will be more Chinese. Liu Heung-shing, the editor of the new Hong Kong magazine *The Chinese*, says that “for any meaningful art and culture to take off here, Hong Kong must find somewhere to anchor itself. To find that anchor, people will have to go north [to mainland China].” . . . Increasing numbers of Hong Kong’s Cantonese speakers are studying mainland Mandarin. . . . At the same time that [Hong Kong] must resist China to retain Britain’s legacy of rule of law, it knows that the most logical place for it to turn for commerce and culture is China.

*ORVILLE SCHELL, “The Coming of Mao Zedong Chic”*

1. What is the main change that is taking place in Hong Kong’s culture?
   A. China is looking to Hong Kong for cultural inspiration.
   B. Hong Kong is turning to China for cultural inspiration.
   C. Hong Kong is turning to the West for cultural inspiration.
   D. Hong Kong is turning inward.

2. What point of view might a Hong Kong politician have about this change?
   A. may fear China will restrict the city’s freedoms
   B. may welcome tighter controls from China
   C. may threaten military action against China
   D. may vow never to cooperate with mainland China

Use this political cartoon and your knowledge of world history to answer question 3.

3. What is the cartoon saying about the state of communism in Poland, China, and the Soviet Union?
   A. Communism is thriving.
   B. Communism is helping nations gain economic health.
   C. Communism is failing around the world.
   D. Communism is sick but will recover.

**INTERACT WITH HISTORY**

On page 598, you considered why so many people want democracy. Now that you’ve read the chapter, have your explanations changed? Would you add anything to what you said before? Would you change anything you said before?

**FOCUS ON WRITING**

A government official has asked you for suggestions on how to move a Communist economy to a free-market economy. Go through the chapter and compile a “Things to Do” report based on actions that other governments have taken. Consider the following issues:
- unemployment
- inflation
- political effects
- social upheaval

**MULTIMEDIA ACTIVITY**

**Creating a Virtual Field Trip**

With two other classmates, plan a two-week virtual field trip to explore the sights in China, including the Forbidden City and the sites of the 2008 Summer Olympics. After selecting and researching the sites you’d like to visit, use maps to determine your itinerary. Consider visiting these places and enjoying these excursions:
- Sites of the 2008 Summer Olympic games
- Sites around Beijing
- Great Wall
- A cruise along the Chang Jiang or Huang He rivers
- Three Gorges Dam
- Shanghai

For each place or excursion, give one reason why it is an important destination on a field trip to China. Include pictures and sound in your presentation.
 Advances in science and technology have changed the lives of people around the globe. Improved communications and transportation have allowed goods, services, and ideas to move rapidly.

**Geography** How does this map illustrate the idea of global interdependence?

**CULTURAL INTERACTION** Inventions and innovations have brought the nations of the world closer and exposed people to other cultures. Cultures are now blending ideas and customs much faster than before.

**Geography** Which countries in the Western Hemisphere are major destinations for immigrants?

**ECONOMICS** Since World War II, nations have worked to expand trade and commerce in world markets. Changes in technology have blurred national boundaries and created a global market.

**Geography** What do most countries with a net migration rate above 3 have in common economically?

**POWER AND AUTHORITY** Since the end of World War II, nations have adopted collective efforts to ensure their security. One of the greatest challenges in maintaining global security is international terrorism.

**Geography** What do most countries with a net migration rate above 3 have in common politically?
How do global events affect your daily life?

You have just seen a television program recapping some recent news events. You are surprised at the number of stories that involve the United States and other countries. You begin to think about how events in such distant places as China and Iraq can affect life in your own country.

As a class, discuss these questions. Remember what you have learned about the recent history of nations in different regions of the world. Try to think of reasons that nations are becoming increasingly dependent on one another. As you read this chapter, look for examples of economic, political, and cultural interdependence among the nations of the world.
The Impact of Science and Technology

**MAIN IDEA**

**SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY**

Advances in technology after World War II led to increased global interaction and improved quality of life.

**WHY IT MATTERS NOW**

Advances in science and technology affect the lives of people around the world.

**TERMS & NAMES**

- International Space Station
- Internet
- genetic engineering
- cloning
- green revolution

**SETTING THE STAGE**

Beginning in the late 1950s, the United States and the Soviet Union competed in the exploration of space. The Soviets launched Earth’s first artificial satellite and put the first human in orbit around the planet. By the late 1960s, however, the United States had surpassed the Soviets. U.S. astronauts landed on the moon in 1969. The heavy emphasis on science and technology that the space race required led to the development of products that changed life for people across the globe.

**Exploring the Solar System and Beyond**

In its early years, competition between the United States and the Soviet Union in the space race was intense. Eventually, however, space exploration became one of the world’s first and most successful arenas for cooperation between U.S. and Soviet scientists.

**Cooperation in Space**

In 1972, years before the end of the Cold War, the United States and Soviet space programs began work on a cooperative project—the docking of U.S. and Soviet spacecraft in orbit. This goal was achieved on July 17, 1975, when spacecraft from the two countries docked some 140 miles above Earth. Television viewers across the globe watched as the hatch between the space vehicles opened and crews from Earth’s fiercest rival countries greeted each other.

This first cooperative venture in space between the United States and the Soviet Union was an isolated event. People from different countries, however, continued to work together to explore space. The Soviets were the first to send an international crew into space. The crew of Soyuz 28, which orbited Earth in 1978, included a Czech cosmonaut. Since the mid-1980s, crews on U.S. space shuttle flights have included astronauts from Saudi Arabia, France, Germany, Canada, Italy, Japan, Israel, and Mexico. Shuttle missions put crews in orbit around Earth to accomplish a variety of scientific and technological tasks.

The **International Space Station** (ISS) project came together in 1993 when the United States and Russia agreed to merge their individual space station programs. The European Space Agency (ESA) and Japan also became part of the effort. Beginning in 1998, U.S. shuttles and Russian spacecraft transported sections of the ISS to be assembled in space. By the time it is completed in 2010, the ISS will cover...
an area larger than a football field and house a crew of six. Ongoing experiments aboard the ISS will hopefully lead to advances in medicine and technology and help scientists study the long-term effects of weightlessness on the human body.

Exploring the Universe Unmanned space probes have been used to study the farther reaches of the solar system. The Soviet Venera spacecraft in the 1970s and the U.S. probe Magellan in 1990 provided in-depth information about Venus. On a 12-year journey that began in 1977, the U.S. Voyager 2 sent dazzling pictures of Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, and Neptune back to Earth.

In 1990, the U.S. space agency, NASA, and the European Space Agency worked together to develop and launch the Hubble Space Telescope. Nearly twenty years later, this orbiting telescope continues to observe and send back images of objects in the most remote regions of the universe.

In 2004, NASA had two robotic rovers successfully land on Mars. Their mission was to study the planet for signs of water or life (now or in the past). Both rovers, Spirit and Opportunity, found evidence of water in Mars’s past. Five years later, both were still operating—sending data back to Earth.

Expanding Global Communications

Since the 1960s, artificial satellites launched into orbit around Earth have aided worldwide communications. With satellite communication, the world has been gradually transformed into a global village. Today, political and cultural events occurring in one part of the world often are witnessed live by people thousands of miles away. This linking of the globe through worldwide communications is made possible by the miniaturization of the computer.

Smaller, More Powerful Computers In the 1940s, when computers first came into use, they took up a huge room. In the years since then, however, the circuitry that runs the computer has been miniaturized and made more powerful. This change is due, in part, to the space program, for which equipment had to be downsized to fit into tiny space capsules. Silicon chips replaced the bulky vacuum tubes used earlier. Smaller than contact lenses, silicon chips hold millions of microscopic circuits.

Following this development, industries began to use computers and silicon chips to run assembly lines. Today a variety of consumer products such as microwave ovens, telephones, keyboard instruments, and cars use computers and chips. Computers have become essential in offices, and millions of people around the globe have computers in their homes.

Hypothesizing

Why might rival nations cooperate in space activities but not on Earth?
Communications Networks Starting in the 1990s, businesses and individuals began using the Internet. The Internet is the voluntary linkage of computer networks around the world. It began in the late 1960s as a method of linking scientists so they could exchange information about research. Through telephone-line links, business and personal computers can be hooked up with computer networks. These networks allow users to communicate with people across the nation and around the world. Between 1995 and the end of 2007, the number of worldwide Internet users soared from 26 million to more than a billion.

Conducting business on the Internet has become a way of life. The Internet transmits information electronically to remote locations, paving the way for home offices and telecommuting—working at home using a computer connected to a business network. Once again, as it has many times in the past, technology has changed how and where people work.

Transforming Human Life

Advances with computers and communications networks have transformed not only the ways people work but lifestyles as well. Technological progress in the sciences, medicine, and agriculture has improved the quality of the lives of millions of people.

Health and Medicine Before World War II, surgeons seldom performed operations on sensitive areas such as the eye or the brain. However, in the 1960s and 1970s, new technologies, such as more powerful microscopes, the laser, and ultrasound, were developed. Many of these technologies advanced surgical techniques.

Advances in medical imaging also helped to improve health care. Using data provided by CAT scans and MRI techniques, doctors can build three-dimensional images of different organs or regions of the body. Doctors use these images to diagnose injuries, detect tumors, or collect other medical information.

In the 1980s, genetics, the study of heredity through research on genes, became a fast-growing field of science. Found in the cells of all organisms, genes are hereditary units that cause specific traits, such as eye color, in every living organism. Technology allowed scientists to isolate and examine individual genes that are responsible for different traits. Through genetic engineering, scientists were able to introduce new genes into an organism to give that organism new traits.

Another aspect of genetic engineering is cloning. This is the creation of identical copies of DNA, the chemical chains of genes that determine heredity. Cloning actually allows scientists to reproduce both plants and animals that are identical to
The Green Revolution

In the 1960s, agricultural scientists around the world started a campaign known as the green revolution. It was an attempt to increase food production worldwide. Scientists promoted the use of fertilizers, pesticides, and high-yield, disease-resistant strains of a variety of crops. The green revolution helped avert famine and increase crop yields in many parts of the world.

However, the green revolution had its negative side. Fertilizers and pesticides often contain dangerous chemicals that may cause cancer and pollute the environment. Also, the cost of the chemicals and the equipment to harvest more crops was far too expensive for an average peasant farmer. Consequently, owners of small farms received little benefit from the advances in agriculture. In some cases, farmers were forced off the land by larger agricultural businesses.

Advances in genetics research seem to be helping to fulfill some of the goals of the green revolution. In this new “gene revolution,” resistance to pests is bred into plant strains, reducing the need for pesticides. Plants being bred to tolerate poor soil conditions also reduce the need for fertilizers. The gene revolution involves some risks, including the accidental creation of disease-causing organisms. However, the revolution holds great promise for increasing food production in a world with an expanding population.

Science and technology have changed the lives of millions of people. What people produce and even their jobs have changed. These changes have altered the economies of nations. Not only have nations become linked through communications networks but they are also linked in a global economic network, as you will see in Section 2.
Global Economic Development

**Main Idea**
The economies of the world’s nations are so tightly linked that the actions of one nation affect others.

**Why It Matters Now**
Every individual is affected by the global economy and the environment.

**Terms & Names**
- developed nation
- emerging nation
- global economy
- free trade
- ozone layer
- sustainable growth

**Setting the Stage**
At the end of World War II, much of Europe and Asia lay in ruins, with many of the major cities leveled by bombing. The devastation of the war was immense. However, with aid from the United States, the economies of Western European nations and Japan began expanding rapidly within a decade. Their growth continued for half a century, long after the United States ceased supplying aid. Advances in science and technology contributed significantly to this ongoing economic growth.

**Technology Revolutionizes the World’s Economy**
In both Asia and the Western world, an explosion in scientific knowledge prompted great progress that quickly led to new industries. A prime example was plastics. In the 1950s, a process to develop plastics from petroleum at low pressures and low temperatures was perfected. Within a few years, industries made a host of products easily and cheaply out of plastics. Other technological advances have also changed industrial processes, lowered costs, and increased the quality or the speed of production. For example, robotic arms on automobile assembly lines made possible the fast and safe manufacture of high-quality cars.

**Information Industries Change Economies**
Technological advances in manufacturing reduced the need for factory workers. But in other areas of the economy, new demands were emerging. Computerization and communications advances changed the processing of information. By the 1980s, people could transmit information quickly and cheaply. Information industries such as financial services, insurance, market research, and communications services boomed. Those industries depended on “knowledge workers,” or people whose jobs focus on working with information.

**The Effects of New Economies**
In the postwar era, the expansion of the world’s economies led to an increase in the production of goods and services so that many nations benefited. The economic base of some nations shifted. Manufacturing jobs began to move out of **developed nations**, those nations with the industrialization, transportation, and business facilities for advanced production of manufactured goods. The jobs moved to **emerging nations**, those in the process of becoming industrialized. Emerging nations became prime locations for new manufacturing operations. Some economists believe these areas were chosen because
they had many eager workers whose skills fit manufacturing-type jobs. Also, these workers would work for less money than those in developed nations. On the other hand, information industries that required better-educated workers multiplied in the economies of developed nations. Thus the changes brought by technology then changed the workplace of both developed and emerging nations.

## Economic Globalization

Economies in different parts of the world have been linked for centuries through trade and through national policies, such as colonialism. However, a true global economy did not begin to take shape until well into the second half of the 1800s. The global economy includes all the financial interactions—among people, businesses, and governments—that cross international borders. In recent decades, several factors hastened the process of globalization. Huge cargo ships could inexpensively carry enormous supplies of fuels and other goods from one part of the world to another. Telephone and computer linkages made global financial transactions quick and easy. In addition, multinational corporations developed around the world.

### Multinational Corporations

Companies that operate in a number of different countries are called multinational or transnational corporations. U.S. companies such as Exxon Mobil and Ford; European companies such as BP and Royal Dutch/Shell; and Japanese companies such as Toyota and Mitsui are all multinational giants.

All of these companies have established manufacturing plants, offices, or stores in many countries. For their manufacturing plants, they select spots where the raw materials or labor are cheapest. This enables them to produce components of their products on different continents. They ship the various components to another location to be assembled. This level of economic integration allows such companies to view the whole world as the market for their goods. Goods or services are distributed throughout the world as if there were no national boundaries.

### Expanding Free Trade

Opening up the world’s markets to trade is a key aspect of globalization. In fact, a major goal of globalization is free trade, or the elimination of trade barriers, such as tariffs, among nations. As early as 1947, nations began discussing ways to open trade. The result of these discussions was the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT). Over the years, several meetings among the nations that signed the GATT have brought about a general lowering of protective tariffs and considerable expansion of free trade. Since 1995, the World Trade Organization (WTO) has overseen the GATT to ensure that trade among nations flows as smoothly and freely as possible.

### Regional Trade Blocs

A European organization set up in 1951 promoted tariff-free trade among member countries. This experiment in economic cooperation was so successful that six years later, a new organization, the European Economic Community (EEC), was formed. Over time, most of the other Western European countries joined the...
organization, which has been known as the European Union (EU) since 1992. By 2007, twenty-seven nations were EU members, and many had adopted the common European currency—the euro (symbol: €).

The economic success of the EU inspired countries in other regions to make trade agreements with each other. The North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA), put into effect in 1994, called for the gradual elimination of tariffs and trade restrictions among Canada, the United States, and Mexico. Organizations in Asia, Africa, Latin America, and the South Pacific have also created regional trade policies.

**A Global Economic Crisis** Beginning in 2007, after a long period of relative worldwide prosperity, several factors combined to cause an economic downturn. Housing prices in the United States had skyrocketed, driven up by lax lending policies that offered mortgage loans to almost anyone. The financial industry found it could bundle a group of these mortgages into an investment vehicle called a mortgage-backed security (MBS). These securities were then purchased by investors worldwide, who believed them to be safe investments. When housing prices in the United States began to plummet, banks and other financial companies across the globe saw the value of their MBSs wither. Lending virtually stopped, investors teetered on the brink of bankruptcy, and millions of people worldwide lost their homes and jobs. Governments around the world were forced to step in to stabilize the situation. By 2010, the world economy had indeed stabilized, but it remained relatively weak.
Globalization

Globalization can be described in broad terms as a process that makes something worldwide in its reach or operation. Currently, globalization is most often used in reference to the spread and diffusion of economic or cultural influences. The graphics below focus on economic globalization. The first shows a global corporation. The second lists some arguments for and against economic globalization.

Arguments for and Against Economic Globalization

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>For</th>
<th>Against</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• promotes peace through trade</td>
<td>• creates conflict because of an inherently unfair system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• raises the standard of living around the world</td>
<td>• benefits developed nations disproportionately</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• creates jobs in emerging countries</td>
<td>• takes jobs from high-paid laborers in developed countries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• promotes investment in less developed countries</td>
<td>• benefits those who already have money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• creates a sense of world community</td>
<td>• erodes local cultures</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Connect to Today

1. **Making Inferences** How are money and culture related to each other when discussing globalization? See Skillbuilder Handbook, page R10.
2. **Making Predictions** Will globalization continue or will another process replace it? Why or why not?
Impact of Global Development

The development of the global economy has had a notable impact on the use of energy and other resources. Worldwide demand for these resources has led to both political and environmental problems.

**Political Impacts** Manufacturing requires the processing of raw materials. Trade requires the transport of finished goods. These activities, essential for development, require the use of much energy. For the past 50 years, one of the main sources of energy used by developed and emerging nations has been oil. For nations with little of this resource available in their own land, disruption of the distribution of oil causes economic and political problems.

On the other hand, nations possessing oil reserves have the power to affect economic and political situations in countries all over the world. For example, in the 1970s the Organization of Petroleum Exporting Countries (OPEC) declared an oil embargo—a restriction of trade. This contributed to a significant economic decline in many developed nations during that decade.

In 1990, Iraq invaded Kuwait and seized the Kuwaiti oil fields. Fears began to mount that Iraq would also invade Saudi Arabia, another major source of oil. This would have put most of the world’s petroleum supplies under Iraqi control. Economic sanctions imposed by the UN failed to persuade Iraq to withdraw from Kuwait. Then, in early 1991, a coalition of some 39 nations declared war on Iraq. After several weeks of fighting, the Iraqis left Kuwait and accepted a cease-fire. This Persian Gulf War showed the extent to which the economies of nations are globally linked.

**Environmental Impacts** Economic development has had a major impact on the environment. The burning of coal and oil as an energy source releases carbon dioxide into the atmosphere, causing health-damaging air pollution and acid rain. The buildup of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere also has contributed to global warming.

The release of chemicals called chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs), used in refrigerators, air conditioners, and manufacturing processes, has destroyed ozone in Earth’s upper atmosphere. The **ozone layer** is our main protection against the Sun’s damaging ultraviolet rays. With the increase in ultraviolet radiation reaching Earth’s surface, the incidence of skin cancer continues to rise in many parts of the world. Increased ultraviolet radiation also may result in damage to populations of plants and plankton at the bases of the food chains, which sustain all life on Earth.

> During the 1991 Persian Gulf War, the Iraqis set hundreds of Kuwaiti oil wells ablaze. Smoke from these fires clouded the skies more than 250 miles away.
Economic development has also led to problems with the land. Large-scale soil erosion is a worldwide problem due to damaging farming techniques. The habitat destruction that comes from land development has also led to shrinking numbers of wildlife around the world. At present, the extinction rate of plants and animals is about a thousand times greater than it would naturally be, and appears to be increasing. This high extinction rate means that certain species can no longer serve as an economic resource. The resulting loss of wildlife could endanger complex and life-sustaining processes that keep Earth in balance.

“Sustainable Growth” Working together, economists and scientists are looking for ways to reduce the negative effect that development has on the environment. Their goal is to manage development so that growth can occur, but without destroying air, water, and land resources. The concept is sometimes called “green growth.” Many people feel that the negative impact of economic growth on the environment will not be completely removed.

But “greener growth,” also known as sustainable growth, is possible. This involves two goals: meeting current economic needs, while ensuring the preservation of the environment and the conservation of resources for future generations. Making such plans and putting them into practice have proved to be difficult. But many scientists believe that meeting both goals is essential for the health of the planet in the future. Because the economies of nations are tied to their political climates, such development plans will depend on the efforts of nations in both economic and political areas.

**Ozone Levels**
A large area of the ozone layer has become much thinner in recent years.

**TERMS & NAMES**
1. For each term or name, write a sentence explaining its significance.
   - developed nation
   - emerging nation
   - global economy
   - free trade
   - ozone layer
   - sustainable growth

**USING YOUR NOTES**
2. Which of these forces do you think has had the greatest impact on the development of a global economy?

**MAIN IDEAS**
3. Why are “knowledge workers” becoming more important in the developed nations?
4. What impact did the economic success of the EU have on other regions of the world?
5. How has global economic development affected the environment?

**CRITICAL THINKING & WRITING**
6. **RECOGNIZING EFFECTS** In what ways has technology changed the workplace of people across the world?
7. **ANALYZING MOTIVES** Why might some nations favor imposing tariffs on the imports of certain products?
8. **SUPPORTING OPINIONS** Do you think that sustainable growth is possible? Why or why not?
9. **WRITING ACTIVITY** **ECONOMICS** Make a survey of the labels on class members’ clothing and shoes. List the countries in which these items were produced. Write a short explanation of how the list illustrates the global economy.
Economics and the Environment

Economists, politicians, and environmentalists came up with the concept of “sustainable growth”—both economic development and environmental protection are considered when producing a development plan for a nation. Some people see the relationship between economics and the environment as strained and getting worse. Others view policies protecting the environment as harmful to economies and ultimately harmful to the environment. The selections below examine these different perspectives.

**A PRIMARY SOURCE**

Lester R. Brown

Lester R. Brown is president of the Earth Policy Institute, which researches how to attain an environmentally sustainable economy and assesses current economic programs around the world.

Most decisions taken in economic policy are made by economic advisors. You can see this in the World Bank's annual development reports where they see the environment as a sub-sector of the economy. However, if you look at it as a natural scientist or ecologist, you have to conclude that the economy is a subset of the earth's ecosystem.

Many of the problems that we face are the result of the incompatibility of the economy with the ecosystem. The relationship between the global economy, which has expanded sixfold over the last half century, and the earth's ecosystem is a very stressed one. The manifestations of this stress are collapsing fisheries, falling water tables, shrinking forests, expanding deserts, rising carbon dioxide levels, rising temperatures, melting ice, dying coral reefs, and so forth. Not only is this a stressed relationship but a deteriorating one.

**B PRIMARY SOURCE**

The Liberty Institute

The Liberty Institute is based in India and seeks to strengthen individual rights, rule of law, limited government, and free markets.

The market is the natural ally of the environment. Environmental resources, like other economic resources can be most efficiently allocated if these are brought under the discipline of the marketplace. It is ironic . . . [that] rather than creating a market for environmental resources, new restrictions are being imposed on the economy in the name of protecting the environment.

Environmental quality is like a value-added product that becomes economically affordable and technologically viable with economic growth. It is no paradox therefore that the environment is much cleaner and safer in industrially developed countries that adopted a more market-friendly approach.

The market allows the consumer to register his price preference for a particular quality of product, including environmental quality.

**C POLITICAL CARTOON**

Chris Madden

Educating through humor, cartoonist Chris Madden illustrates the close connection between the environment and economics. A “ship of fools” is a metaphor for human weakness.

The ship of fools and the rocks of short-term economic planning

**Document-Based QUESTIONS**

1. Compare Sources A and B. Which perspective do you support? Why?
2. In your own words, describe the meaning of the cartoon in Source C.
3. Research an environmental issue facing your community and how economics is a part of the debate. Present your findings to the class.
Global Security Issues

MAIN IDEA

POWER AND AUTHORITY Since 1945, nations have used collective security efforts to solve problems.

WHY IT MATTERS NOW

Personal security of the people of the world is tied to security within and between nations.

TERMS & NAMES

• proliferation
• Universal Declaration of Human Rights
• political dissent
• gender inequality
• AIDS
• refugee

SETTING THE STAGE

World War II was one of history's most devastating conflicts. More than 55 million people died as a result of bombings, the Holocaust, combat, starvation, and disease. Near the end of the war, one of humankind's most destructive weapons, the atomic bomb, killed more than 100,000 people in Hiroshima and Nagasaki in a matter of minutes. Perhaps because of these horrors, world leaders look for ways to make the earth a safer, more secure place to live.

Issues of War and Peace

In the years after the end of World War II, the Cold War created new divisions and tensions among the world's nations. This uneasy situation potentially threatened the economic, environmental, and personal security of people across the world. So, nations began to work together to pursue collective security.

Nations Unite and Take Action

Many nations consider that having a strong military is important to their security. After World War II, nations banded together to create military alliances. They formed the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO), the Southeast Asia Treaty Organization (SEATO), the Warsaw Pact, and others. The member nations of each of these alliances generally pledged military aid for their common defense.

In addition to military alliances to increase their security, world leaders also took steps to reduce the threat of war. The United Nations (UN) works in a variety of ways toward increasing collective global security.

Peacekeeping Activities

One of the major aims of the UN is to promote world peace. The UN provides a public forum, private meeting places, and skilled mediators to help nations try to resolve conflicts at any stage of their development. At the invitation of the warring parties, the UN also provides peacekeeping forces. These forces are made up of soldiers from different nations. They work to carry out peace agreements, monitor cease-fires, or put an end to fighting to allow peace negotiations to go forward. They also help to move refugees, deliver supplies, and operate hospitals.

As of June 2007, the UN had over 82,000 soldiers and police in 16 peacekeeping forces around the world. Some forces, such as those in India, Pakistan, and Cyprus, have been in place for decades.
Weapons of Mass Destruction

Nations have not only worked to prevent and contain conflicts, they also have forged treaties to limit the manufacturing, testing, and trade of weapons. The weapons of most concern are those that cause mass destruction. These include nuclear, chemical, and biological weapons that can kill thousands, even millions of people.

In 1968, many nations signed a Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty to help prevent the proliferation, or spread, of nuclear weapons to other nations. In the 1970s, the United States and the Soviet Union signed the Strategic Arms Limitation Treaties. In the 1980s, both countries talked about deactivating some of their nuclear weapons. Many nations also signed treaties promising not to produce biological or chemical weapons.

War in Iraq Other nations, however, have tried to develop weapons of mass destruction (WMD). Iraq, for example, used chemical weapons in conflicts during the 1980s. Many people suspected that the Iraqi leader, Saddam Hussein, had plans to develop biological and nuclear weapons too. As part of the cease-fire arrangements in the Persian Gulf War, Iraq agreed to destroy its weapons of mass destruction. UN inspectors were sent to monitor this disarmament process. However, in 1998, the Iraqis ordered the inspectors to leave.

In 2002, analysts once again suspected that Hussein might be developing WMD. UN weapons inspectors returned, but Hussein seemed reluctant to cooperate. U.S. President George Bush argued that Hussein might be close to building powerful weapons to use against the United States or its allies. In March 2003, Bush ordered American troops to invade Iraq. Troops from Great Britain and other countries supported the attack. After four weeks of fighting, Hussein’s government fell.

However, violence in Iraq continued. Factions of Iraqis battled one another for power in the new government. Iraqis angered by the presence of foreign troops in their country fought American soldiers. By the end of 2009, untold thousands of Iraqis and over 4,300 Americans had been killed. No WMD were ever found.

Ethnic and Religious Conflicts Some conflicts among people of different ethnic or religious groups have roots centuries old. Such conflicts include those between Protestants and Catholics in Ireland, between Palestinians and Israelis in the Middle East, and among Serbs, Bosnians, and Croats in southeastern Europe.

These conflicts have led to terrible violence. The Kurds of southwest Asia have also been the victims of such violence. For decades, Kurds have wanted their own country. But their traditional lands cross the borders of three countries—Turkey, Iran, and Iraq. In the past, the Turks responded to Kurdish nationalism by forbidding Kurds to speak their native language. The Iranians also persecuted the Kurds, attacking them over religious issues. In the late 1980s, the Iraqis dropped poison gas on the Kurds, killing 5,000. Several international organizations, including the UN, worked to end the human rights abuses inflicted upon the Kurds.
Human Rights Issues

In 1948, the UN issued the **Universal Declaration of Human Rights**, which set human rights standards for all nations. It stated that “All human beings are born free and equal in dignity and rights. . . . Everyone has the right to life, liberty, and security of person.” The declaration further listed specific rights that all human beings should have. Later, in the Helsinki Accords of 1975, the UN addressed the issues of freedom of movement and freedom to publish and exchange information.

Both the declaration and the accords are nonbinding. However, the sentiments in these documents inspired many people around the world. They made a commitment to ensuring that basic human rights are respected. The UN and other international agencies, such as Amnesty International, identify and publicize human rights violations. They also encourage people to work toward a world in which liberty and justice are guaranteed for all.

**Continuing Rights Violations** Despite the best efforts of various human rights organizations, protecting human rights remains an uphill battle. Serious violations of fundamental rights continue to occur around the world.

One type of violation occurs when governments try to stamp out political dissent, or the difference of opinion over political issues. In many countries around the world, from Cuba to Iran to Myanmar, individuals and groups have been persecuted for holding political views that differ from those of the people in power. In some countries, ethnic or racial hatreds lead to human rights abuses. In Sudan’s western province of Darfur, for example, militias and government forces have been accused of genocide. The situation has created hundreds of thousands of refugees and led to the deaths of 200,000.

**Women’s Status Improves** In the past, when women in Western nations entered the work force, they often faced discrimination in employment and salary. In non-Western countries, many women not only faced discrimination in jobs, they were denied access to education. In regions torn by war or ethnic conflict, they were often victims of violence and abuse. As women suffered, so too did their family members, especially children.

However, in the 1970s, a heightened awareness of human rights encouraged women in many countries to work to improve their lives. They pushed for new laws and government policies that gave them greater equality. In 1975, the UN held the first of several international conferences on women’s status in the world. The fourth conference was held in Beijing, China, in 1995. It addressed such issues as preventing violence against women and empowering women to take leadership roles in politics and in business.

In 2005, the UN reviewed the status of women. Its report, titled *Progress of the World’s Women 2000*, found that women had made notable gains in many parts of the world, especially in the areas of education and work. Even so, the report concluded that gender inequality—the difference between men and women in terms of wealth and status—still very much existed.

**Vocabulary**

A nonbinding agreement means that a nation does not suffer a penalty if it does not meet the terms of the declaration.
Health Issues

In recent decades, the enjoyment of a decent standard of health has become recognized as a basic human right. However, for much of the world, poor health is the norm. World health faced a major threat in 2003, with the outbreak of severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS). This pneumonia-like disease emerged in China and spread worldwide. Afraid of infection, many people canceled travel to Asia. The resulting loss of business hurt Asian economies.

The AIDS Epidemic Perhaps the greatest global health issue is a disease known as AIDS, or acquired immune deficiency syndrome. It attacks the immune system, leaving sufferers open to deadly infections. The disease was first detected in the early 1980s. Since that time, AIDS has claimed the lives of nearly 25 million people worldwide. By 2007, there were almost 40 million people across the world living with HIV (the virus that causes AIDS) or AIDS. And in 2006, 4.3 million people were newly infected with HIV.

While AIDS is a worldwide problem, Sub-Saharan Africa has suffered most from the epidemic. About 63 percent of all persons infected with HIV live in this region. And in 2005, on average as many as 6,500 people died of AIDS each day. Most of the people dying are between the ages of 15 and 49—the years when people are at their most productive economically. AIDS, therefore, is reducing the number of people available as workers, managers, and entrepreneurs. As a result, economic growth is slowing in many countries in the region.

Since the ’90s the world has made some progress in slowing the spread of AIDS. In response to the devastating impact of the disease, the UN issued the Declaration of Commitment on HIV/AIDS in 2001. This document set targets for halting the spread of AIDS and provided guidelines on how countries could pool their efforts.
Population Movement

The global movement of people has increased dramatically in recent years. This migration has taken place for both negative and positive reasons.

**Push-Pull Factors**  People often move because they feel pushed out of their homelands. Lack of food due to drought, natural disasters, and political oppression are examples of push factors of migration. In 2005, the number of refugees—people who leave their country to move to another to find safety—stood at 19.2 million.

Not only negative events push people to migrate. Most people have strong connections to their home countries and do not leave unless strong positive attractions pull them away. They hope for a better life for themselves and for their children, and thus migrate to developed nations. For example, hundreds of thousands of people migrate from Africa to Europe and from Latin America to the United States every year.

**Effects of Migration**  Everyone has the right to leave his or her country. However, the country to which a migrant wants to move may not accept that person. The receiving country might have one policy about accepting refugees from political situations, and another about migrants coming for economic reasons. Because of the huge volume of people migrating from war-torn, famine-stricken, and politically unstable regions, millions of immigrants have no place to go. Crowded into refugee camps, often under squalid conditions, these migrants face a very uncertain future.

On the positive side, immigrants often are a valuable addition to their new country. They help offset labor shortages in a variety of industries. They bring experiences and knowledge that can spur the economy. In addition, they contribute to the sharing, shaping, and blending of a newly enriched culture.

**SECTION ASSESSMENT**

**TERMS & NAMES**

1. For each term or name, write a sentence explaining its significance.
   - proliferation
   - Universal Declaration of Human Rights
   - political dissent
   - gender inequality
   - AIDS
   - refugee

**USING YOUR NOTES**

2. What methods have resulted in the greatest contribution to global security? Why?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Form military alliances</td>
<td>NATO, SEATO, Warsaw Pact</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**MAIN IDEAS**

3. What steps have nations taken to control the proliferation of weapons of mass destruction?
4. How has AIDS affected the economy of Sub-Saharan Africa?
5. What positive effects does immigration have?

**CRITICAL THINKING & WRITING**

6. **MAKING INFERENCES**  Why might nations want to retain or develop an arsenal of nuclear, biological, and chemical weapons?

7. **IDENTIFYING PROBLEMS**  How are ethnic and religious conflicts related to problems of global security?

8. **RECOGNIZING EFFECTS**  How can individuals affect social conditions around the world? Consider the example of Mother Teresa when writing your answer.

9. **WRITING ACTIVITY**  Write a paragraph explaining how advances in science and technology have increased threats to global security.

**CONNECT TO TODAY**

CREATE A DATABASE

Locate recent information on refugees around the world. Use your findings to create a database of charts and graphs titled “The Global Refugee Situation.”
Power and Authority

Terrorism threatens the safety of people all over the world.

People and nations must work together against the dangers posed by terrorism.

Terms & Names

- terrorism
- cyberterrorism

Case Study: September 11, 2001

Setting the Stage

Wars are not the only threat to international peace and security. Terrorism, the use of violence against people or property to force changes in societies or governments, strikes fear in the hearts of people everywhere. Recently, terrorist incidents have increased dramatically around the world. Because terrorists often cross national borders to commit their acts or to escape to countries friendly to their cause, most people consider terrorism an international problem.

What Is Terrorism?

Terrorism is not new. Throughout history, individuals, small groups, and governments have used terror tactics to try to achieve political or social goals, whether to bring down a government, eliminate opponents, or promote a cause. In recent times, however, terrorism has changed.

Modern Terrorism

Since the late 1960s, more than 14,000 terrorist attacks have occurred worldwide. International terrorist groups have carried out increasingly destructive, high-profile attacks to call attention to their goals and to gain major media coverage. Many countries also face domestic terrorists who oppose their governments’ policies or have special interests to promote.

The reasons for modern terrorism are many. The traditional motives, such as gaining independence, expelling foreigners, or changing society, still drive various terrorist groups. These groups use violence to force concessions from their enemies, usually the governments in power. But other kinds of terrorists, driven by radical religious and cultural motives, began to emerge in the late 20th century.

The goal of these terrorists is the destruction of what they consider the forces of evil. This evil might be located in their own countries or in other parts of the world. These terrorists are ready to use any kind of weapon to kill their enemies. They are even willing to die to ensure the success of their attacks.

Terrorist Methods

Terrorist acts involve violence. The weapons most frequently used by terrorists are the bomb and the bullet. The targets of terrorist attacks often are crowded places where people normally feel safe—subway stations, bus stops, restaurants, or shopping malls, for example. Or terrorists might target something that symbolizes what they are against, such as a government building.
or a religious site. Such targets are carefully chosen in order to gain the most attention and to achieve the highest level of intimidation.

Recently, some terrorist groups have used biological and chemical agents in their attacks. These actions involved the release of bacteria or poisonous gases into the atmosphere. While both biological and chemical attacks can inflict terrible casualties, they are equally powerful in generating great fear among the public. This development in terrorism is particularly worrisome, because biochemical agents are relatively easy to acquire. Laboratories all over the world use bacteria and viruses in the development of new drugs. And the raw materials needed to make some deadly chemical agents can be purchased in many stores.

Cyberterrorism is another recent development. This involves politically motivated attacks on information systems, such as hacking into computer networks or spreading computer viruses. Experts suggest that as more governments and businesses switch to computers to store data and run operations, the threat of cyberterrorism will increase.

Responding to Terrorism Governments take various steps to stamp out terrorism. Most adopt a very aggressive approach in tracking down and punishing terrorist groups. This approach includes infiltrating the groups to gather information on membership and future plans. It also includes striking back harshly after a terrorist attack, even to the point of assassinating known terrorist leaders.

Another approach governments use is to make it more difficult for terrorists to act. This involves eliminating extremists’ sources of funds and persuading governments not to protect or support terrorist groups. It also involves tightening security measures so as to reduce the targets vulnerable to attack.

Terrorism Around the World

The problem of modern international terrorism first came to world attention in a shocking way during the 1972 Summer Olympic Games in Munich, Germany (then West Germany). Members of a Palestinian terrorist group killed two Israeli athletes and took nine others hostage, later killing them. Five of the terrorists and a police officer were killed during a rescue attempt. Since then, few regions of the world have been spared from terrorist attacks.

The Middle East Many terrorist organizations have roots in the Israeli-Palestinian conflict over land in the Middle East. Groups such as the Palestine Islamic Jihad, Hamas, and Hizballah have sought to prevent a peace settlement between Israel and the Palestinians. They want a homeland for the Palestinians on their own terms, deny Israel’s right to exist, and seek Israel’s destruction. In a continual cycle of violence, the Israelis retaliate after most terrorist attacks, and the terrorists strike again. Moderates in the region believe that the only long-term solution is a compromise between Israel and the Palestinians over the issue of land. However, the violence has continued with only an occasional break.
Europe  Many countries in Europe have been targets of domestic terrorists who oppose government policies. For example, for decades the mostly Catholic Irish Republican Army (IRA) engaged in terrorist attacks against Britain because it opposed British control of Northern Ireland. Since 1998, however, the British, the IRA, and representatives of Northern Ireland’s Protestants have been negotiating a peaceful solution to the situation. An agreement was reached in 2005.

Asia  Afghanistan, in Southwest Asia, became a haven for international terrorists after the Taliban came to power in 1996. (See Chapter 18.) In that year, Osama bin Laden, a Saudi Arabian millionaire involved in terrorist activities, moved to Afghanistan. There he began using mountain hideouts as a base of operations for his global network of Muslim terrorists known as al-Qaeda.

  Terrorist groups have arisen in East Asia, as well. One, known as Aum Shinrikyo (“Supreme Truth”), is a religious cult that wants to control Japan. In 1995, cult members released sarin, a deadly nerve gas, in subway stations in Tokyo. Twelve people were killed and more than 5,700 injured. This attack brought global attention to the threat of biological and chemical agents as terrorist weapons.

Africa  Civil unrest and regional wars were the root causes of most terrorist activity in Africa at the end of the 20th century. But al-Qaeda cells operated in many African countries, and several major attacks against U.S. personnel and facilities in Africa were linked to al-Qaeda. In 1998, for example, bombings at the U.S. embassies in Kenya and Tanzania left over 200 dead and more than 5,000 people injured. The United States responded to these attacks with missile strikes on suspected terrorist facilities in Afghanistan and in Sudan, where bin Laden was based from 1991 to 1996.

Latin America  Narcoterrorism, or terrorism linked to drug trafficking, is a major problem in Latin America, particularly in Colombia. The powerful groups that control that country’s narcotics trade have frequently turned to violence. The Revolutionary Armed Forces of Colombia (FARC) is a left-wing guerrilla group that has links with these drug traffickers. The FARC has attacked Colombian political, military, and economic targets, as well as those with American ties.

**SKILLBUILDER: Interpreting Charts and Graphs**

1. Comparing  Which three areas suffered the greatest numbers of casualties of terrorism?
2. Drawing Conclusions  How would you describe the overall trend in worldwide terrorist attacks since the mid-1980s?
CASE STUDY: September 11, 2001

Attack on the United States

On the morning of September 11, 2001, 19 Arab terrorists hijacked four airliners heading from East Coast airports to California. In a series of coordinated strikes, the hijackers crashed two of the jets into the twin towers of the World Trade Center in New York City and a third into the Pentagon outside Washington, D.C. The fourth plane crashed in an empty field in Pennsylvania.

The Destruction

The planes, loaded with fuel, became destructive missiles when they crashed into the World Trade Center and the Pentagon. The explosions and fires so weakened the damaged skyscrapers that they crumbled to the ground less than two hours after impact. The fire and raining debris caused nearby buildings to collapse as well. The damage at the Pentagon, though extensive, was confined to one section of the building.

The toll in human lives was great. About 3,000 people died in the attacks. All passengers on the four planes were killed, as well as workers and visitors in the World Trade Center and the Pentagon. The dead included more than 340 New York City firefighters and 60 police officers who rushed to the scene to help and were buried in the rubble when the skyscrapers collapsed.

The Impact of the Attack

September 11 had a devastating impact on the way Americans looked at life. Many reported feeling that everything had changed—that life would never be the same. Before, Americans had viewed terrorism as something that happened in other countries. Now they felt vulnerable and afraid.

This sense of vulnerability was underscored just a few days after September 11, when terrorism struck the United States again. Letters containing spores of a bacterium that causes the disease anthrax were sent to people in the news media and to members of Congress in Washington, D.C. Anthrax bacteria, when inhaled, can...
A hazardous materials team prepares to enter a congressional building during the anthrax scare.

damage the lungs and cause death. Five people who came in contact with spores from the tainted letters died of inhalation anthrax. Two were postal workers.

Investigators did not find a link between the September 11 attacks and the anthrax letters. Some of them believed that the letters might be the work of a lone terrorist rather than an organized group. Regardless of who was responsible for the anthrax scare, it caused incredible psychological damage. Many Americans were now fearful of an everyday part of life—the mail.

The United States Responds

Immediately after September 11, the United States called for an international effort to combat terrorist groups. President George W. Bush declared, “This battle will take time and resolve. But make no mistake about it: we will win.”

As a first step in this battle, the U.S. government organized a massive effort to identify those responsible for the attacks. Officials concluded that Osama bin Laden directed the terrorists. The effort to bring him to justice led the United States to begin military action against Afghanistan in October, as you read in Chapter 18.

Antiterrorism Measures The federal government warned Americans that additional terrorist attacks were likely. It then took action to prevent such attacks. The Department of Homeland Security was created in 2002 to coordinate national efforts against terrorism. Antiterrorism measures included a search for terrorists in the United States and the passage of antiterrorism laws.

The al-Qaeda network was able to carry out its terrorist attacks partly through the use of “sleepers.” These are agents who move to a country, blend into a community, and then, when directed, secretly prepare for and carry out terrorist acts. A search to find any al-Qaeda terrorists who remained in the United States was begun. Officials began detaining and questioning Arabs and other Muslims whose behavior was considered suspicious or who had violated immigration regulations.

Some critics charged that detaining these men was unfair to the innocent and violated their civil rights. However, the government held that the actions were justified because the hijackers had been Arabs. The government further argued that it was not unusual to curtail civil liberties during wartime in order to protect national security. This argument was also used to justify a proposal to try some terrorist suspects in military tribunals rather than in criminal courts. On October 26, 2001,
President Bush signed an antiterrorism bill into law. The law, known as the USA Patriot Act, allowed the government to
• detain foreigners suspected of terrorism for seven days without charging them with a crime
• tap all phones used by suspects and monitor their e-mail and Internet use
• make search warrants valid across states
• order U.S. banks to investigate sources of large foreign accounts
• prosecute terrorist crimes without any time restrictions or limitations.
Again, critics warned that these measures allowed the government to infringe on people’s civil rights.

Aviation Security The federal government also increased its involvement in aviation security. The Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) ordered airlines to install bars on cockpit doors to prevent passengers from gaining control of planes, as the hijackers had done. Sky marshals—trained security officers—were assigned to fly on planes, and National Guard troops began patrolling airports.

The Aviation and Transportation Security Act, which became law in November 2001, made airport security the responsibility of the federal government. Previously, individual airports had been responsible. The law provided for a federal security force that would inspect passengers and carry-on bags. It also required the screening of checked baggage.

Airline and government officials debated these and other measures for making air travel more secure. Major concerns were long delays at airports and respect for passengers’ privacy. It has also become clear that public debate over security measures will continue as long as the United States fights terrorism and tries to balance national security with civil rights.

**SECTION ASSESSMENT**

**TERMS & NAMES**
1. For each term or name, write a sentence explaining its significance.
   - terrorism
   - cyberterrorism
   - Department of Homeland Security
   - USA Patriot Act

**USING YOUR NOTES**
2. How were the September 11 terrorist attacks unique? How were they similar to other terrorist incidents?

**MAIN IDEAS**
3. How has terrorism changed in recent years?
4. What methods do terrorists use?
5. What steps did the United States take in response to the terrorist attacks of September 11, 2001?

**CRITICAL THINKING & WRITING**
6. ANALYZING MOTIVES What might cause individuals to use terror tactics to bring about change?
7. FORMING AND SUPPORTING OPINIONS Is it important for the U.S. government to respect peoples’ civil rights as it wages a war against terrorism? Why or why not?
8. DRAWING CONCLUSIONS What do you think has been the greatest impact of terrorism on American life?
9. WRITING ACTIVITY Conduct research to find information on how science and technology are used to combat terrorism. Then write an illustrated report titled “Science and Counterterrorism.”

**MULTIMEDIA ACTIVITY**
PREPARING A TIME LINE
Use the Internet to research terrorist incidents since the end of 2001. Use your findings to create a time line titled “Recent Major Terrorist Attacks.”
Cultures Blend in a Global Age

MAIN IDEA
CULTURAL INTERACTION
Technology has increased contact among the world’s people, changing their cultures.

WHY IT MATTERS NOW
Globalization of culture has changed the ways people live, their perceptions, and their interactions.

TERMS & NAMES
• popular culture
• materialism

SETTING THE STAGE
Since the beginnings of civilization, people have blended ideas and ways of doing things from other cultures into their own culture. The same kind of cultural sharing and blending continues today. But, because of advances in technology, it occurs at a much more rapid pace and over much greater distances. Twenty-first-century technologies allow people from all over the world to have increasing interaction with one another. Such contacts promote widespread sharing of cultures.

Cultural Exchange Accelerates
Cultural elements that reflect a group’s common background and changing interests are called popular culture. Popular culture involves music, sports, movies, the Internet, clothing fashions, foods, and hobbies or leisure activities. Popular culture around the world incorporates features from many different lands. Of all the technologies that contribute to such cultural sharing, television, movies, the Internet, and other mass media have been the most powerful.

Mass Media
In the United States, 99 percent of American households have at least one television set. In Western Europe, too, most households have one or more televisions. Access to television is less widespread in the emerging nations, but it is growing. The speed at which television can present information helps create an up-to-the-minute shared experience of global events. Wars, natural disasters, and political drama in faraway places have become a part of everyday life.

However, no mass media does more to promote a sense of a global shared experience than does the Internet. In a matter of minutes, a political demonstration in South America can be captured on a camera phone and uploaded to an online video community for all the world to see. Blogs, social networking sites, and real-time information networks also transmit the most current news, information, entertainment, and opinions worldwide in the blink of an eye.

Television, the Internet, and other mass media, including radio and movies, are among the world’s most popular forms of entertainment. But they also show how people in other parts of the world live and what they value. Mass media is the major way popular culture spreads to all parts of the globe.

International Elements of Popular Culture
The entertainment field, especially television, has a massive influence on popular culture. People from around
The King

▲

“Rock and roll music, if you like it and you feel it, you just can’t help but move to it. That’s what happens to me, I can’t help it.”—Elvis Presley, called the “King of rock ‘n’ roll” by many.

Rock ‘n’ Roll

In the middle of the 1950s, a new style of music emerged on the American scene. It was called rock ‘n’ roll. The music explored social and political themes. Rock music, which seemed to adults to reflect a youth rebellion, soon became the dominant popular music for young people across the world. As the influence of rock music spread, international artists added their own traditions, instruments, and musical styles to the mix called rock.

“The King”

▲

Television broadcasts of sporting events provide a front-row seat for sports fans all over the globe. Basketball and soccer are among the most popular televised sports. National Basketball Association (NBA) games are televised in over 200 countries. In China, for example, broadcasts of NBA games of the week regularly attract an audience in the millions. One of the most-watched international sporting events is the soccer World Cup. Over 715 million viewers worldwide watched the 2006 World Cup Final.

Music is another aspect of popular culture that has become international. As the equipment for listening to music has become more portable, there are only a few places in the world that do not have access to music from other cultures. People from around the world dance to reggae bands from the Caribbean, chant rap lyrics from the United States, play air guitar to rowdy European bands, and enjoy the fast drumming of Afropop tunes. And the performers who create this music often gain international fame.

International Baseball

The sport of baseball is an example of global popular culture. When American missionaries and teachers arrived in Japan in the 1870s, they introduced the game of baseball. Over the years the game gained popularity there. Today, some Major League teams have Japanese players and several American players play in the Japanese league.

Baseball spread to Mexico, Cuba, Puerto Rico, Panama, and the Dominican Republic in the late 19th and early 20th centuries. Today baseball is a popular game in these and other Latin American countries.

And more than 25 percent of the players in Major League Baseball come from Latin America.

INTERNET ACTIVITY Go online to create a scrapbook of foreign players in Major League Baseball.

Recognizing Effects

What effects have television and mass media had on popular culture?

INTERNET ACTIVITY Go online to create a scrapbook of foreign players in Major League Baseball.
World Culture Blends Many Influences

Greater access to the ideas and customs of different cultures often results in cultural blending. As cultural ideas move with people among cultures, some beliefs and habits seem to have a greater effect than others. In the 20th century, ideas from the West have been very dominant in shaping cultures in many parts of the globe.

**Westernizing Influences on Different Cultures** Western domination of the worldwide mass media helps explain the huge influence the West has on many different cultures today. However, heavy Western influence on the rest of the world’s cultures is actually rooted in the 19th century. Western domination of areas all over the globe left behind a legacy of Western customs and ideas. Western languages are spoken throughout the world, mainly because of Europe’s history of colonization in the Americas, Asia, and Africa.

Over the past 50 years, English has emerged as the premier international language. English is spoken by about 500 million people as their first or second language. Although more people speak Mandarin Chinese than English, English speakers are more widely distributed. English is the most common language used on the Internet and at international conferences. The language is used by scientists, diplomats, doctors, and businesspeople around the world. The widespread use of English is responsible, in part, for the emergence of a dynamic global culture.

Western influence can be seen in other aspects of popular culture. For example, blue jeans are the clothes of choice of most of the world’s youth. Western business suits are standard uniforms among many people. American-style hamburgers and soft drinks can be purchased in many countries of the world. Mickey Mouse and other Disney characters are almost universally recognized. Western influence also has an effect on ways of thinking in other parts of the world. For example, people

---

**“World Pop”**

Youssou N’Dour, a singer from the West African country of Senegal, blends traditional African styles with American rock to create a new form that has been called “world-pop fusion.”

---

The spread of American culture, including sports, fashion, and fast food, has created an international culture recognizable in all corners of the globe. In some cases American culture is simply a powerful influence, as other societies blend American culture with local customs. Cultural blending is evident even in America’s past. Symbols of American culture like baseball and hot dogs are themselves the result of cross-cultural influences.

---

**Connect to Today**

1. **Making Inferences** How have improvements in technology and global communications aided in the blending of musical styles?

2. **Creating Oral Presentations** Find out the global origins of such aspects of American culture as rock ‘n’ roll and baseball. Report your findings to the class in an oral presentation.
from many different cultures have adopted *materialism*, the Western mindset of placing a high value on acquiring material possessions.

**Non-Western Influences** Cultural ideas are not confined to moving only from the West to other lands. Non-Western cultures also influence people in Europe and the United States. From music and clothing styles to ideas about art and architecture, to religious and ethical systems, non-Western ideas are incorporated into Western life. And cultural blending of Western and non-Western elements opens communications channels for the further exchange of ideas throughout the globe.

**The Arts Become International** Modern art, like popular culture, has become increasingly international. Advances in transportation and technology have facilitated the sharing of ideas about art and the sharing of actual works of art. Shows and museums throughout the world exhibit art of different styles and from different places. It became possible to see art from other cultures that had not previously been available to the public.

Literature, too, has become internationally appreciated. Well-known writers routinely have their works translated into dozens of languages, resulting in truly international audiences. The list of Nobel Prize winners in literature over the last 20 years reflects a broad variety of nationalities, including Turkish, Egyptian, Mexican, South African, West Indian, Japanese, Polish, Chinese, and Hungarian.

**Future Challenges and Hopes**

Many people view with alarm the development of a global popular culture heavily influenced by Western, and particularly American, ways of life. They fear that this will result in the loss of their unique identity as a people or nation. As a result, many countries have adopted policies that reserve television broadcast time for national programming. For example, France requires that 40 percent of broadcast time be set aside for French-produced programs. And in South Korea, the government limits foreign programming to just 20 percent of broadcast time.
Some countries take a different approach to protecting cultural diversity in the media. Television programmers take American shows and rework them according to their own culture and traditions. As an Indian media researcher noted, “We really want to see things our own way.” Other countries take more drastic steps to protect their cultural identity. They strictly censor the mass media to keep unwanted ideas from entering their nation.

Sometimes people respond to perceived threats to their culture by trying to return to traditional ways. Cultural practices and rites of passage may receive even more emphasis as a group tries to preserve its identity. In some countries, native groups take an active role in preserving the traditional ways of life. For example, the Maori in New Zealand have revived ancestral customs rather than face cultural extinction. Many Maori cultural activities are conducted in a way that preserves Maori ways of thinking and behaving. In 1987, the New Zealand government recognized the importance of this trend by making the Maori language one of the country’s official languages.

Global Interdependence

Despite the fear and uncertainty accompanying global interdependence, economic, political, and environmental issues do bring all nations closer together. Nations have begun to recognize that they are dependent on other nations and deeply affected by the actions of others far away. As elements of everyday life and expressions of culture become more international in scope, people across the world gain a sense of connectedness with people in other areas of the world. For example, the response to the events of September 11, 2001, was international in scope. People from around the world expressed their concern and support for the United States. It was as if this act of terrorism had struck their own countries.

Throughout history, human beings have faced challenges to survive and to live better. In the 21st century, these challenges will be faced by people who are in increasing contact with one another. They have a greater stake in learning to live in harmony together and with the physical planet. As Martin Luther King, Jr., stated, “Our loyalties must transcend our race, our tribe, our class, and our nation; and this means we must develop a world perspective.”

TERMS & NAMES 1. For each term or name, write a sentence explaining its significance.
- popular culture
- materialism

USING YOUR NOTES 2. Which of the international popular culture aspects has the greatest effect on your life? Why?

MAIN IDEAS 3. How do the mass media spread popular culture across the world?
4. Why do Western cultures tend to dominate other cultures?
5. What steps have governments and people taken to protect cultural diversity?

CRITICAL THINKING & WRITING 6. CLARIFYING Why are the mass media such an effective means of transmitting culture?
7. RECOGNIZING EFFECTS Do you think that limiting the amount of foreign television programming is an effective way to protect cultural diversity? Why or why not?
8. FORMING AND SUPPORTING OPINIONS “Ethnocentrism—the belief in the superiority of one’s own ethnic group—has taken hold in the world.” Do you agree or disagree? Explain.
9. WRITING ACTIVITY [CULTURAL INTERACTION] Write a letter to a friend in another country describing the elements of American popular culture they might appreciate.

CONNECT TO TODAY CREATING A SCRAPBOOK

Study current newspapers and magazines to find pictures that show cultural blending. Create a scrapbook of these pictures. Write captions explaining how each picture illustrates cultural blending.
TERMS & NAMES
For each term or name below, briefly explain its connection to global interdependence from 1960 to the present.
1. Internet
2. genetic engineering
3. global economy
4. free trade
5. political dissent
6. refugee
7. terrorism
8. USA Patriot Act
9. popular culture
10. materialism

MAIN IDEAS
The Impact of Science and Technology Section 1 (pages 637–640)
11. In what ways have science and technology changed the lives of people today?
12. What was the goal of the green revolution?

Global Economic Development Section 2 (pages 641–647)
13. How are a developed nation and an emerging nation different?
14. What is the function of the World Trade Organization?

Global Security Issues Section 3 (pages 648–652)
15. What methods has the world community used to resolve conflicts since World War II?
16. What efforts have been made to guarantee basic human rights?

Case Study: Terrorism Section 4 (pages 653–658)
17. What methods do terrorists employ?
18. How did the United States respond to the terrorist attacks of September 11, 2001?

Cultures Blend in a Global Age Section 5 (pages 659–663)
19. Which technologies have had the most powerful impact on cultural sharing?
20. Why have Western influences had a major impact all over the world?

CRITICAL THINKING
1. USING YOUR NOTES [SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY] Use the diagram to show how advances in science and technology have changed lifestyles.

2. EVALUATING COURSES OF ACTION [POWER AND AUTHORITY] How is the UN working to address the unresolved problems of the world?

3. IDENTIFYING SOLUTIONS [CULTURAL INTERACTION] Imagine you are the culture minister of a small country. What steps would you take to ensure that your country’s cultural identity is protected? Explain why you think these steps would be effective.

4. RECOGNIZING EFFECTS [ECONOMICS] How are individuals affected by the global economy?
Use the passage, which was written by a German journalist, and your knowledge of world history to answer questions 1 and 2.

**Primary Source**

Imagine a roomful of 14-year-olds—from Germany, Japan, Israel, Russia, and Argentina. Obviously, they would all be wearing Levi’s and baseball caps. But how would they relate to one another? They would communicate in English, though haltingly and with heavy accents. About what? . . . They would debate the merits of Nike versus Converse, of Chameleon versus Netscape. Sure, they would not discuss Herman Melville or George Gershwin, but neither would they compare notes on Dante or Thomas Mann. The point is that they would talk about icons and images “made in the U.S.A.”

JOSEF JOFFE, from “America the Inescapable”

1. Which statement best describes the main idea of the excerpt?
   A. Many teenagers have little understanding of world literature.
   B. American popular culture plays a major role in teenagers’ lives.
   C. All teenagers communicate in English.
   D. Most teenagers wear American-made clothes.

2. Which is the most likely way that teenagers in other countries learn about American popular culture?
   A. through the mass media
   B. through discussions with their parents
   C. through school textbooks
   D. through Internet bulletin boards

3. Which statement best describes the overall trend shown in this graph?
   A. There has been a steady rise in the number of refugees.
   B. The number of refugees has risen dramatically.
   C. There has been a steady fall in the number of refugees.
   D. The number of refugees has fallen dramatically.

**Interact with History**

After reading Chapter 20, do you believe events in other nations affect your life? Which kinds of events are more likely to affect you in a very personal way? Create a survey about global interdependence to ask students in your class or school. Consider organizing your questions in four broad categories: science and technology, economics, security, and culture.

**Focus on Writing**

Use the Internet and library resources to find information on SARS. Use your findings to write a brief report. Your report should cover the following topics:

- where and when the disease emerged
- possible causes and methods of prevention
- statistics on the disease

**Multimedia Activity**

NetExplorations: The Environment

Go to NetExplorations at hmhsocialstudies.com to learn more about the environment and the dangers it faces. Working in a team with three other students, find information on a recent discovery concerning changes in the environment. Use your findings to create the script for a 10-minute television news segment on the discovery and its implications for everyday life. The script should include:

- a description and explanation of the discovery
- interviews on the subject with scientists, government officials, and representatives of non-governmental organizations
- references to locations, sound, and visuals
- a concluding statement on the overall significance of the discovery and what, if anything, needs to be done about it
Five Developing Nations

Nation building is the creation of a state with a national identity. In Unit 5, you studied many nations that emerged since World War II. Forming a politically and economically stable country that safeguards basic human rights is a formidable task, especially in places where the people have different ethnic or religious backgrounds and different traditions and goals. To succeed, a new nation must forge a national identity. In the next six pages, you will see how five countries are working to become developed nations.

**Israel**
- **Independence 1948**
  - The day after Israel’s Independence it was invaded by six neighboring states.
- **Six-Day War 1967**
  - When the Egyptian military moved to strike Israel, Israeli forces attacked, destroying airfields in Syria, Jordan, Egypt, and Iraq. Israel won the war in six days.

**India**
- **Pakistan-India split 1947**
  - After riots in 1946 killed thousands of Hindus and Muslims, the British agreed to partition India. About one million people were killed trying to move to one country or the other.

**Mexico**
- **The new party 1946**
  - In 1946, the Mexican Revolutionary Party became the Institutional Revolutionary Party (PRI), which ruled for the next fifty years. Although the PRI promoted stability, it was politically corrupt.

**Nigeria**
- **Independence 1960**
  - Britain granted independence to Nigeria without military struggle.
- **War over Biafra 1967**
  - The Ibos ethnic group tried to secede and form a new nation called Biafra. A bloody war ensued and the Ibos were defeated.

**Philippines**
- **Independence 1946**
  - On July 4, the United States granted independence to the Philippines.
- **Marcos elected 1965**
  - After being elected president, Ferdinand Marcos became an authoritarian ruler and stole money from the government. In 1972, he imposed martial law.
In 1946, the Mexican Revolutionary Party became the Institutional Revolutionary Party (PRI), which ruled for the next fifty years. Although the PRI promoted stability, it was politically corrupt.

On July 4, the United States granted independence to the Philippines.

The first treaty between Israel and an Arab country was the Israel-Egypt Peace Treaty of 1979. The intifada of 1987 was a widespread campaign of resistance. Palestinians Arabs all over Israel participated in boycotts, demonstrations, rock throwing, and attacks on Israeli soldiers. After 38 years of occupation, Israel withdrew its forces and removed Israeli settlers from the Gaza Strip, leaving it to Palestinian control.

In October, prime minister Indira Gandhi was shot by two of her Sikh bodyguards in retaliation for an attack on a Sikh temple where terrorists were hiding. In 1988, opposition parties were able to seriously challenge the ruling party for the first time.

Indira Gandhi was killed in 1984. In 1988, opposition parties were able to seriously challenge the ruling party for the first time.

Zapatista uprising in 1994: Rebels seized control of several towns in the state of Chiapas, demanding more democracy and a better life for the native people.

Free election in 1999: Nigeria held its first free election after almost 20 years of military dictators.

Fall of Marcos rule in 1986: Marcos was forced into exile when he attempted to falsify the results of the 1986 election. Corazón Aquino became president.

Impeachment attempt fails in 2005: An attempt to impeach President Gloria Macapagal Arroyo, over claims of vote rigging in the 2004 election, was rejected in the Philippine Congress.

Comparing & Contrasting

1. What are some problems that can arise in developing nations as a result of ethnic, religious, and economic problems?
2. How do Israel's religious problems differ from those of the other countries on the timeline?
National Characteristics

Many developing nations are trying to bring together a patchwork of ethnic groups that historically competed or were hostile to each other. To complicate matters more, the groups often speak different languages. Choosing one group’s language as the official language could earn government leaders the ill-will of the other groups. Moreover, the traditions of one group might be objectionable to another for moral or religious reasons. The chart below describes the current situation in the five sample countries.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Political</th>
<th>Cultural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Government</strong></td>
<td><strong>Flag</strong></td>
<td><strong>Language</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Israel</td>
<td>Parliamentary democracy, Unicameral Knesset (parliament), President elected for seven-year term by Knesset, Prime minister heads the largest party in the Knesset, Supreme Court appointed for life by president</td>
<td>Hebrew (official)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>India</td>
<td>Federal Republic, Bicameral legislature elected by people and state assemblies, President chosen by electoral college; five-year term, Prime minister chosen by ruling party, Supreme Court appointed by president to serve until age 65</td>
<td>Hindi (official and most common)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td>Federal Republic, Bicameral legislature, elected by popular vote or by party vote, President elected by popular vote for six-year term, Supreme Court appointed by president with consent of the Senate</td>
<td>Spanish, Mayan, Nahuatl and other indigenous languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nigeria</td>
<td>Republic, Bicameral legislature elected by popular vote, President elected by popular vote for one or two four-year terms, Supreme Court appointed by president</td>
<td>English (official), Hausa, Yoruba, Igbo, Fulani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippines</td>
<td>Republic, Bicameral legislature elected by popular vote, President elected by popular vote for six-year term, Supreme Court appointed by president to serve until age 70</td>
<td>Filipino (official), English (official), Eight major dialects</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
“How can [a people] think of themselves as a national people if they don’t even have a single language unifying them?

Language is one of the most important instruments of nation-building, a potentially powerful unifying force.”

David Lamb, from *The Africans*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Economic</th>
<th>Trading</th>
<th>Main Export</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Imports: crude oil, grains, military equipment, raw materials&lt;br&gt;• Exports: fruits, vegetables, cut diamonds, high-technology equipment.</td>
<td>• cut diamonds</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Imports: crude oil, machinery, fertilizer, chemicals, gems&lt;br&gt;• Exports: software services, engineering products, gems, jewelry, textiles, chemicals, leather goods</td>
<td>• textiles and clothing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Imports: metalworking and agricultural machinery, electrical equipment, car parts for assembly and repair&lt;br&gt;• Exports: petroleum products, silver, manufactured goods, cotton, coffee, fruits, and vegetables</td>
<td>• manufactured goods</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Imports: machinery, chemicals, manufactured goods, food&lt;br&gt;• Exports: petroleum and petroleum products, cocoa, rubber</td>
<td>• petroleum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Imports: fuels, consumer goods, raw materials, capital goods&lt;br&gt;• Exports: coconut products, clothing, electronic products, machinery, and transport equipment</td>
<td>• electronics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. What similarities are there among the governments of the countries listed on the chart?
2. Why does David Lamb think language is such an important part of nation building?
Important Trends

In their inaugural speeches, the following leaders outlined the principal problems they wished to address during their terms in office. Below are some highlights of what they said. Note that the problems they discuss are shared by many of the developing nations you studied in Unit 8.

Israel

Former Prime Minister Ariel Sharon discussed the Israeli national identity.

I believe wholeheartedly that the State of Israel has no greater resource than themselves, the Jewish people. We shall strengthen the bond and connection with the Jews of the Diaspora and the Zionist education of our education system. We will work towards bringing masses of Jewish immigrants to Israel and their absorption in the country. We must educate our children towards values: to respect for others, to equality between people, to national pride and love of country.

**DOCUMENT-BASED QUESTION**

*In Sharon’s view, what should be the continuing objectives of Israel?*

India

Former President Abdul Kalam stressed the importance of keeping religion separate from government.

I wish to emphasize my unflinching commitment to the principle of secularism, which is the cornerstone of our nationhood and which is the key feature of our civilization strength. During the last one year I met a number of spiritual leaders of all religions. They all echoed one message, that is, unity of minds and hearts of our people will happen and we will see the golden age of our country, very soon. I would like to endeavor to work for bringing about unity of minds among the divergent traditions of our country.

**DOCUMENT-BASED QUESTION**

*Why does Kalam think India needs a secular government?*

Mexico

Equal rights and economic opportunities are what the poor need in the view of Vicente Fox.

I emphatically maintain that social justice is part of an efficient economy, not its adversary. It is time we recognized that everything cannot be solved by the State, nor can everything be solved by the market. I believe that the vote for democracy is inseparable from the vote for social equity.

Quality education, employment and regional development are the levers to remove, once and for all, the signs of poverty, which are inequity, injustice, discrimination and exclusion.

**DOCUMENT-BASED QUESTION**

*According to Fox, what does Mexico have to provide its poor so they can obtain social equity?*
1. How does Kalam’s view of religion in national self-identity and government contrast with Sharon’s?

2. How might party politics as described by Macapagal Arroyo help to achieve the solutions Fox considers essential?

EXTENSION ACTIVITY
Choose one of the countries studied in Unit 5 that became independent after World War II. Research on the Internet how that country has fared in recent times. Use the Web sites of major newspapers, magazines, and other news organizations to find information on how ethnic, religious, economic, and other relevant concerns are being handled. Organize this information into an oral presentation to explain how the country is or is not changing.

Nigeria
Former President Olusegun Obasanjo explains his plan to curb the military.

The incursion of the military into government has been a disaster for our country and for the military over the last thirty years. . . . [P]rofessionalism has been lost. Youths go into the military not to pursue a noble career but with the sole intention of taking part in coups and to be appointed as military administrators of states and chairmen of task forces. . . . A great deal of reorientation has to be undertaken and a re-definition of roles, re-training and re-education will have to be done to ensure that the military submits to civil authority and regains its pride, professionalism and traditions. We shall restore military cooperation and exchanges with our traditional friends.

DOCUMENT-BASED QUESTION
How did President Obasanjo propose to change the military culture in Nigeria?

Philippines
Former President Gloria Macapagal Arroyo discusses the importance of the rule of law.

Politics and political power as traditionally practiced and used in the Philippines are among the roots of the social and economic inequities that characterize our national problems. Thus, to achieve true reforms, we need to outgrow our traditional brand of politics based on patronage and personality. Traditional politics is the politics of the status quo. It is a structural part of our problem.

We need to promote a new politics of true party programs and platforms, of an institutional process of dialogue with our citizenry. This new politics is the politics of genuine reform. It is a structural part of the solution.

DOCUMENT-BASED QUESTION
According to Macapagal Arroyo, how does traditional politics promote poverty and how does party politics promote social equity?
Unresolved Problems of the Modern World

Previewing Themes

**SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY** As humankind enters the 21st century, advances in electronics and computers have dramatically altered how millions work and live and have brought people together in ways that once seemed unimaginable.

**INTERACTION WITH ENVIRONMENT** At the dawn of a new millennium, humans face a host of environmental challenges as they try to strike a balance between economic and industrial growth and conservation of the earth’s natural resources.

**POWER AND AUTHORITY** Leaders of the world community have faced pressing problems in recent years. They include how to feed the earth’s growing population, how to keep the world safe against the increasing threat of terrorism, and how to ensure human rights for all.

**ECONOMICS** As less-developed countries seek a greater share of the world’s wealth and prosperity, they face numerous challenges in building strong and independent economies.

In the Epilogue you will learn about the challenges and issues that unite the modern world.

**SECTION 1 Technology Transforms Life**

Main Idea: The rapid emergence of new technologies holds promises as well as challenges for people around the world.

**SECTION 2 Environmental Challenges**

Main Idea: Technology and industrialization have created environmental challenges that affect the entire world.

**SECTION 3 Feeding a Growing Population**

Main Idea: Population growth has put great pressure on the earth’s resources, including the food supply.

**SECTION 4 Economic Issues in the Developing World**

Main Idea: Developing nations face a set of economic challenges that must be resolved.

**SECTION 5 Seeking a Global Security**

Main Idea: War, terrorism, and weapons of mass destruction threaten the safety of people all over the world.

**SECTION 6 Defending Human Rights and Freedoms**

Main Idea: Human rights and freedoms have become a major international concern.

The Red Cross offers relief in Rwanda, Africa.
Coalition troops battle in Iraq

Victims of the Khmer Rouge regime in Cambodia

Burning of the Brazilian Amazon Rain Forest

Families of the missing in Chile march for justice

Victims of the Khmer Rouge regime in Cambodia
What can you do to make a difference?

In this age of multimedia—from radio and magazines to television and the Internet—it is easier than ever to become informed about today’s major issues and challenges. As you learn about these challenges, you wonder what you can do in your community to address them. Although you are not yet a voter or in the working world, you are interested in joining a local organization or activity to help make a difference in your part of the world.

Campus students build a home for an underprivileged family in Mississippi.

EXAMINING the ISSUES

• What are some environmental, economic, and social concerns of your country or community?

• What things might you do locally to address these concerns?

As a class, discuss these questions. As you consider how to address the major challenges facing your country and community, talk about why you think it is important to get involved.
Technology Transforms Life

**MAIN IDEA**

The rapid emergence of new technologies holds promises as well as challenges for people around the world.

**WHY IT MATTERS NOW**

New technology touches nearly every aspect of life for many people.

**TERMS & NAMES**

- mass media

**SETTING THE STAGE**

For centuries, people have used science to find new ways to do things. But the pace of technological change has increased dramatically since the second half of the 20th century. The development of the silicon chip and other electronic circuits has paved the way for revolutions in electronics and computers. These technological revolutions have dramatically impacted numerous aspects of daily life, from how people live and work to the ways in which they communicate.

**A Revolution in Electronics**

New forms of electronic circuits have made possible the production of powerful new machines, such as computers. Computers, along with advances in telecommunications, have greatly changed the way people handle information. They have done so by vastly increasing the speed at which information can be carried.

**The Influence of Computers**

The earliest and most basic use of computers was computing—figuring out complex math problems. As electronic circuits have grown faster, computers have been able to solve problems even more quickly. Powerful computers can make billions of computations every second.

The ability to compute quickly makes computers very helpful. They are used to guide rockets and satellites into space. Air traffic controllers use them to track airline traffic. Many automobiles use computers to control fuel gauges, engines, and even brakes. Banks and other businesses use computers to keep track of accounts and inventory. In 1997, an IBM-built computer named Deep Blue defeated world chess champion Garry Kasparov in a six-game chess match. Some people feared that computers might some day control humans. David Gelernter, a Yale University computer science professor, offered a different opinion:

**PRIMARY SOURCE**

Deep Blue is just a machine. It doesn’t have a mind any more than a flowerpot has a mind. . . . Machines will continue to make life easier, healthier, richer, and more puzzling. And humans will continue to care . . . about the same things they always have: about themselves, about one another and, many of them, about God. On those terms, machines have never made a difference. And they never will.

**DAVID GELERNTER, Time**
A Continuous Revolution

Electronic and computer technologies, it seems, are advancing at a breakneck pace. Every day, people are working to improve the latest equipment and devices or to create something entirely new. The result is an ongoing revolution in the way we do everything from travel to communicate. Perhaps nowhere is the pace of change faster than in the fields of computers and electronics—where what was once considered science fiction has become a reality.

Iris Identification

A woman looks through the Iris Access system, which scans the iris, or colored ring around the eye’s pupil. Like fingerprints, the iris is unique to each person.

Human Transporter

A police officer travels his beat on the Segway Human Transporter, an electric-powered machine that one drives simply by leaning forward. The Segway travels at a top speed of about 12 miles per hour.

Miniature Music Player

A music lover shows off his MP3 music player-wristwatch, which enables him to download and listen to his favorite songs from pay-for-use Internet sites.

DOCUMENT-BASED QUESTIONS

1. Comparing and Contrasting What advantages and disadvantages does the Human Transporter have to a bicycle or automobile?

2. Forming and Supporting Opinions Which of these inventions do you consider to be the most important? Why?
Information Spreads in New Ways  Electronic technology also has had a great impact on how people communicate. People are increasing their use of cellular phones, fax machines, and computers—including the Internet—to move information instantly across the planet. As a result, people can very easily conduct business, or just chat from great distances. These technologies have helped draw the world closer together.

The Internet has become one of the most exciting ways for people to communicate. People can use the Internet to find ever-increasing amounts of information. More and more businesses advertise and sell their goods on the Internet. Governments use the Internet to provide their citizens with more information than ever before. In addition, people around the world can use chat rooms, e-mail, and social networking media to communicate.

A Connected World

The Internet and other new technologies have made the world a much smaller place, as these advances have enabled the flow of information, ideas, and entertainment across cities and nations, and across the globe.

A Changing Workforce  Rapid communications and data transmission have helped to transform workplaces around the world. Many white-collar workers now “telecommute,” or do their jobs by computer from home. Investors can conduct business in any market in the world, from almost anywhere, by using telephones, fax machines, and computers. Television, radio, and the Internet can instantly give investors the news and information they need to conduct business. As a result, some professionals no longer need to live near business offices. In addition, modern telecommunications allow trading, banking, and financial transactions to be done electronically and even automatically.

As you read in Chapter 20, technological changes such as these have had both positive and negative effects on businesses and workers. In manufacturing, robots perform more and more jobs that were once done by people. As a result, many companies have cut their workforces. Many workers are being forced to improve their skills in order to keep their jobs because high-tech industries need workers with more technical skills.

Furthermore, high-tech workplaces are found mainly in industrialized countries, such as the United States, Japan, and the countries of western Europe. This technological imbalance has given rise to a new kind of economic imperialism in which the industrialized nations dominate less-developed countries. On the other hand, low wages and low standards of living in developing countries provide business opportunities for companies willing to invest in training.

Cultures Converge  The mass media—which include television, radio, movies, the music industry, and the popular press—are expanding their influence with the growth of technology. Television has spread to the extent that billions of people around the planet now watch sporting events such as the Olympics and the World Cup soccer championships. In addition, some 2 billion people worldwide viewed the funeral of Princess Diana of England on live television in 1997.
Because the media now reach around the world, they are able to spread images, ideas, and fashions from one country to another. Many of these ideas or trends travel from the developed world outward. But the mass media also bring cultural offerings from Africa, Asia, and Latin America to wealthier nations. The increased familiarity in Europe and the United States with African music, Asian philosophy, and Latin American literature demonstrates the power of the mass media to promote a greater awareness of and mixing of different cultures. For instance, the English translation of Como Agua Para Chocolate (Like Water for Chocolate), the popular novel by Laura Esquivel, sold over two million copies in the United States.

Old Ways Abandoned As mass media spread new images and ideas, however, they may cause deep changes in traditional cultures. Old ways may be lost. In some cases, people experience a loss of identity and culture. Or they may find themselves in conflict over competing values. In addition, some observers, such as author and columnist Thomas Friedman, worry that so much technology is weakening the old and more personal ways of interacting:

PRIMARY SOURCE
Yes, globalization and the Internet can bring people together who have never connected before—like my mom and her French Internet bridge partners. But rather than creating new kinds of communities, this technology often creates a false sense of connection and intimacy. It’s like two beepers communicating with each other. Can we really connect with each other through E-mail or Internet bridge or chat rooms? Or is all this standardizing technology just empowering us to reach farther into the world while exempting us from the real work required to build relationships and community with the folks next door?

THOMAS FRIEDMAN, The Lexus and the Olive Tree

Sometimes the challenge posed by new ideas and technology can stimulate the desire to preserve traditions. Technology may even play a positive role in this process. In the Amazon region of Brazil, for example, some native Brazilians are using video cameras to document and preserve traditional ways of life.

SECTION ASSESSMENT

TERMS & NAMES 1. For the following term, write a sentence explaining its significance.
• mass media

CRITICAL THINKING & WRITING

6. IDENTIFYING PROBLEMS What challenges has technology created for some in the workforce?
7. RECOGNIZING EFFECTS What are the benefits and drawbacks of the spread of mass media?
8. ANALYZING ISSUES What problems, if any, do you see arising from the growth of the Internet?

9. WRITING ACTIVITY [SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY] With a partner, use the library or the Internet to review the past year’s issues of a leading science journal. Write a report on an important technological advance that was made during the year.

CONNECT TO TODAY CREATING A CHART
Create a two-column chart that lists the top three or four technological devices you use and briefly explains the benefits of using each one.
Environmental Challenges

MAIN IDEA
INTERACTION WITH ENVIRONMENT Technology and industrialization have created environmental challenges that affect the entire world.

WHY IT MATTERS NOW
Failure to solve environmental problems will threaten the health of the planet.

TERMS & NAMES
• greenhouse effect
• sustainable development

SETTING THE STAGE Technology and industrialization have helped to raise standards of living for many people. But they have also affected the global environment. For two centuries, industrialization has increased the demands for energy and natural resources. In addition, industry and technology have increased the amount of pollution on the planet. Pollution and the potential shortage of natural resources have prompted everyone from world leaders to ordinary citizens to look for ways to better protect our natural surroundings.

World Concern over the Environment
Two major areas of concern are the effects of industrial pollution on the earth’s atmosphere and on its climate. As you read in Chapter 20, environmentalists are especially concerned that various human-made chemicals are destroying the ozone layer, which protects Earth from the sun’s damaging rays. Scientists also are worried about global warming, also known as the greenhouse effect.

The Greenhouse Effect Scientists use the term greenhouse effect to describe the potential warming of Earth’s atmosphere as a result of the buildup of gases such as carbon dioxide. These gases—sometimes called greenhouse gases—often are emitted as exhaust from factories and automobiles. The gases may contribute to a condition like that in a greenhouse, trapping heat near the earth’s surface. Such a buildup of heat might cause a gradual warming of the earth’s atmosphere.

Since the industrial revolution, the amount of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere has increased by 30 percent. Some scientists fear that if warming trends continue, deserts could expand causing crops to fail and polar icecaps could melt resulting in a rise in sea levels.

To combat this problem, the industrialized nations have called for limits on the release of greenhouse gases. In the past, developed nations were the worst polluters. But future limits would have the greatest effect on those countries that are trying to industrialize. So far, developing countries have resisted strict limits. They argue that they are being asked to carry too much of the burden for reducing greenhouse gases.

Air Pollution Varies The hazardous effects of air pollution can be serious, especially when it comes to people’s health. Many cities in Europe and the United States have recently taken steps to clean up the air. But air pollution is still severe...
in many parts of the world, especially Asia. The World Health Organization has pointed out that 13 of the world’s 15 most-polluted cities are in Asia.

Meanwhile, South Korea, China, and Japan have begun talks to reduce the effects of pollution caused by China’s rapid industrialization. And some Chinese cities are trying to reduce air pollution locally. For example, Shanghai has reportedly banned leaded gasoline and diesel fuel, which cause heavy pollution.

**Depletion of Natural Resources**

While air pollution and other environmental problems are major global concerns, so too is the growing strain on natural resources. Due largely to industrialization and increasing population, vital resources such as clean water, forests, and energy supplies all run the risk of becoming scarce.

**Scarcity of Clean Water** In the developing world, water pollution and scarcity of clean water are serious problems. One-fourth of the world’s population has no access to clean water. Eighty percent of all illnesses in developing nations can be traced to inadequate supplies of fresh water.

In some parts of the world, nations share the water supplies in lakes and rivers. In southwest Asia, for example, Israel and Jordan share the Jordan River—an essential source of water for farming. Any nation that pollutes shared water or stops water from flowing into a neighboring country runs the risk of starting an international conflict. Many nations try to cooperate to make sure water supplies remain clean.

In the United States, California has complex water issues. The state’s large population and agricultural industry have put severe pressure on water resources. The problems worsened during a drought that lasted from 1987 to 1992. However, the state limited the negative effects of the drought by developing new ways to conserve and use water.

**Destruction of Rain Forests** Another critical resource issue is the destruction of tropical rain forests in such countries as Malaysia and Brazil. By 1990, the world
If we have learned anything from the scientific studies of forests, it is that each such environment is a unique combination of thousands of kinds of plants, animals, and microorganisms. . . . It is this biological diversity that creates a healthy ecosystem—a self-assembled powerhouse generating clean water, productive soil and fresh air, all without human intervention and completely free of charge. . . . America's national forests are the common property of its citizens. They are a public trust of incalculable value. They should be freed from commercial logging altogether and cut only very locally and in extreme cases.

Edward O. Wilson, from The Washington Post

**Economics**

Deforestation is an issue that often pits economic and environmental interests against one another. Here, William Wade Keye, chairman of the Northern California Society of American Foresters, criticizes the efforts of environmentalists.

**Primary Source**

It used to be about protecting spotted owls, saving old-growth forests or putting an end to clear-cutting. That was 1990. . . . Now the demand is for absolute purity. To many environmentalists in 2001, nothing less than “zero-cut” is acceptable—no commercial timber harvesting from America’s vast network of publicly owned national forests. Not one stick. . . . In a region blessed with some of the planet’s most fertile and sustainable temperate forest ecosystems, struggling sawmill communities are subsisting on raw logs imported from hundreds—sometimes even thousands—of miles away.

William Wade Keye, from Southern Loggin’ Times

**Primary Source**

If we have learned anything from the scientific studies of forests, it is that each such environment is a unique combination of thousands of kinds of plants, animals, and microorganisms. . . . It is this biological diversity that creates a healthy ecosystem—a self-assembled powerhouse generating clean water, productive soil and fresh air, all without human intervention and completely free of charge. . . . America’s national forests are the common property of its citizens. They are a public trust of incalculable value. They should be freed from commercial logging altogether and cut only very locally and in extreme cases.

Edward O. Wilson, from The Washington Post

**Document-Based Questions**

1. **Recognizing Effects**  What effect have environmental regulations had on the logging industry, according to Keye?
2. **Analyzing Issues**  What reason does Wilson give for arguing that forests should be maintained and protected?

had lost more than half its rain forests to logging or farming operations. In 2005, the United Nations estimated annual deforestation at 50,000 square miles (13 million hectares).

This loss could affect all people on the planet. The rain forests help to maintain water quality, recycle rainfall and oxygen into the atmosphere, and protect the soil. These forests also are home to as many as half of the world’s species of plants and animals.

In recent years, nations like Brazil have made efforts to slow the destruction of the rain forests. Success has been limited, however, by Brazil’s desire to develop economically. As one American diplomat put it, “Environmental concerns are a luxury of the rich, and this is not a rich country. Brazilians are not going to just preserve the Amazon. They are going to develop it. The question is, how.”

Many other developing nations face the same problem as Brazil. They need to achieve **sustainable development**, the process of creating economic growth while preserving the environment.

**A Growing Appetite for Energy**

Sustainable development depends on using energy sources wisely. All sources of energy can be defined as renewable or nonrenewable. Renewable energy sources, such as wind, water, and solar power, can be replenished. Nonrenewable energy sources, such as oil and coal, cannot. Although nonrenewable sources are generally cheaper to use, supplies are limited. Also, their use can cause environmental damage.

**Energy Use and its Challenges**  Eighty percent of the earth’s energy supply now comes from nonrenewable sources. Developed countries consume most of this
Automobiles, which run on oil-based gasoline, use a great deal of the world’s nonrenewable energy. But perhaps not for long. Automakers have begun creating cars fueled by alternative power, such as hydrogen—one of the most abundant natural elements on earth.

While it may be a while before such cars catch on, the trend toward environmentally safer vehicles is growing. California, for example, recently required the production of millions of low-emission vehicles—which use a combination of gas and electric power—over the next two decades.

**The Gulf Oil Spill** Oil spills are another example of energy-related pollution. Every year, several serious oil spills take place around the world. They foul water and shorelines and kill sea life. Although oil companies take precautions to prevent spills, spills appear to be an inevitable result of oil use.

The largest oil spill in U.S. history occurred in April 2010 when a drilling rig owned by British Petroleum (BP) exploded in the Gulf of Mexico. The explosion spilled millions of gallons of oil along the Gulf coast, seriously damaging marine habitats and fishing and tourism industries. BP managed to contain the spill after several months and promised to pay all cleanup costs.

**Solutions for the 21st Century** Government action and stronger regulations may provide solutions to the world’s environmental problems in the 21st century. In the long run, however, improved technology might stand as the best hope for a cleaner environment. More inexpensive ways to use renewable energy sources, such as wind and solar power, may reduce air pollution and the greenhouse effect. In any event, the nations of the world will need to agree on how to achieve sustainable development in this new millennium.

---

**Connect to Today**

**Alternative Fuel Cars**

Automobiles, which run on oil-based gasoline, use a great deal of the world’s nonrenewable energy. But perhaps not for long. Automakers have begun creating cars fueled by alternative power, such as hydrogen—one of the most abundant natural elements on earth.

While it may be a while before such cars catch on, the trend toward environmentally safer vehicles is growing. California, for example, recently required the production of millions of low-emission vehicles—which use a combination of gas and electric power—over the next two decades.

**CRITICAL THINKING & WRITING**

6. **HYPOTHESIZING** Why do you think the environmental problems of the earth have become more dangerous?

7. **FORMING AND SUPPORTING OPINIONS** Should developing nations have to meet the same environmental standards as developed nations? Why or why not?

8. **ANALYZING ISSUES** Should developed nations take any responsibility for preventing the destruction of the rain forests? Explain.

9. **WRITING ACTIVITY** Write one or two **slogans** that might encourage your community to better protect the environment.

---

**TERMS & NAMES**

1. For each term, write a sentence explaining its significance.

- **greenhouse effect**
- **sustainable development**

**USING YOUR NOTES**

2. Which set of problems do you consider to be the most serious? Why?

**MAIN IDEAS**

3. What are the main greenhouse gases?
4. What natural resources does the world community fear are becoming scarce?
5. What is the difference between renewable and nonrenewable energy?

**CRITICAL THINKING & WRITING**

6. **HYPOTHESIZING** Why do you think the environmental problems of the earth have become more dangerous?

7. **FORMING AND SUPPORTING OPINIONS** Should developing nations have to meet the same environmental standards as developed nations? Why or why not?

8. **ANALYZING ISSUES** Should developed nations take any responsibility for preventing the destruction of the rain forests? Explain.

9. **WRITING ACTIVITY** **INTERACTION WITH ENVIRONMENT** Write one or two **slogans** that might encourage your community to better protect the environment.

---

**CONNECT TO TODAY**

Creating a Visual

Examine your local newspaper to determine an environmental problem in your community. Then create a **poster, cartoon, or other graphic** that depicts that problem.
Feeding a Growing Population

**MAIN IDEA**

**POWER AND AUTHORITY**

Population growth has put great pressure on the earth’s resources, including the food supply.

**WHY IT MATTERS NOW**

Nations must find ways to support their growing human populations or else face famines.

**TERMS & NAMES**

- overpopulation
- biorevolution

**SETTING THE STAGE**

As humanity moves further into the 21st century, another issue of growing concern is world hunger. Potential causes of famine are overpopulation, forces of nature, and war. **Overpopulation** occurs when there are too many people for the natural resources of an area to support. In some cases, it is war or natural catastrophes that push groups into starvation. Across the globe, nations are working to implement both temporary and more long-lasting measures aimed at reducing starvation and hunger.

**Causes of World Hunger**

Since 1950, the world’s population has more than doubled, to over 6.6 billion people in 2007. More growth is predicted. According to researchers, the world’s population will increase to nearly 10 billion by 2050. Rapid population growth directly affects the quality of life on the planet. As more people try to live on a limited supply of natural resources, poverty rates rise—and so too does the risk of widespread hunger.

**The Role of Nature**

In some areas of the world, changes in the climate have played a major role in creating famine. In Africa, for example, rainfall was plentiful during the 1950s and 1960s. The rain helped produce good crops and steady economic growth for many African nations. In 1968, however, drought began to weaken African agriculture. In the 1970s and 1980s, rainfall returned to typically low levels. In many areas, food supplies ran short. Ethiopia, for example, confronted severe famines in the 1980s and 1990s because of drought. Tens of thousands of Ethiopians died. Many others suffered malnutrition and disease.

The situation is just as grim in other African nations. Traveling through Zimbabwe in late 2002, U.S. government official Tony P. Hall recalled witnessing the devastating effects of hunger:

**PRIMARY SOURCE**

I . . . met children in school, some of whom had not eaten at all that day. Others had a cup of tea for breakfast and nothing for lunch. Some were showing clear signs of malnutrition—with their hair turning orange and their limbs like twigs. The headmaster said that about 40 percent of the kids have dropped out of school. A few kids had their eyes glazed over and showed little ability to learn the lessons in front of them.

**TONY P. HALL,** statement in Harare, Zimbabwe, October 11, 2002

Unresolved Problems of the Modern World 683
Government-Produced Famine  In addition to droughts, wars have contributed to famine. The drought that hit Ethiopia in the early 1990s hit Somalia as well. But Somalia was also engaged in a civil war that disrupted food production and delivery by outside relief agencies. As a result, thousands of Somalis died of starvation, and more than a million refugees fled the nation.

The reduction in food supply caused by drought and war created deep problems for many African nations. While agriculture declined, the prices for major African exports also fell. High African birth rates made these problems even worse. Food supplies were getting smaller while populations were getting larger.

Revolutions in Food Production

One response to the problem of rapid population growth, and the potential for hunger and starvation it brings, has been to boost food production. As you read in Chapter 20, agricultural scientists around the world embarked on what became known as the green revolution—a successful effort to increase food production through the use of fertilizers, pesticides and high-yield strains of crops.

Unfortunately, the techniques of the green revolution often call for much irrigation, or watering, of crops. Because many African nations have limited water supplies, they have not been able to make full use of the new seeds. This severely limits the usefulness of these methods in much of Africa, where there is little water.

Moreover, the new hybrid varieties of plants require chemicals, such as fertilizers, herbicides, and pesticides, to help them grow. This requirement has caused a number of problems. First, the chemicals are expensive. Peasant farmers usually cannot afford them. Second, the use of such chemicals often clashes with age-old methods of farming. Third, these chemicals pose a threat to the environment.

In addition to the methods of the green revolution, genetic research has played a growing role in agricultural science in recent years. In this approach, scientists

Vocabulary
A pesticide is a chemical used to kill insects; a herbicide is one used to destroy plants, especially weeds.
alter plant genes to produce new plants that are more productive and more resistant to pests and disease.

This biorevolution, or gene revolution, has led to some important developments. For example, one U.S. company has developed a genetically altered tomato that ripens more slowly than other tomatoes. This means that the altered tomatoes keep much of their flavor and freshness longer. Similar tests are being conducted with other kinds of produce.

But the biorevolution has raised some troubling issues. Critics fear that altering genes may accidentally create new disease-causing organisms. Another fear is that plants produced by altering genes may become diseased more easily. As with the green revolution, science offers great opportunities in the search for more food, but the results may also have negative consequences.

Other Solutions to Population Problems

Various approaches to curbing overpopulation have been proposed over the years. Three main strategies are to improve the economies of less-developed countries, to limit population growth, and to improve the status of women.

Improving Economies Many experts believe that the best way to tackle overpopulation is through economic development. When a country’s economy improves, birth rates fall. They do so for two reasons. First, women become pregnant less frequently because more newborn children survive. More children survive because stronger economies provide better health care, nutrition, and child-care education for mothers. Second, when economies are strong, families do not need as many children to work to support the family and parents in their old age. The result is slower population growth and less risk of widespread hunger.

Limiting Population Growth A second major strategy is to lower the rate at which the population is growing. In 1994, in Cairo, Egypt, the International Conference on Population and Development met for the third time. Delegates

Red Cross and UNICEF

Two organizations that have played a crucial role in supplying food and other forms of aid to needy populations are UNICEF and the Red Cross. UNICEF, the United Nations Children’s Fund, was founded in 1946 to help children in Europe after World War II. Now, it provides food, medicine, and education funds to children in developing countries.

The Red Cross was first established in the 1800s to help war victims. Later it branched into peacetime service, including emergency food relief. The work of both of these organizations has been instrumental in helping to combat starvation, disease, and hardship in many lands.
agreed on a plan to keep population growth to a minimum through the year 2050. It called for greater use of family planning, reductions in child mortality, and increased women’s rights. Some delegates did not support the entire plan, but it passed nonetheless.

Some critics have pointed out problems in limiting population growth when it is carried out in extreme ways. A strict policy may reduce birth rates at the expense of personal freedom, or it may target specific groups that cannot defend their rights. For example, church leaders and some politicians in Peru have charged that a government program has forced poor Indian women to undergo sterilization, making them unable to have children. The critics have said that poor, uneducated women are lured into having the sterilization procedure by health workers who promise gifts for the families.

**Improving Women’s Status** Most experts believe that protecting the rights of women is essential to reducing birth rates. For example, the birth rate for uneducated Peruvian women in recent years was 6.2. By contrast, the rate for Peruvian women with some college education was only 1.7. According to population experts like Dr. Nafis Sadik of the United Nations Population Fund, there is a close link between women’s status in society and population growth. The greater the status of women, the lower the birth rates.

Improving conditions for women will be a crucial part of any effort to solve the world’s population problem. However, other actions will also need to be taken to reduce the threat of famine and food shortages. New technologies may provide a key to increasing food supplies. In addition, creating and protecting political stability around the world can help to ensure that people have access to food. The best way to conquer starvation, however, may be to improve the economies of developing nations.

---

**SECTION 3 ASSESSMENT**

**TERMS & NAMES** 1. For each term, write a sentence explaining its significance.
   - overpopulation
   - biorevolution

**USING YOUR NOTES**

2. Which of these campaigns combats hunger more effectively? Why?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Green Revolution</th>
<th>Bio-revolution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**MAIN IDEAS**

3. What are the main causes of famine in the world?
4. Why have some countries been unable to benefit from the green revolution?
5. What are the three main strategies for controlling overpopulation?

**CRITICAL THINKING & WRITING**

6. **MAKING INFERENCES** How will improving women’s rights have an impact on population problems?
7. **ANALYZING ISSUES** Do the benefits of new agricultural technologies outweigh the drawbacks? Explain.
8. **FORMING AND SUPPORTING OPINIONS** Should governments establish policies to reduce population growth? Why or why not?
9. **WRITING ACTIVITY** [POWER AND AUTHORITY] Write an expository essay identifying and explaining the different positions governments have taken on the issue of population growth.

---

**CONNECT TO TODAY**

**CREATING A CHART**

Choose a country and track its population figures over the past century on a chart. Display your chart to the class and discuss possible reasons for the trends you found.
Economic Issues in the Developing World

**MAIN IDEA** Developing nations face a set of economic challenges that must be resolved.

**WHY IT MATTERS NOW** Sustainable economic development enables more people to lead productive lives and makes the world more stable.

**TERMS & NAMES**
- less-developed countries (LDCs)
- investment capital
- World Bank
- International Monetary Fund (IMF)
- grassroots development

**SETTING THE STAGE** The economies of the industrialized nations grew rapidly after World War II. Such has not been the case, however, for many less-developed countries (LDCs), or countries not fully industrialized. Among other things, the LDCs have lacked financial resources and a strong infrastructure—roads, airports, plumbing, and electrical systems—necessary for economic growth. Nevertheless, the industrialized nations have remained interested in the LDCs as sources of raw materials and as potential markets for goods. Indeed, the industrialized nations would like the economies of the LDCs to become strong and stable.

**Providing International Aid**
Most economists cite the following factors as necessary for economic development:
- **investment capital**, funds to pay for the construction of industries and infrastructure, such as roads and bridges
- technology to help companies and workers be as productive as possible
- healthy and well-trained workers to help reduce waste and inefficiency
- qualified managers to make sure that workers and materials are used efficiently

**Roots of the Difficulties** A serious problem that LDCs face is how to acquire these factors. Many people believe that imperialism and colonialism are the reasons that the LDCs have not industrialized. The imperial nations limited the economic growth of their colonies. In addition, the colonial governments robbed the colonized people of the chance to govern themselves. When most colonized regions gained their independence after World War II, they had underdeveloped economies and weak political traditions. These problems made it difficult for the LDCs to achieve stable economic growth. In recent years, however, more and more LDCs have been developing stable democratic governments and making greater strides toward a stronger economy.

Industrialized nations have tried to work with the LDCs by providing aid through international organizations, such as the World Bank and the International Monetary Fund (IMF). The World Bank provides loans for large-scale development projects, such as dams. The IMF offers emergency loans to countries in financial crisis.
Residents of Ho Chi Minh City, Vietnam, travel beneath advertisements for various international companies.

**Tense Relations** International agencies can play an important role in development, but they also have drawbacks. The World Bank, for example, might fund a project that it considers worthy, such as a large dam. But the project may do little to help the people of a country. The IMF, as well, has been criticized for setting harsh financial conditions upon countries receiving IMF loans. For instance, the IMF might require a country to cut its government spending drastically.

Latin American nations have had troubled relationships with international lenders. For instance, Brazil repeatedly clashed with the IMF since the 1980s over economic policy and repayment schedules. By 1997, Brazil had worked out a repayment plan, but its debt level remained very high—$200 billion by the middle of 1999.

**Different Economic Approaches**

Today, many LDCs use two main approaches to spur economic growth—investment by multinational corporations and smaller, more localized efforts known collectively as grassroots development.

**Multinational Corporations** As you learned in Chapter 20, multinational corporations are companies that do business in many countries. These giant companies build factories in countries where the costs of labor and materials are low in order to increase their profits. Multinational companies often bring jobs, investment capital, and technology to nations that need them. Yet some of these companies have been criticized for exploiting workers and harming the environment in their host countries.

Most LDCs want multinational companies to invest in them because the multinationals do create jobs. Some LDCs offer multinational corporations favorable tax rates and work regulations. For instance, Nicaragua offers a package of benefits to multinational clothing firms that operate maquilas, or factories, in Nicaragua. The package exempts the companies from having to pay income taxes for ten years and allows them to pay a minimum wage of 41 cents an hour.

On the whole, Nicaraguan maquilas are a mixed blessing for the country. The unemployment rate is high, and the maquilas provide jobs. But maquilas do little to contribute technology, capital, or infrastructure to the country.

**Grassroots Development** Another approach to economic development is grassroots development. Grassroots development calls for small-scale, community-based projects to help poor people lift themselves from poverty. Grassroots programs usually focus on helping individuals and communities to improve their lives. Grassroots development responds to community needs and can help raise standards of living while preserving local customs.
Solutions to Economic Growth

An example of a grassroots development program is microcredit. Microcredit programs give small loans—often less than $100—to help individuals begin small businesses and lift themselves from poverty. Many organizations, including the World Bank and multinational corporations, run microcredit programs. In 2006, the Nobel Peace Prize was awarded to Muhammad Yunus and his Grameen Bank, for promoting microcredit in Bangladesh.

Julia Sairitupac, a single mother living in Sarita Colonia, Peru, was one person who benefitted from the microcredit program. She received between $100 and $200 for kitchen tools and other equipment to help her struggling business selling fruit juice and salchipapas (hot dogs and french fries). “I feel like I have begun, for the first time, to leave poverty,” she said. “Although my work requires many sacrifices, I want to continue progressing and install my business in my own home, which, with the help of my children, we are already building bit by bit.”

No matter what approach is used, however, the development process is slow. And the gap between rich and poor nations remains large. Although the economic output of Asia and Africa grew during the 1980s, these regions still lag far behind the richer, more productive nations.

Free Trade or Protectionism Another key issue that developing countries face is whether to follow policies of protectionism or free trade. Free trade, as you learned in Chapter 20, is the reduction of trade barriers among nations. This includes eliminating tariffs, or taxes on imported goods. Supporters of free trade believe that doing away with tariffs stimulates commerce by increasing trade among nations. Protectionists are those who oppose free trade. They support tariffs as a way to protect local products and industries from international competition.

Since the 1980s, many LDCs have embraced free trade under the terms established by the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT) and the North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA), both of which were detailed in Chapter 20. Regional trading blocs are now forming in Latin America, Africa, and Asia. These blocs may provide many LDCs with the support they need to strengthen their economies. The success of these trading blocs appears to be crucial to the economic growth and long-term stability of developing countries.

FORMING AND SUPPORTING OPINIONS

Do you support free trade or protectionism? Why?

CRITICAL THINKING & WRITING

6. ANALYZING ISSUES What are the advantages and disadvantages to grassroots development?

7. CLARIFYING What factors must LDCs consider in making plans to develop their economies?

8. FORMING AND SUPPORTING OPINIONS Do organizations providing economic aid have the right to place restrictions on their aid? Why or why not?

9. WRITING ACTIVITY Imagine you are an editorial writer for a newspaper in a developing nation. Write a brief editorial expressing your view on free trade versus protectionism.

CONNECT TO TODAY CREATE A TIME LINE

Choose a developing country in Latin America, Africa, or Asia and create a time line of significant economic events in its history over the past 50 years.
Seeking Global Security

**MAIN IDEA**

**POWER AND AUTHORITY** War, terrorism, and weapons of mass destruction threaten the safety of people all over the world.

**WHY IT MATTERS NOW**
People can work against the dangers posed by war, terrorism, and weapons of mass destruction.

**TERMS & NAMES**
- conventional arms
- bioweapons

**SETTING THE STAGE** Among the most pressing issues facing the world community today are warfare and terrorism. So long as nations continue to use the threat of military force as a tool of foreign policy, armed conflicts will erupt. In addition, the threat of terrorism—the use of violence against people or property to force changes in societies or governments—strikes fear in the hearts of many people. Nevertheless, many nations and organizations have been working together to reduce the threats of such violence and bloodshed.

**Worldwide Arms Trade**

Many people hoped that the end of the Cold War would reduce the risk of armed conflict around the world. However, developments following the Cold War have introduced new threats. First, the collapse of the Soviet empire led to political instability and violence in parts of the world the Soviets once controlled. Second, a bustling international arms trade has emerged to ensure that few conflicts around the world suffer from a shortage of weapons.

**The Market for Weapons** During the Cold War, the main suppliers of conventional arms—tanks, planes, rifles, and all other non-nuclear weapons—were the United States, Western Europe, and the Soviet Union. These nations sold most of their weapons to developing nations. This government-sponsored trade has declined considerably since the mid-1980s, but it has not ceased.

What has grown, however, is the illegal market for weapons. Many of the weapons bought on the illegal market find their way to trouble spots around the world. These illegal weapons have frequently contributed to armed conflict in regions with political, ethnic, or religious tensions.

**Protests against Weapons Sales** Some people are beginning to take action against international arms dealers. In Belgium, the Flemish Forum voor Vredesaktie (Forum for Peace Action) has organized nonviolent protests against the Armed Forces Communication and Electronics Association (AFCEA), which held its annual arms fair in Brussels, Belgium, in 1997. In 2007, protesters in London, England, tried to shut down one of the world’s largest arms fairs—the Defence Systems and Equipment International Show.
Demonstrations such as those in Belgium and London have a long way to go before they stop international arms deals. But opponents of the arms trade are determined not to abandon their fight.

**Weapons of Mass Destruction**

Weapons of mass destruction, which you read about in Chapter 20, pose a different kind of threat to peace. Such weapons, which include nuclear armaments and biological and chemical weapons, have the potential to kill or injure large numbers of people at one time. Many of these tools of war are the products of sophisticated technologies. Even so, some are frighteningly easy to make and use.

**The Threat of Nuclear Weapons** The existence of nuclear weapons poses a significant threat to world peace—and even to human survival. In the years since World War II, a number of nations have developed nuclear weapons while other countries continue working toward that goal. Opponents of nuclear weapons have tried to prevent the proliferation, or spread, of such weapons.

A major step toward stopping nuclear proliferation was the Treaty on the Non-Proliferation of Nuclear Weapons (NPT). This treaty was passed by the United Nations General Assembly in 1968. It went into force in 1970 for 25 years. In 1995, 170 nations signed on to renew the NPT forever. Only India, Pakistan, and North Korea have continued to test nuclear arms. However, there is growing concern that hostile nations, such as Iran, might develop nuclear weapons. Such a dilemma highlights the continuing threat of nuclear war.

**Biological and Chemical Weapons** The possible proliferation of biological and chemical weapons is also a growing concern to many nations. These weapons are...
relatively easy to produce and distribute, making them much more available than nuclear weapons to terrorists and less-developed countries. Author Richard Preston feels that biological weapons, or bioweapons, can be the most deadly:

**Primary Source**

Bioweapons are microorganisms, bacteria or viruses, that invade the body, multiply inside it, and destroy it. Bioweapons can be used as strategic weapons. That is, they are incredibly powerful and dangerous. They can kill huge numbers of people if they are used properly, and their effects are not limited to one place or a small target. Chemical weapons, on the other hand, can be used only tactically. It is virtually impossible to put enough of a chemical in the air in a high enough concentration to wipe out a large number of people over a large territory. And chemicals aren’t alive and can’t spread through an infectious process.

**Richard Preston**, “The Bioweaponeers,” *The New Yorker*

### The War in Iraq

In the spring of 2003, amid growing worries about terrorism and the development of deadly weapons that resulted from the terrorist attacks of September 11, 2001, U.S. President George W. Bush confronted the leader of Iraq, Saddam Hussein. The longtime dictator had concerned the world community for years. During the 1980s, Hussein had used chemical weapons to put down a rebellion in Iraq. In 1990, he had invaded Kuwait, only to be pushed back by a U.S.-led military effort. In light of such history, many viewed Hussein as a threat to peace and stability in the world.

**The Path to War** Throughout much of 2002, the United States and other nations accused Hussein of developing weapons of mass destruction (WMD). Bowing to world pressure, Hussein allowed inspectors from the United Nations to search Iraq for such outlawed weapons. Some investigators, however, insisted that the Iraqis were not fully cooperating with the inspections. U.S. Secretary of State Colin Powell made a presentation to the United Nations arguing that Iraq operated covert WMD facilities. U.S. and British officials soon threatened to use force to disarm Iraq.

The UN Security Council debated what action to take next. Some countries, such as France and Germany, called for letting the inspectors continue searching for weapons. British prime minister Tony Blair, however, accused the Iraqis of “deception and evasion” and insisted inspections would never work.

**Operation Iraqi Freedom** In March 2003, a coalition led by the United States and Britain launched air strikes in and around the Iraqi capital, Baghdad. Coalition forces then marched into Iraq through Kuwait. The invasion of Iraq to remove Saddam Hussein, known as Operation Iraqi Freedom, had begun.

The military operation met with strong opposition from numerous countries. Some world leaders criticized the policy of attacking a nation to prevent it from future misdeeds. U.S. and British officials, however, argued that they would not wait for Hussein to strike first.

As coalition forces marched north to Baghdad, troops parachuted into northern Iraq and began moving south toward the
capital city. By early April, Baghdad had fallen and the regime of Saddam Hussein had collapsed. After less than four weeks of fighting, the coalition had won the war.

**The War Draws Down** Despite the coalition victory, much work remained in Iraq. With the help of U.S. officials, Iraqis began rebuilding their nation. They established an interim government that created a democratic constitution and held elections in February 2005. A party heavily supported by Shiite Muslims won the most votes.

Meanwhile, numerous U.S. troops remained behind to help maintain order in Iraq and battle pockets of fighters loyal to Hussein. Violence also increased due to growing opposition to the coalition’s presence. And the absence of a strong central government gave room for long-standing ethnic conflicts to resurge and become violent. As for the defeated dictator, Hussein was finally captured on December 13, 2003. He was tried by an Iraqi court and executed for “crimes against humanity.” Finally, the United States and Britain came under increasing fire for failing to find any WMD in the months after the conflict ended. U.S. and British officials insisted that it would be only a matter of time before they found Hussein’s deadly arsenal. Yet none were ever found.

After several more years of continued violence, President Bush authorized the deployment of more than 20,000 U.S. troops to Iraq in 2007 in an effort to finally secure the country. Many observers believed that this surge of troops helped stabilize Iraq. In 2009, President Barack Obama declared that the combat mission in Iraq would end in August 2010. The President intended to focus on the continuing war in Afghanistan.

**Main Idea**

**Identifying Problems**

8. What challenges remained in Iraq after the conflict ended?

**Terms & Names**

1. For each term, write a sentence explaining its significance.
   - **conventional arms**
   - **bioweapons**

**Using Your Notes**

2. Which of the threats to peace and security is the most dangerous? Why?

**Main Ideas**

3. Why is the growth of the illegal arms market a threat to world peace?
4. What are the types of weapons of mass destruction?
5. What was the result of Operation Iraqi Freedom?

**Critical Thinking & Writing**

6. **Summarizing** List ways in which people and nations of the world have attempted to control threats to the world’s peace and security.
7. **Analyzing Issues** What reasons might nations have to retain or maintain a nuclear or bioweapons arsenal?
8. **Evaluating Decisions** Do you think the United States was justified in invading Iraq? Why or why not?
9. **Writing Activity** Imagine you are a speechwriter for President Bush. Write the introductory paragraph of a speech to coalition forces after their victory in Iraq.

**Multimedia Activity**

**Preparing an Oral Report**

Use the Internet to research an armed conflict somewhere in the world. Use your findings to deliver a brief oral report about the origins and impact of the conflict.

**Internet Keyword**

global conflict
Defending Human Rights and Freedoms

**POWER AND AUTHORITY**  
Human rights and freedoms have become a major international concern.

**WHY IT MATTERS NOW**  
Protecting fundamental rights for all people is an important way to improve life in the 21st century.

**TERMS & NAMES**  
- Universal Declaration of Human Rights

**SETTING THE STAGE**  
Since the end of World War II, the international community, working through the United Nations and other organizations, has made human rights a primary concern in international affairs. Human rights are the basic rights and freedoms that all people are entitled to enjoy. The UN has passed several declarations setting standards for such rights and freedoms. Around the world, however, repressive governments continue to deny people these rights. Thus, numerous political and organization leaders remain committed to bringing human rights to all people who inhabit the earth.

**The Struggle for Human Rights**

The *Universal Declaration of Human Rights* was adopted by the United Nations in 1948. This declaration defines human rights goals for the world community. The preamble of the declaration lists several reasons why the declaration is necessary, including the need to promote friendly relations between nations.

Article 1 of the declaration states, “All human beings are born free and equal in dignity and rights. They are endowed with reason and conscience and should act towards one another in a spirit of brotherhood.” The declaration goes on to spell out the rights that all nations should seek to guarantee for their citizens.

With regard to people’s basic rights, the declaration states, “The will of the people shall be the basis of the authority of government” and that “everyone has the right to take part in the government of his country.” The declaration also calls for free and fair elections. Finally, it calls for basic civil liberties such as freedom of speech and religion as well as freedom from political terror.

Various organizations, including UN agencies and independent groups such as Amnesty International and Americas Watch, observe whether countries are meeting human rights standards. These groups perform a valuable service by helping to improve conditions and even save lives.

Despite the best efforts of human rights organizations, protecting human rights remains an uphill battle. Serious violations of fundamental rights continue to occur around the world. The violations result from a number of causes, including political dissent, racial or ethnic hatreds, and religious differences.

**Political Dissent**  
Opposition to political dissent—the difference of opinion over political issues—is one of the most common causes of human rights violations.
In many countries around the world, from El Salvador to Iran to the former Soviet Union, individuals and groups have been persecuted for holding political views that differ from those of the people in power.

There are many examples of political rights violations in the world. One nation that has been criticized for abuses is Nigeria. General Sani Abacha of Nigeria earned a reputation as a ruthless military dictator. Despite repeated statements that he intended to open up the Nigerian government and hold free elections, Abacha imprisoned his political opponents. Abacha took power in 1993 during the chaos that erupted after results of the presidential election held that year were wiped out. Abacha refused to make public the results of that election. Among his prisoners was Moshood Abiola, a wealthy businessman who many believe won the 1993 election. Abacha died in June 1998. In a hopeful sign for the future, his successor has instituted democratic civilian rule.

Ethnic and Racial Conflicts In some countries, ethnic or racial hatreds lead to human rights abuses. For example, human rights groups have charged the fundamentalist Muslim military regime in Sudan of committing genocide against the Nuba, an agricultural people in southern Sudan. In addition, Christian groups have accused the Sudanese regime of persecuting Christians, many of whom live in the southern region of Sudan.

In Rwanda, fighting between Hutus and Tutsis—the two main ethnic groups—has led to horrendous rights violations. In 1994, Hutus massacred up to 500,000 Tutsis in the worst case of genocide since the 1970s Khmer Rouge reign of terror in Cambodia.

Religious Persecution Human rights violations based on religious differences have also occurred. Such violations often have ethnic and political overtones. For example, Tibetans—under Chinese rule since 1950—have been persecuted by the Chinese for their Buddhist religion, their traditional culture, and their desire for political independence. [Many Tibetan leaders were imprisoned in China in the 1990s.] And the Dalai Lama, the most important Tibetan religious leader, remained in exile.
Children at Risk

Children are the most vulnerable of the world’s citizens. They are among those who run the highest risk of suffering human rights abuses. The abuses children suffer are mainly social and economic, and they occur primarily in less-developed countries. A lack of food, education, and health care is foremost among these abuses.

In addition, children in many parts of the world are forced to work long hours, often in dangerous conditions, for little or no pay. During the early 1990s Iqbal Masih, a child activist from Pakistan, helped bring attention to the plight of child labor. To help pay off a debt owed by his family, Masih was forced at age four to work for a local carpet maker. He often worked 12-hour days, and frequently was chained to his work station. At age 10, he escaped and worked with various international organizations to highlight the problem of child workers and free thousands of children from forced labor. In 1995, he was shot and killed shortly after returning to Pakistan.

Meanwhile, the United Nations has played a leading role in trying to improve conditions for children around the world. In 1989, the UN adopted a document called the Convention on the Rights of the Child. Known as the Magna Carta for Children, this document established a framework for children’s rights. It covers basic rights, such as health care and education, and calls for protection against the exploitation, abuse, and neglect of children. Similar goals were advanced in 1990 at the World Summit for Children, where world leaders adopted a 25-point program in favor of children’s welfare.

Signs of Hope

The work of the international community is a positive sign in the struggle to advance human rights. Despite great obstacles, efforts to make human rights a priority are achieving some successes around the world.

Human Rights Successes The greatest human rights successes have come in the area of political rights and freedoms. In Europe, most countries that were once part of the Soviet bloc have opened up their political systems to allow for democratic elections and the free expression of ideas. There have been similar successes in South Africa, where the apartheid system of racial separation came to an end. Free elections held in South Africa in 1994 finally brought a multiracial government to power.

Women’s Rights Addressed The past few decades have also seen major efforts to advance human rights for women. Throughout the world, women tend to be poorer than men and attain less access to social benefits such as education and health care. Conditions for women are especially poor in the less-developed countries. But even in the richer nations, women often have second-class status.

Beginning in the 1970s, international organizations began to address women’s rights issues. In 1979, the UN adopted a measure called the Convention for the Elimination of All Forms of Discrimination Against Women. The convention was eventually signed by nearly 100 nations. In 1995, the UN sponsored the Fourth Conference on Women, held in Beijing, China. Issues of women’s leadership, property ownership, education, health, and population control were top priorities at the conference.
Human Rights in the 21st Century  Progress in all areas of human rights is encouraging—but it is only a beginning. Much work must still be done before people in all countries of the world have the democratic rights and freedoms set forth in the Universal Declaration of Human Rights.

However, important trends in the world provide reasons to hope for continued progress on human rights. Rising levels of education are providing people with the skills to exercise their political rights and improve their lives. Modern communications networks are helping human rights organizations like Amnesty International to investigate and report on human rights abuses. In addition, today’s mass media can make people instantly aware of abuses in the world.

But perhaps the greatest reason for optimism regarding human rights arises from world history since 1989. In early 1989, millions of people in the Soviet Union, Eastern Europe, and South Africa lived under repressive governments that denied basic political rights, such as the right to vote in a multi-party election. Then, beginning with Poland later in 1989, one country after another threw off its old regime and turned to a democratic form of government. The Soviet Union came to an end in 1991. In that same year, the republic of Russia had its first free presidential election. And in 1994, South Africa held its first universal elections, in which people of all races could vote.

These historic events transformed the world by extending human rights and democratic institutions to millions of people. They continue to inspire optimism that millions more can win their human and political rights while the new century is still young.

**TERMS & NAMES**  1. For the following term, write a sentence explaining its significance.
   • Universal Declaration of Human Rights

**USING YOUR NOTES**  2. Which group do you think has made the greatest progress? Explain.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Improvements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Children</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Women</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**MAIN IDEAS**  3. What are two examples of human rights?
   4. What are the three main causes of human rights violations?
   5. What trends have raised hopes that progress will be made in protecting human rights?

**CRITICAL THINKING & WRITING**

6. **MAKING INFERENCES** What role can the mass media play in helping people understand human rights problems?

7. **IDENTIFYING PROBLEMS** What problems might arise when a government takes an official role in protecting human rights at home and abroad?

8. **ANALYZING ISSUES** Which group in society do you think needs the most help in obtaining human rights? Why?

9. **WRITING ACTIVITY**  **POWER AND AUTHORITY** Write an expository paragraph explaining which human right discussed in this section you consider the most important and why.

**CONNECT TO TODAY**  **DELIVERING AN ORAL REPORT**

Choose a country and investigate its record with regard to human rights. Present your findings in an oral report to the class.
Epilogue Assessment

TERMS & NAMES
Briefly explain the importance of each of the following terms and names to the unresolved problems the world faces in the 21st century.

1. mass media 6. investment capital
2. greenhouse effect 7. World Bank
3. sustainable development 8. grassroots development
4. overpopulation 9. bioweapons
5. less-developed countries 10. Universal Declaration of Human Rights

MAIN IDEAS
Technology Transforms Life Section 1 (pages 675–678)
11. Describe two ways in which the revolution in electronics has changed the world.
12. Name two ways in which technology has transformed the workplace.

Environmental Challenges Section 2 (pages 679–682)
13. Discuss three effects of air pollution on the environment.
14. How do rain forests benefit the environment?

Feeding a Growing Population Section 3 (pages 683–686)
15. What factors have contributed to famine in Africa?

Economic Issues in the Developing World Section 4 (pages 687–689)
16. What are the IMF and the World Bank?
17. What is microcredit?

Economics

16. What are the IMF and the World Bank?
17. What is microcredit?

CRITICAL THINKING
1. USING YOUR NOTES
[SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY] Use a problem-solution chart to show how technology can help solve two of the unresolved problems of the modern world.

2. ANALYZING ISSUES
Which unresolved problem of the modern world do you think poses the most serious threat to humanity? Explain.

3. FORMING AND SUPPORTING OPINIONS
[ECONOMICS] Which of the four factors necessary for economic development discussed on page 687 do you consider to be the most vital? Explain.

VISUAL SUMMARY

Unresolved Problems of the Modern World

Technology
- The electronic revolution improves communications.
- Technological advances change businesses and workplaces.
- Mass media change culture.

Environment
- Air pollution threatens the atmosphere.
- Industry and population growth threaten natural resources.
- Energy use creates pollution and depletes resources.

Population
- World population will grow in the next century.
- Wars and droughts can cause famines.
- Efforts are underway to increase food supplies and reduce population growth.

Economics
- Investment capital, technology, good workers, and qualified managers are necessary for economic growth.
- Free trade and protectionist policies offer different opportunities for economic development.

Terrorism
- International arms sales can contribute to instability.
- Weapons of mass destruction and terrorism threaten international peace.

Human Rights
- Human rights violations arise from political, ethnic, racial, and religious differences.
- Progress is made in the 1990s to expand democracy and human rights.
STANDARDS-BASED ASSESSMENT

Use the chart and your knowledge of world history to answer questions 1 and 2.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Infant Mortality Rate, 2002 (per 1,000 live births)</th>
<th>Life Expectancy at Birth, 2002 (years)</th>
<th>Per Capita GDP, 2000 (U.S. Dollars)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>India</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>63 (male) 64 (female)</td>
<td>2,200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethiopia</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>43 (male) 45 (female)</td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>France</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>75 (male) 83 (female)</td>
<td>24,400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>United States</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>75 (male) 80 (female)</td>
<td>36,200</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


1. In which nation does a newborn have the best chance of surviving?
   A. India  
   B. Ethiopia  
   C. France  
   D. United States

2. Which of the following can be said about prosperous nations?
   A. They have a largely illiterate population.  
   B. They have a low infant mortality rate.  
   C. Their residents have a short life expectancy.  
   D. They have a population that is mostly female.

Use this passage about concerns over North Korea and its possible nuclear capabilities to answer question 3.

**PRIMARY SOURCE**

It is hard to exaggerate the danger in North Korea’s finger-on-trigger taunts to America and the world that it already has a few nuclear bombs, is busily producing the stuff to build more, and will make use of them in whatever way it chooses… More weapons means enough spares to be able, say, to test one to intimidate the neighbors; or to auction one off to the highest bidder (an Iran, a Libya, or perhaps even [terrorist leader] Osama bin Laden).

**THE ECONOMIST, May 3, 2003**

3. A major concern expressed by the authors is that North Korea could supply nuclear weapons to
   A. terrorists.  
   B. corporations.  
   C. its neighbors.  
   D. the United States.

For additional test practice, go online for:
- Diagnostic tests
- Strategies
- Tutorials

Interact with History

On page 674, you considered various social, economic, and environmental problems that exist in your country and community and discussed ways to address these problems. Now that you have read the chapter, what do you think are the most pressing challenges the world faces today? Do you agree with all the actions being taken to meet these challenges? What are some ways that you and others might address these challenges on a local level? Discuss your ideas in small groups.

FOCUS ON WRITING

[POWER AND AUTHORITY] Using the library or the Internet, research a problem that exists in your community. After you have collected your information, write a letter to your congressional representative about what might be done to solve the problem you have chosen.

Consider the following:
- How did the problem start?
- What effect does it have on the community?
- What is the best way to address the problem?

MULTIMEDIA ACTIVITY

Create a Multimedia Presentation

All of the unresolved problems discussed in the Epilogue have long histories. With a group of students, choose one of the six problems and create a multimedia presentation that explains the history of the problem you have chosen. Use the Internet, periodicals, and other library sources to research your presentation.

- Find historical, literary, musical, and visual materials that relate to your topic and collect them for a class presentation.
- Give your presentation to the rest of the class. Explain the history of the problem you chose, ending with the current situation.
A Global View

Religion is defined as an organized system of beliefs, ceremonies, practices, and worship that centers on one or more gods. As many chapters in this book explain, religion has had a significant impact on world history. Throughout the centuries, religion has guided the beliefs and actions of millions around the globe. It has brought people together. But it has also torn them apart.

Religion continues to be a dominant force throughout the world, affecting everything from what people wear to how they behave. There are thousands of religions in the world. The following pages concentrate on five major religions and on Confucianism, an ethical system. They examine some of the characteristics and rituals that make these religions and systems similar as well as unique. They also present some of each religion’s sects and denominations.

World Population’s Religious Affiliations

- **World Population: 6.2 billion***
  - 33% Christianity
  - 20% Islam
  - 14% Other
  - 13% Hinduism
  - 6% Buddhism
  - 2% Judaism
  - 2% Nonreligious
  - 12%

*Estimated 2002 Figure  
Sources: World Almanac 2003; World Christian Encyclopedia (2001)
World Population: 6.2 billion*

World Population's Religious Affiliations

Sources:
World Almanac 2003; World Christian Encyclopedia (2001)

*Estimated 2002 Figure

Communist China is officially atheist (disbelieving in the existence of God). Unofficially, the Chinese practice a number of religions and ethical systems, including Daoism, Confucianism, and a variety of folk religions.
Buddhism

Buddhism has influenced Asian religion, society, and culture for over 2,500 years. Today, most Buddhists live in Sri Lanka, East and Southeast Asia, and Japan. Buddhism consists of several different sects. A religious sect is a group within a religion that distinguishes itself by one or more unique beliefs.

Buddhists are united in their belief in the Buddha’s teachings, known as the dharma. Because the Buddha is said to have “set in motion the wheel of the dharma” during his first sermon, his teaching is often symbolized by a wheel, as shown above. The Buddha taught that the key to happiness was detachment from all worldly goods and desires. This was achieved by following the Noble Eightfold Path, or the Middle Way, a life between earthly desires and extreme forms of self-denial.

Ritual

Women in Rangoon, Myanmar, sweep the ground so that monks can avoid stepping on and killing any insects. Many Buddhists believe in rebirth, the idea that living beings, after death, are reborn and continue to exist. Buddhists believe that all living beings possess the potential for spiritual growth—and the possibility of rebirth as humans.

Leadership

Those who dedicate their entire life to the teachings of the Buddha are known as Buddhist monks and nuns. In many Buddhist sects, monks are expected to lead a life of poverty, meditation, and study. Here, Buddhist monks file past shrines in Thailand. To learn humility, monks must beg for food and money.

Worship Practices

Statues of the Buddha, such as this one in China, appear in shrines throughout Asia. Buddhists strive to follow the Buddha’s teachings through meditation, a form of religious contemplation. They also make offerings at shrines, temples, and monasteries.

RESEARCH WEB LINKS Go online for more on Buddhism.
This image depicts what Buddhists consider the three cardinal faults of humanity: greed (the pig); hatred (the snake); and delusion (the rooster).

**Dhammapada**

One of the most well-known Buddhist scriptures is the *Dhammapada*, or Verses of Righteousness. The book is a collection of sayings on Buddhist practices. In this verse, Buddhists are instructed to avoid envying others:

Let him not despise what he has received, nor should he live envying the gains of others. The disciple who envies the gains of others does not attain concentration.

*Dhammapada* 365
Ritual

Each year, hundreds of thousands of Christians from all over the world visit the Basilica of Guadalupe in northern Mexico City. The church is considered the holiest in Mexico. It is near the site where Mary, the mother of Jesus, is said to have appeared twice in 1531. Out of deep respect for Mary, some pilgrims approach the holy cathedral on their knees.

Worship Practices

Worshiping as a group is an important part of Christian life. Most Protestant services include praying, singing, and a sermon. Some services include baptism and communion, in which bread and wine are consumed in remembrance of Jesus’ death.

Communion celebrates the last meal Jesus took with his disciples, as illustrated here in The Last Supper by Leonardo da Vinci.
**Leadership**

In some Christian churches, the person who performs services in the local church is known as a priest. Shown here is a priest of the Ethiopian Orthodox Church. These priests, like the ministers and clergy in other Christian sects, conduct worship services and preside over marriages and funerals. Monks and nuns also provide leadership and guidance in the Christian church.

---

**Fish Symbol**

The fish is an early symbol of Christianity. There are many theories about the origin of the symbol, but some Christians believe that it derives from the fact that Jesus called his disciples, or followers, “fishers of men.”

---

**The Christian Bible**

The Bible is the most sacred book of the Christian religion. It is divided into two major parts: the Old Testament, which is much the same as the Hebrew Bible, and the New Testament, which describes the teachings of Jesus. The following verses from the New Testament reveal the fundamental teaching about Jesus:

> “Men, what must I do to be saved?” And they said, “Believe in the Lord Jesus, and you will be saved, you and your household.”

Acts 16:30–31

---

**Chapter Connection**

For more about Christianity, see pages 14–15 of the Prologue. To learn about the Protestant and Catholic Reformations, see sections 3 and 4 of Chapter 1.
Hinduism

Hinduism, one of the world’s oldest surviving religions, is the major religion of India. It also has followers in Indonesia, as well as in parts of Africa, Europe, and the Western Hemisphere. Hinduism is a collection of religious beliefs that developed over thousands of years. Hindus worship several gods, which represent different forms of Brahman. Brahman is the most divine spirit in the Hindu religion. Hinduism, like Buddhism, stresses that persons reach true enlightenment and happiness only after they free themselves from their earthly desires. Followers of Hinduism achieve this goal through worship, the attainment of knowledge, and a lifetime of virtuous acts. The sound “Om,” or “Aum,” shown above, is the most sacred syllable for Hindus. It often is used in prayers.

RESEARCH WEB LINKS  Go online for more on Hinduism.
The Vedas are the oldest Hindu scriptures—and they are older than the sacred writings of any other major religion. The following is a verse from the Rig Veda, the oldest of the four Vedas:

He who gives liberally goes straight to the gods; on the high ridge of heaven he stands exalted.

Rig Veda 1.125.5

Leadership
Gurus, or spiritual teachers, play a major role in spreading Hindu beliefs. These holy men are believed to have had the gods’ words revealed to them. Brahmín priests, like the one shown here, are also religious leaders. They take care of the divine images in the temples and read from the sacred books.

Celebration
Each spring, Hindus in India celebrate the festival of Holi. Originally a harvest festival, Holi also symbolizes the triumph of good over evil. The festival recalls the story of Prince Prahlada, who faced death rather than cease worshiping Vishnu. During this joyous celebration, people dance in the streets and shower each other with colored powder and dyed water.

Learn More About Hinduism

Three Main Gods
This statue represents Brahma, creator of the universe. Brahma, Vishnu, and Shiva are the three main gods of Hinduism. Vishnu is the preserver of the universe, while Shiva is its destroyer.

Rig Veda

Primary Source
The Vedas are the oldest Hindu scriptures—and they are older than the sacred writings of any other major religion. The following is a verse from the Rig Veda, the oldest of the four Vedas:

He who gives liberally goes straight to the gods; on the high ridge of heaven he stands exalted.

Rig Veda 1.125.5
Islam

Islam is a religion based on the teachings of Muhammad, revered by his followers as the Prophet. Followers of Islam, known as Muslims, believe that God revealed these teachings to Muhammad through the angel Gabriel. Muslims are concentrated from southwest to central Asia and parts of Africa. Islam also has many followers in Southeast Asia. Sunni Muslims believe that their leaders should follow Muhammad’s example. Shi’a Muslims believe that their leaders should be Muhammad’s descendants.

Islam teaches the existence of only one God, called Allah in the Arabic language. Muslims believe in all prophets of Judaism and Christianity. They show their devotion by performing lifelong acts of worship known as the Five Pillars of Islam. These include faith, prayer, almsgiving (charity), fasting, and a pilgrimage to Mecca. The crescent moon (shown above) has become a familiar symbol for Islam. It may be related to the new moon that begins each month in the Islamic lunar calendar, which orders religious life for Muslims. The five points of the star may represent the Five Pillars of Islam.

RESEARCH WEB LINKS Go online for more on Islam.

Ritual

At least once in their lifetime, all Muslims who are physically and financially able go on hajj, or pilgrimage, to the holy city of Mecca in Saudi Arabia. There, pilgrims perform several rites, or acts of worship. One rite, shown here, is walking seven times around the Ka’aba—the house of worship that Muslims face in prayer.
**Celebration**
During the sacred month known as Ramadan, Muslims fast, or abstain from food and drink, from dawn to sunset. The family shown here is ending their fast. The most important night of Ramadan is called the Night of Power. This is believed to be the night the angel Gabriel first spoke to Muhammad.

**Worship Practices**
Five times a day Muslims throughout the world face Mecca and pray to Allah. Pictured here are Muslims praying at a mosque in Turkey.

There are no priests or other clergy in Islam. However, a Muslim community leader known as the imam conducts the prayers in a mosque. Islam also has a scholar class called the ulama, which includes religious teachers.

The Qur'an, the sacred book of Muslims, consists of verses grouped into 114 chapters, or suras. The book is the spiritual guide on matters of Muslim faith. It also contains teachings for Muslim daily life. In the following verse, Muslims are instructed to appreciate the world’s physical and spiritual riches:

_Do you not see that God has subjected to your use all things in the heavens and on earth, and has made His bounties flow to you in exceeding measure, both seen and unseen?_

Qur'an, sura 31:20
Judaism

Judaism is the religion of the more than 14 million Jews throughout the world. Judaism was the first major religion to teach the existence of only one God. The basic laws and teachings of Judaism come from the Torah, the first five books of the Hebrew Bible. Judaism teaches that a person serves God by studying the Torah and living by its teachings. Orthodox Jews closely observe the laws of the Torah. Conservative and Reform Jews interpret the Torah less strictly and literally. The Star of David (shown above), also called the Shield of David, is the universal symbol of Judaism. The emblem refers to King David, who ruled the kingdom of Israel from about 1000–962 B.C.

RESEARCH WEB LINKS Go online for more on Judaism.

Ritual

Major events in a Jew's life are marked by special rites and ceremonies. When Jewish children reach the age of 12 (girls) or 13 (boys), for example, they enter the adult religious community. The event is marked in the synagogue with a ceremony called a bar mitzvah for a boy and a bat mitzvah for a girl, shown here.

Worship Practices

The synagogue is the Jewish house of worship and the center of Jewish community life. Services in the synagogue are usually conducted by a rabbi, the congregation's teacher and spiritual leader. Many Jews make the pilgrimage to the Western Wall, shown here. The sacred structure, built in the second century B.C., formed the western wall of the courtyard of the Second Temple of Jerusalem. The Romans destroyed the temple in A.D. 70.
Conservative
Reform Orthodox
Judaism

During a synagogue service, the Torah scroll is lifted, while the congregation declares: “This is the Law which Moses set before the children of Israel.” The following verse from the Torah makes clear Moses’s law regarding belief in one God:

Hear O Israel: the Lord our God, the Lord is One.

Deuteronomy 6:4

Major Jewish Sects

Reform
Orthodox

Judaism

Conservative

Yarmulke

Out of respect for God, Jewish men are not supposed to leave their head uncovered. Therefore, many Orthodox and Conservative Jews wear a skullcap known as a yarmulke, or kippah.

Celebration

Jews celebrate a number of holidays that honor their history as well as God. Pictured here are Jews celebrating the holiday of Purim. Purim is a festival honoring the survival of the Jews who, in the fifth century B.C., were marked for death by their Persian rulers.

Jews celebrate Purim by sending food and gifts. They also dress in costumes and hold carnivals and dances.
Celebration

While scholars remain uncertain of Confucius’s date of birth, people throughout East Asia celebrate it on September 28. In Taiwan, it is an official holiday, known as Teachers’ Day. The holiday also pays tribute to teachers. Confucius himself was a teacher, and he believed that education was an important part of a fulfilled life. Here, dancers take part in a ceremony honoring Confucius.
**Leadership**

Confucius was born at a time of crisis and violence in China. He hoped his ideas and teachings would restore the order of earlier times to his society. But although he was active in politics, he never had enough political power to put his ideas into practice. Nonetheless, his ideas would become the foundation of Chinese thought for more than 2,000 years.

**Leadership**

Confucius believed society should be organized around five basic relationships between the following:

1. ruler \(\leftrightarrow\) subject
2. father \(\leftrightarrow\) son
3. husband \(\leftrightarrow\) wife
4. older brother \(\leftrightarrow\) younger brother
5. friend \(\leftrightarrow\) friend

**Ritual**

A key aspect of Confucianism is filial piety, the respect children owe their parents. Traditionally, filial piety meant complete obedience to one’s parents during their lifetime. It also required the performance of certain rituals after their death. In this 12th-century Chinese painting, a sage instructs a pupil on the virtue of filial piety.

**Ritual**

Confucius’s Golden Rule

“Do not do unto others what you would not want others to do unto you.”

**The Analects**

The earliest and most authentic record of Confucius’s ideas was collected by his students. Around 400 B.C., they compiled Confucius’s thoughts in a book called the *Analects*. In the following selections from the *Analects*, Confucius (the Master) gives advice regarding virtue and pride:

The Master said: “Don’t worry if people don’t recognize your merits; worry that you may not recognize theirs.”

*Analects* 1.16

The Master said: “Do not be concerned that others do not recognize you; be concerned about what you are yet unable to do.”

*Analects* 14.30
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Buddhism</th>
<th>Christianity</th>
<th>Hinduism</th>
<th>Islam</th>
<th>Judaism</th>
<th>Confucianism</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Followers Worldwide (estimated 2005 figures)</td>
<td>379 million</td>
<td>2.1 billion</td>
<td>860 million</td>
<td>1.3 billion</td>
<td>15.1 million</td>
<td>6.5 million</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of Deity</td>
<td>no god</td>
<td>God</td>
<td>Brahman</td>
<td>Allah</td>
<td>God</td>
<td>no god</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Founder</td>
<td>The Buddha</td>
<td>Jesus</td>
<td>No one founder</td>
<td>No founder, but spread by Muhammad</td>
<td>Abraham</td>
<td>Confucius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holy Book</td>
<td>Many sacred texts, including the <em>Dhammapada</em></td>
<td>Christian Bible</td>
<td>Many sacred texts, including the Upanishads</td>
<td>Qur’an</td>
<td>Hebrew Bible, including the Torah</td>
<td>the <em>Analects</em>, the Five Classics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leadership</td>
<td>Buddhist monks and nuns</td>
<td>Priests, ministers, monks, and nuns</td>
<td>Brahmin priests, monks, and gurus</td>
<td>No clergy but a scholar class called the ulama, and the imams, who may lead prayers</td>
<td>Rabbis</td>
<td>No clergy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basic Beliefs</td>
<td>• Persons achieve complete peace and happiness (nirvana) by eliminating their attachment to worldly things. • Nirvana is reached by following the Noble Eightfold Path: Right views; Right resolve; Right speech; Right conduct; Right livelihood; Right effort; Right mindfulness; Right concentration.</td>
<td>• There is only one God, who watches over and cares for his people. • Jesus Christ is the son of God. He died to save humanity from sin. His death and resurrection made eternal life possible for others.</td>
<td>• The soul never dies, but is continually reborn. • Persons achieve happiness and enlightenment after they free themselves from their earthly desires. • Freedom from earthly desires comes from a life-time of worship, knowledge, and virtuous acts.</td>
<td>• Persons achieve salvation by following the Five Pillars of Islam and living a just life. These pillars are: faith; prayer; almsgiving, or charity to the poor; fasting, which Muslims perform during Ramadan; pilgrimage to Mecca.</td>
<td>• There is only one God, who watches over and cares for all people. • God loves and protects his people, but also holds people accountable for their sins and shortcomings. • Persons serve God by studying the Torah and living by its teachings.</td>
<td>• Social order, harmony, and good government should be based on strong family relationships. • Respect for parents and elders is important to a well-ordered society. • Education is important both to the welfare of the individual and to society.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Assessment

MAIN IDEAS

**Buddhism** (pages 702–703)
1. According to the Buddha, how does one achieve happiness and fulfillment?
2. Why do Buddhists take special care to avoid killing any living being?

**Christianity** (pages 704–705)
3. Why is Jesus Christ central to the Christian religion?
4. What do Christians hope to achieve by following the teachings of Jesus Christ?

**Hinduism** (pages 706–707)
5. What is the importance of the Ganges River in Hinduism?
6. Who are the three main gods of Hinduism?

**Islam** (pages 708–709)
7. What is the most important night of Ramadan? Why?
8. What are the Five Pillars of Islam?

**Judaism** (pages 710–711)
9. Why do Jews consider the Western Wall to be sacred?
10. What is the role of the rabbi in the Jewish tradition?

**Confucianism** (pages 712–713)
11. Around what five relationships did Confucius believe society should be organized?
12. According to tradition, what does filial piety require of children?

CRITICAL THINKING

1. **COMPARING AND CONTRASTING**
   Using information from the text and chart at left, choose two religions and identify their similarities and differences in a Venn diagram.

2. **SYNTHESIZING**
   What basic principles do all of the religions have in common?

3. **DRAWING CONCLUSIONS**
   What role does religion play in people’s everyday lives?

4. **MAKING INFERENCES**
   Why do you think ritual and celebrations are an important part of all religions?

5. **FORMING OPINIONS**
   What do you think people hope to gain from their religion?

STANDARDS-BASED ASSESSMENT

Use the quotation and your knowledge of world history to answer questions 1 and 2.

**PRIMARY SOURCE**

Human beings are spiritual animals. Indeed, there is a case for arguing that *Homo sapiens* is also *Homo religiousus*. Men and women started to worship gods as soon as they became recognizably human; they created religions at the same time they created works of art. . . . These early faiths expressed the wonder and mystery that seem always to have been an essential component of the human experience of this beautiful yet terrifying world. Like art, religion has been an attempt to find meaning and value in life, despite the suffering that flesh is heir to.

*KAREN ARMSTRONG, A History of God*

1. With which of the following opinions would Armstrong probably agree?
   A. People are naturally religious.
   B. People have no need of religion.
   C. People only believe in what they can see.
   D. People created religion out of fear.

2. According to Armstrong, what is the main similarity between art and religion?
   A. They both express the suffering human beings must endure.
   B. They first appeared at around the same time.
   C. They both place value on beauty.
   D. They are both used to find life’s meaning.

For additional test practice, go online for:
- Diagnostic tests
- Tutorials
- Strategies

Interact with History

Imagine that you could meet one of the founders listed in the chart on page 714. What questions would you ask about his life and beliefs? What views of your own would you share? Take turns role-playing your conversation with a partner.

FOCUS ON WRITING

Research to learn more about one of the celebrations you read about in this section. Then write a three-paragraph essay about its origins. Discuss the celebration’s history, symbolism, and meaning.
Reference Section

MODERN WORLD HISTORY

Patterns of Interaction

Skillbuilder Handbook
Skills for reading, thinking, and researching

Online References
Find the Economics and Primary Source Handbooks online

Glossary
Important terms and definitions

Spanish Glossary
Important terms and definitions translated into Spanish

Index
Index of all topics in the textbook
Refer to the Skillbuilder Handbook when you need help in answering Main Idea questions or questions in Section Assessments and Chapter Assessments. In addition, the handbook will help you answer questions about maps, charts, and graphs.

SECTION 1: Reading Critically

1.1 Determining Main Ideas
1.2 Following Chronological Order
1.3 Clarifying; Summarizing
1.4 Identifying Problems and Solutions
1.5 Analyzing Causes and Recognizing Effects
1.6 Comparing and Contrasting
1.7 Distinguishing Fact from Opinion

SECTION 2: Higher-Order Critical Thinking

2.1 Categorizing
2.2 Making Inferences
2.3 Drawing Conclusions
2.4 Developing Historical Perspective
2.5 Formulating Historical Questions
2.6 Making Predictions
2.7 Hypothesizing
2.8 Analyzing Motives
2.9 Analyzing Issues
2.10 Analyzing Bias
2.11 Evaluating Decisions and Courses of Action
2.12 Forming and Supporting Opinions
2.13 Synthesizing

SECTION 3: Exploring Evidence: Print, Visual, Technology Sources

3.1 Analyzing Primary and Secondary Sources
3.2 Visual, Audio, and Multimedia Sources
3.3 Evaluating Internet Sources
3.4 Interpreting Maps
3.5 Interpreting Charts
3.6 Interpreting Graphs
3.7 Analyzing Political Cartoons

SECTION 4: Creating Presentations

4.1 Writing for Social Studies
4.2 Creating a Map
4.3 Creating Charts and Graphs
4.4 Creating and Using a Database
4.5 Creating a Model
4.6 Creating/Interpreting a Research Outline
4.7 Creating Oral Presentations
4.8 Creating Written Presentations
Section 1: Reading Critically

1.1 Determining Main Ideas

The **MAIN IDEA** is a statement that sums up the most important point of a paragraph, a passage, an article, or a speech. Determining the main idea will increase your understanding as you read about historic events, people, and places. Main ideas are supported by details and examples.

Understanding the Skill

**STRATEGY: IDENTIFY THE TOPIC.** To find the main idea of a passage, first identify the topic. Then, as you read, define the central idea about the topic that the many details explain or support. The following passage contains information about the Renaissance. The diagram organizes the information to help you determine the main idea.

1 Identify the topic by first looking at the title or subtitle. This title suggests a quick way to identify the topic by looking for the name of the Renaissance woman, Isabella d’Este.

2 Look at the beginning and ending sentences of each paragraph for possible clues to the main idea.

3 Read the entire passage. Look for details about the topic. What central idea do they explain or support?

**STRATEGY: MAKE A DIAGRAM.** State the topic and list the supporting details in a chart. Use the information you record to help you state the main idea.

Think how each detail supports the main idea.

---

**Applying the Skill**

**MAKE YOUR OWN DIAGRAM.** Turn to Chapter 3, page 96. Read “Technology Makes Exploration Possible.” Make a diagram, like the one above, to identify the topic, the most important details, and the main idea of the passage.
Isabella d'Este was a woman who lived during the Renaissance. This historic period produced the ideal, or “universal,” man—one who excelled in many fields. The concept of universal excellence applied almost exclusively to men. Yet a few women managed to succeed in exercising power. Isabella d'Este was one such woman. Born into the ruling family of the city-state of Ferrara, she married the ruler of Mantua, another city-state. Isabella brought many Renaissance artists to her court and acquired an art collection that was famous throughout Europe. She was also skilled in politics. When her husband was taken captive in war, Isabella defended Mantua and won his release.

Henry's Children Rule England

After the death of Henry VIII in 1547, each of his three children eventually ruled. This created religious turmoil. Edward VI became king at age nine and ruled only six years. During his reign, the Protestants gained power. Edward's half-sister Mary followed him to the throne. She was a Catholic who returned the English Church to the rule of the pope. Mary had many Protestants killed. England's next ruler was Anne Boleyn's daughter, Elizabeth. After inheriting the throne in 1558, Elizabeth returned her kingdom to Protestantism. In 1559 Parliament followed Elizabeth's request and set up a national church much like the one under Henry VIII.

Apply the Skill

MAKE YOUR OWN TIME LINE. Skim Chapter 19, Section 4, “Changes in Central and Eastern Europe,” to find out about the spread of democracy in parts of Europe controlled by the former Soviet Union. List the important dates and events. Start with the demonstrations in East Germany in October 1989, include events in Czechoslovakia and Romania, and end with reunification of Germany in October of 1990. Decide on a scale for your time line. Show the important dates below the line and write what happened on each date above the line.
Summary

Trade in West Africa was based on gold from the south and salt from the north. Gold was mined in the forest regions. Two thirds of all the world's gold supply came from West Africa. Salt came from the desert. Arab traders met with African traders at trade centers such as Timbuktu.

MAIN IDEA

Gold and salt were traded in West Africa.

West African Trade

The wealth of the savanna empires was based on trade in two precious commodities, gold and salt. The gold came from a forest region south of the savanna between the Niger and Senegal rivers. Working in utmost secrecy, miners dug gold from shafts as much as 100 feet deep or sifted it from fast-moving streams. Until about 1350, at least two thirds of the world's supply of gold came from West Africa.

Although rich in gold, the savanna and forest areas lacked salt, a material essential to human life. In contrast, the Sahara contained abundant deposits of salt. Arab traders, eager to obtain West African gold, carried salt across the Sahara by camel caravan. After a long journey, they reached the market towns of the savanna. Meanwhile, the other traders brought gold north from the forest region. The two sets of merchants met in trading centers such as Timbuktu. Royal officials made sure that all traders weighed goods fairly and did business according to law.

STRATEGY: FIND AND CLEARLY RESTATE THE MAIN IDEA.

MAIN IDEA

Gold and salt were traded in West Africa.

STRATEGY: WRITE A SUMMARY.

Clarify and Summarize:
Write a summary to clarify your understanding of the main ideas.

Summary

Trade in West Africa was based on gold from the south and salt from the north. Gold was mined in the forest regions. Two thirds of all the world's gold supply came from West Africa. Salt came from the desert. Arab traders met with African traders at trade centers such as Timbuktu.

Applying the Skill

CLARIFY AND WRITE YOUR OWN SUMMARY. Turn to Chapter 14, pages 440–442, and read “A Government of Total Control.” Note the main ideas. Look up any words you don’t recognize. Then write a summary of the section. Condense the section in your own words.
Section 1: Reading Critically
1.4 Identifying Problems and Solutions

IDENTIFYING PROBLEMS means finding and understanding the difficulties faced by a particular group of people at a certain time. Noticing how the people solved their problems is IDENTIFYING SOLUTIONS. Checking further to see how well those solutions worked is identifying outcomes.

Understanding the Skill

STRATEGY: LOOK FOR PROBLEMS AND SOLUTIONS. The passage below summarizes some economic problems facing Latin American nations during the early 20th century.

Land Reform In Latin America

In Latin America, concentration of productive land in the hands of a few created extremes of wealth and poverty. Poor peasants had no choice but to work large estates owned by a few wealthy families. Landlords had no reason to invest in expensive farm machinery when labor was so cheap.

Farming methods were inefficient and economic development was slow.

As Latin American nations began to modernize in the 20th century, land ownership became a political issue. In response, a handful of countries began land reform programs. These programs divided large estates into smaller plots. Small plots of land were in turn distributed to farm families or granted to villages for communal farming. However, just turning over the land to the landless was not enough. Peasant farmers needed instruction, seeds, equipment, and credit. If the land and the people were to be productive, governments would have to provide assistance to the peasants.

STRATEGY: MAKE A CHART.

Summarize the problems and solutions in a chart. Identify the problem or problems and the steps taken to solve them. Look for the short- and long-term effects of the solutions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problems</th>
<th>Solutions</th>
<th>Outcomes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A few wealthy people owned most</td>
<td>Land reform programs</td>
<td>Peasants were given land, and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of the land.</td>
<td>divided large estates into</td>
<td>communal farms were set up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>smaller plots.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inefficient farming resulted</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in slow economic development.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peasants lacked equipment,</td>
<td>Governments would have to</td>
<td>Not stated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resources, skills.</td>
<td>assist with loans and instruction.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Applying the Skill

MAKE YOUR OWN CHART. Turn to Chapter 15 and read “Postwar Europe” on page 470. Make a chart that lists the problems Germany faced after World War I. List the solutions that were tried and whatever outcomes are mentioned.
For most of the Heian period, the rich Fujiwara family held the real power in Japan. Members of this family held many influential posts. By about the middle of the 11th century, the power of the central government and the Fujiwaras began to slip. This was due in part to court families’ greater interest in luxury and artistic pursuits than in governing.

Since the central government was weak, large landowners living away from the capital set up private armies. As a result, the countryside became lawless and dangerous. Armed soldiers on horseback preyed on farmers and travelers, while pirates took control of the seas. For safety, farmers and small landowners traded parts of their land to strong warlords in exchange for protection. Because the lords had more land, the lords gained more power. This marked the beginning of a feudal system of localized rule like that of ancient China and medieval Europe.

Feudalism Comes to Japan

1. Ruling families had little interest in governing.
2. Weak central government was unable to control the land.
3. Countryside became dangerous.
4. Farmers traded land for safety under warlords.
5. Landowners set up private armies.

For safety, farmers and small landowners traded parts of their land to strong warlords in exchange for protection. Because the lords had more land, the lords gained more power. This marked the beginning of a feudal system of localized rule like that of ancient China and medieval Europe.

### Applying the Skill

**MAKE YOUR OWN CAUSE-AND-EFFECT DIAGRAM.** Turn to Chapter 12, pages 389–391. Read “Juárez and La Reforma” and make notes about the causes and effects of Juárez’s reform movement in Mexico. Make a diagram, like the one shown above, to summarize the information you find.
1.6 Comparing and Contrasting

Historians compare and contrast events, personalities, ideas, behaviors, beliefs, and institutions in order to understand them thoroughly. **Comparing** involves finding both similarities and differences between two or more things. **Contrasting** means examining only the differences between them.

**Understanding the Skill**

**STRATEGY: LOOK FOR SIMILARITIES AND DIFFERENCES.** The following passage describes life in the ancient Greek city-states of Sparta and Athens. The Venn diagram below shows some of the similarities and differences between the two city-states.

1. **Compare:** Look for features that two subjects have in common. Here you learn that both Athens and Sparta started out as farming communities.

2. **Compare:** Look for clue words indicating that two things are alike. Clue words include all, both, like, as, likewise, and similarly.

3. **Contrast:** Look for clue words that show how two things differ. Clue words include unlike, by contrast, however, except, different, and on the other hand.

4. **Contrast:** Look for ways in which two things are different. Here you learn that Athens and Sparta had different values.

**STRATEGY: MAKE A VENN DIAGRAM.**

Compare and Contrast: Summarize similarities and differences in a Venn diagram. In the overlapping area, list characteristics shared by both subjects. Then, in one oval list the characteristics of one subject not shared by the other. In the other oval, list unshared characteristics of the second subject.

**Applying the Skill**

**MAKE YOUR OWN VENN DIAGRAM.** Turn to Chapter 4, pages 130–131, and read the section called “Native Americans Respond.” Make a Venn diagram comparing and contrasting Dutch and English colonists’ relations with Native Americans.
**Section 1: Reading Critically**

### 1.7 Distinguishing Fact from Opinion

**FACTS** are events, dates, statistics, or statements that can be proved to be true. Facts can be checked for accuracy. **OPINIONS** are judgments, beliefs, and feelings of the writer or speaker.

**Understanding the Skill**

**STRATEGY: FIND CLUES IN THE TEXT.** The following excerpt tells about the uprising of Jews in the Warsaw ghetto in 1943. The chart summarizes the facts and opinions.

| Facts: Look for specific names, dates, statistics, and statements that can be proved. The first two paragraphs provide a factual account of the event. |

| Opinion: Look for assertions, claims, hypotheses, and judgments. Here Goebbels expresses his opinion of the uprising and of the Jews. |

| Opinion: Look for judgment words that the writer uses to describe the people and events. Judgment words are often adjectives that are used to arouse a reader’s emotions. |

#### The Warsaw Ghetto Uprising

With orders from Himmler to crush the Jews, the Nazis attacked on April 19, 1943, at the start of the holiday of Passover. Two thousand armed SS troops entered the ghetto, marching with tanks, rifles, machine guns, and trailers full of ammunition. The Jewish fighters were in position—in bunkers, in windows, on rooftops. They had rifles and handguns, hand grenades and bombs that they had made. And they let fly.

Unbelievably, the Jews won the battle that day. The Germans were forced to retreat. On May 1, Goebbels [Nazi propaganda minister] wrote in his diary: “Of course this jest will probably not last long.” He added a complaint. “But it shows what one can expect of the Jews if they have guns.”

Goebbels’ tone was mocking. But his forecast was inevitable—and correct. Goebbels did not record in his diary, when the uprising was over, that the starving Jews of the ghetto, with their pathetic supply of arms, had held out against the German army for forty days, longer than Poland or France had held out.


---

**STRATEGY: MAKE A CHART.**

Divide facts and opinions in a chart. Summarize and separate the facts from the opinions expressed in a passage.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FACTS</th>
<th>OPINIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>On April 19, 1943, 2,000 armed SS troops attacked the Warsaw ghetto. Jewish fighters held out for 40 days.</td>
<td>Goebbels: The uprising was a jest, but showed the danger of letting Jews get hold of guns.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Author: It is difficult to believe that Warsaw Jews with their pathetic supply of arms were able to defeat the powerful Nazis.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Applying the Skill**

**MAKE YOUR OWN CHART.** Turn to Chapter 10, page 335. Find the Primary Source from the Seneca Falls Convention. Make a chart in which you summarize the facts in your own words, and list the opinions and judgments stated. Look carefully at the language used in order to separate one from the other.
2.1 Categorizing

CATEGORIZING means organizing similar kinds of information into groups. Historians categorize information to help them identify and understand historical patterns.

Understanding the Skill

STRATEGY: DECIDE WHAT INFORMATION NEEDS TO BE CATEGORIZED. The following passage describes India’s Taj Mahal, a memorial built by a Mughal ruler. As you read, look for facts and details that are closely related. Then choose appropriate categories.

Building the Taj Mahal

Some 20,000 workers labored for 22 years to build the famous tomb. It is made of white marble brought from 250 miles away. The minaret towers are about 130 feet high. The building itself is 186 feet square.

The design of the building is a blend of Hindu and Muslim styles. The pointed arches are of Muslim design, and the perforated marble windows and doors are typical of a style found in Hindu temples.

The inside of the building is a glittering garden thousands of carved marble flowers inlaid with tiny precious stones. One tiny flower, one inch square, had 60 different inlays.

Apply the Skill

MAKE YOUR OWN CHART. Turn to Chapter 6, page 203. Read “New Artistic Styles.” Decide what categories you will use to organize the information. Then make a chart, like the one above, that organizes the information in the passage into the categories you have chosen.
2.2 Making Inferences

Inferences are ideas and meanings not stated in the material. **MAKING INFERENCES** means reading between the lines to extend the information provided. Your inferences are based on careful study of what is stated in the passage as well as your own common sense and previous knowledge.

**Understanding the Skill**

**STRATEGY: DEVELOP INFERENCE FROM THE FACTS.** This passage describes the Nok culture of West Africa. Following the passage is a diagram that organizes the facts and ideas that lead to inferences.

1. **Read the stated facts and ideas.**
2. **Use your knowledge, logic, and common sense to draw conclusions.** You could infer from these statements that the Nok were a settled people with advanced technology and a rich culture.
3. **Consider what you already know that could apply.** Your knowledge of history might lead you to infer the kinds of improvements in life brought about by better farming tools.
4. **Recognize inferences that are already made.** Phrases like “the evidence suggests” or “historians believe” indicate inferences and conclusions experts have made from historical records.

**STRATEGY: MAKE A CHART.**

Summarize the facts and inferences you make in a chart.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stated Facts and Ideas</th>
<th>Inferences</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• iron farming tools</td>
<td>iron tools improved agriculture and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• iron harder than wood</td>
<td>contributed to cultural development</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• tools improved life</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Nok artifacts found in 300-mile radius</td>
<td>Nok culture spread across this area</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• heads carved in great artistic detail</td>
<td>Nok were skilled potters and sculptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• sculptures included elephant heads</td>
<td>elephants played a role in people’s lives</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Applying the Skill**

**MAKE YOUR OWN CHART.** Read the poem by Vittoria Colonna in Chapter 1, page 43. Using a chart like the one above, make inferences from the poem about its author, its subject, and the culture it comes from.
# Section 2: Higher-Order Critical Thinking

## 2.3 Drawing Conclusions

**DRAWING CONCLUSIONS** means analyzing what you have read and forming an opinion about its meaning. To draw conclusions, you look closely at the facts, combine them with inferences you make, and then use your own common sense and experience to decide what the facts mean.

### Understanding the Skill

**STRATEGY: COMBINE INFORMATION TO DRAW CONCLUSIONS.** The passage below presents information about the reunification of East and West Germany in 1990. The diagram that follows shows how to organize the information to draw conclusions.

1. **Read carefully to understand all the facts.** Fact: Reunification brought social and political freedoms to East Germans.
2. **Read between the lines to make inferences.** Inference: After a market economy was introduced, many industries in eastern Germany failed, which put people out of work.
3. **Use the facts to make an inference.** Inference: Reunification put a strain on government resources.
4. **Ask questions of the material.** What are the long-term economic prospects for eastern Germany? Conclusion: Although it faced challenges, it seemed to have a greater chance for success than other former Communist countries.

---

### Germany is Reunified

On October 3, 1990, Germany once again became a single nation. After more than 40 years of Communist rule, most East Germans celebrated their new political freedoms. Families that had been separated for years could now visit whenever they chose.

Economically, the newly united Germany faced serious problems. More than 40 years of Communist rule had left East Germany in ruins. Its transportation and telephone systems had not been modernized since World War II. State-run industries in East Germany had to be turned over to private control and operate under free-market rules. However, many produced shoddy goods that could not compete in the global market.

Rebuilding eastern Germany’s bankrupt economy was going to be a difficult, costly process. Some experts estimated the price tag for reunification could reach $200 billion. In the short-term, the government had to provide unemployment benefits to some 1.4 million workers from the east who found themselves out of work.

In spite of these problems, Germans had reasons to be optimistic. Unlike other Eastern European countries, who had to transform their Communist economies by their own means, East Germany had the help of a strong West Germany. Many Germans may have shared the outlook expressed by one worker: “Maybe things won’t be rosy at first, but the future will be better.”

### STRATEGY: MAKE A DIAGRAM.

Summarize the facts, inferences, and your conclusion in a diagram.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Facts</strong></th>
<th><strong>Inferences</strong></th>
<th><strong>Conclusion About Passage</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>East Germans gained freedoms.</td>
<td>East Germans welcomed the end of Communist rule.</td>
<td>Although eastern Germany was in bad shape at the time of reunification, it had the advantage of the strength of western Germany as it made the transition to democracy and capitalism.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transportation and telephone systems were outmoded.</td>
<td>Rebuilding took time.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>State-run industries produced shoddy goods.</td>
<td>Industries couldn't compete in free-market economy.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unemployment skyrocketed.</td>
<td>Reunification put a great financial burden on Germany.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cost for reunification could be $200 billion.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### Applying the Skill

**MAKE A DIAGRAM.** Look at Chapter 5, Section 1, pages 158–159, on the decline of the Spanish empire. As you read, draw conclusions based on the facts. Use the diagram above as a model for organizing facts, inferences, and conclusions about the passage.
2.4 Developing Historical Perspective

DEVELOPING HISTORICAL PERSPECTIVE means understanding events and people in the context of their times. It means not judging the past by current values, but by taking into account the beliefs of the time.

Understanding the Skill

STRATEGY: LOOK FOR VALUES OF THE PAST. The following passage was written by Bartolomé de Las Casas, a Spanish missionary who defended the rights of Native Americans. It challenges an argument presented by a scholar named Sepúlveda, who held that the Spaniards had the right to enslave the Native Americans. Following the passage is a chart that summarizes the information from a historical perspective.

Identify the historical figure, the occasion, and the date.

Look for clues to the attitudes, customs, and values of people living at the time. As a Spanish missionary, Las Casas assumes that Europeans are more civilized than Native Americans and that Native Americans need to be converted to Catholicism.

Explain how people’s actions and words reflected the attitudes, values, and passions of the era. Las Casas challenges prejudices about Native Americans that were widely held in Europe. His language emphasizes a favorable comparison between Native American and European societies.

Notice words, phrases, and settings that reflect the period. Las Casas speaks from a time when Europeans looked to classical Greece as a benchmark for civilization.

STRATEGY: WRITE A SUMMARY.

Use historical perspective to understand Las Casas’s attitudes. In a chart, list key words, phrases, and details from the passage. In a short paragraph, summarize the basic values and attitudes of Las Casas.

Applying the Skill

WRITE YOUR OWN SUMMARY. Turn to Chapter 2, page 75, and read the excerpt from the Life of Mehmed the Conqueror. Read the passage using historical historical perspective. Then summarize your ideas in a chart like the one above.
Section 2: Higher-Order Critical Thinking

2.5 Formulating Historical Questions

Formulating Historical Questions is important as you examine primary sources—firsthand accounts, documents, letters, and other records of the past. As you analyze a source, ask questions about what it means and why it is significant. Then, when you are doing research, write questions that you want your research to answer. This step will help to guide your research and organize the information you collect.

Understanding the Skill

Strategy: Question What You Read. The Muslim scholar Ibn Battuta published an account of his journeys in Asia and Africa in the 1300s. The following passage is part of his description of China. After the passage is a web diagram that organizes historical questions about it.

1. Ask about the historical record itself. Who produced it? When was it produced?

2. Ask about the facts presented. Who were the main people? What did they do? What were they like?

3. Ask about the person who created the record. What judgments or opinions does the author express?

4. Ask about the significance of the record. How would you interpret the information presented? How does it fit in with the history of this time and place? What more do you need to know to answer these questions?

Strategic: Make a Web Diagram.

Investigate a topic in more depth by asking questions. Ask a large question and then ask smaller questions that explore and develop from the larger question.

Applying the Skill

Make Your Own Web Diagram. Turn to the quotation by Olaudah Equiano in Chapter 4, page 135. Use a web diagram to write historical questions about the passage.
Section 2: Higher-Order Critical Thinking

2.6 Making Predictions

Making Predictions means projecting the outcome of a situation that leaders or groups face or have faced in the past. Historians use their knowledge of past events and the decisions that led up to them to predict the outcome of current situations. Examining decisions and their alternatives will help you understand how events in the past shaped the future.

Understanding the Skill

Strategy: Identify Decisions. The following passage describes relations between Cuba and the United States following Fidel Castro’s successful attempt to overthrow former Cuban dictator Fulgencio Batista. The chart lists decisions that affected U.S./Cuban relations, along with alternative decisions and predictions of their possible outcomes.

To help you identify decisions, look for words such as decide, decision, and chose.

Notice how one political decision often leads to another.

Notice both positive and negative decisions.

Strategy: Make a Chart.

Use a chart to record decisions.

Suggest alternative decisions.

Predict a possible outcome for each alternative decision.

U.S./Cuban Relations under Castro

During the 1950s, Cuban dictator Fidel Castro chose to nationalize the Cuban economy, which resulted in the takeover of U.S.-owned sugar mills and refineries. U.S. President Eisenhower responded by ordering an embargo on all trade with Cuba. As relations between the two countries deteriorated, Cuba became more dependent on the USSR for economic and military aid. In 1960, the CIA trained anti-Castro Cuban exiles to invade Cuba. Although they landed at Cuba’s Bay of Pigs, the United States decided not to provide them with air support. Castro’s forces defeated the exiles, which humiliated the United States.

Strategy: Make a Chart

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Decisions</th>
<th>Alternative Decisions</th>
<th>Prediction of Outcome</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Castro nationalized Cuban economy</td>
<td>Castro did not nationalize Cuban economy</td>
<td>There was no United States embargo of trade with Cuba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The United States placed an embargo on trade with Cuba</td>
<td>The United States continued to trade with Cuba</td>
<td>Cuba continued to depend on the United States economically</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CIA trained Cuban exiles, who invaded Cuba</td>
<td>The CIA did not train exiles to invade Cuba</td>
<td>There was no invasion of Cuba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The United States did not provide air support for the invasion</td>
<td>The United States provided air support to the invaders</td>
<td>The United States successfully invaded Cuba</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Applying the Skill

Make a chart like the one above. Turn to Chapter 5, page 181, and read the first four paragraphs of the section “English Civil War.” Identify three decisions of England’s King Charles I. Record them on your chart, along with an alternative decision for each. Then predict a possible outcome for each alternative decision.
Section 2: Higher-Order Critical Thinking

2.7 Hypothesizing

HYPOTHEZING means developing a possible explanation for historical events. A hypothesis is an educated guess about what happened in the past or a prediction about what might happen in the future. A hypothesis takes available information, links it to previous experience and knowledge, and comes up with a possible explanation, conclusion, or prediction.

Understanding the Skill

STRATEGY: FIND CLUES IN THE READING. In studying the Indus Valley civilization, historians do not yet know exactly what caused that culture to decline. They have, however, developed hypotheses about what happened to it. Read this passage and look at the steps that are shown for building a hypothesis. Following the passage is a chart that organizes the information.

1. Identify the event, pattern, or trend you want to explain.

2. Determine the facts you have about the situation. These facts support various hypotheses about what happened to the Indus Valley civilization.

3. Develop a hypothesis that might explain the event. Historians hypothesize that a combination of ecological change and sudden catastrophe caused the Indus Valley civilization to collapse.

4. Determine what additional information you need to test the hypothesis. You might refer to a book about India, for example, to learn more about the impact of the Aryan invasions.

Mysterious End to Indus Valley Culture

1. Around 1750 B.C., the quality of building in the Indus Valley cities declined. Gradually, the great cities fell into decay. What happened? Some historians think that the Indus River changed course, as it tended to do, so that its floods no longer fertilized the fields near the cities. Other scholars suggest that people wore out the valley’s land. They overgrazed it, overfarmed it, and overcut its trees, brush, and grass.

   As the Indus Valley civilization neared its end, around 1500 B.C., a sudden catastrophe may have had a hand in the cities’ downfall. Archaeologists have found a half-dozen groups of skeletons in the ruins of Mohenjo-Daro, seemingly never buried. Their presence suggests that the city, already weakened by its slow decline, may have been abandoned after a natural disaster or a devastating attack from human enemies. The Aryans, a nomadic people from north of the Hindu Kush mountains, swept into the Indus Valley at about this time. Whether they caused the collapse of the Indus Valley civilization or followed in its wake is not known.

STRATEGY: MAKE A CHART.

Use a chart to summarize your hypothesis about events. Write down your hypothesis and the facts that support it. Then you can see what additional information you need to help prove or disprove it.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hypothesis</th>
<th>Facts that support the hypothesis</th>
<th>Additional information needed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A combination of ecological change and sudden catastrophe caused the Indus Valley civilization to collapse</td>
<td>• Building quality declined</td>
<td>• What was Indus Valley culture like?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Indus River tended to change course</td>
<td>• What were the geographical characteristics of the region?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Unburied skeletons were found at Mohenjo-Daro</td>
<td>• How did overfarming tend to affect the environment?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Aryan invasions occurred around same time</td>
<td>• What factors affected the decline of other ancient civilizations?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Applying the Skill

MAKE YOUR OWN CHART. Turn to Chapter 3, page 111, and read the Primary Source. Predict what impact the introduction of firearms might have had on Japan. Then read the surrounding text material. List facts that support your hypothesis and what additional information you might gather to help prove or disprove it.
2.8 Analyzing Motives

ANALYZING MOTIVES means examining the reasons why a person, group, or government takes a particular action. To understand those reasons, consider the needs, emotions, prior experiences, and goals of the person or group.

Understanding the Skill

STRATEGY: LOOK FOR REASONS WHY. On June 28, 1914, Serb terrorists assassinated Austria-Hungary’s Archduke Franz Ferdinand and his wife when they visited Sarajevo, the capital of Bosnia. In the following passage, Borijove Jevtic, a Serb terrorist, explains why the assassination occurred. Before this passage, he explains that the terrorists had received a telegram stating that the Archduke would be visiting Sarajevo on June 28. The diagram that follows summarizes the motives of the terrorists for murdering the Archduke.

Look for motives based on basic needs and human emotions. Needs include food, shelter, safety, freedom. Emotions include fear, anger, pride, desire for revenge, and patriotism, for example.

Look for motives based on past events or inspiring individuals.

Notice both positive and negative motives.

The Assassination of the Archduke

How dared Franz Ferdinand, not only the representative of the oppressor but in his own person an arrogant tyrant, enter Sarajevo on that day? Such an entry was a studied insult.

28 June is a date engraved deeply in the heart of every Serb, so that the day has a name of its own. It is called the vidovdan. It is the day on which the old Serbian kingdom was conquered by the Turks at the battle of Amsefelde in 1389. It is also the day on which in the second Balkan War the Serbian arms took glorious revenge on the Turk for his old victory and for the years of enslavement.

That was no day for Franz Ferdinand, the new oppressor, to venture to the very doors of Serbia for a display of the force of arms which kept us beneath his heel.

Our decision was taken almost immediately. Death to the tyrant!

STRATEGY: MAKE A DIAGRAM.

Make a diagram that summarizes motives and actions. List the important action in the middle of the diagram. Then list motives in different categories around the action.

Applying the Skill

MAKE YOUR OWN DIAGRAM. Turn to Chapter 11, Section 1, “The Scramble for Africa.” Read the section and look for motives of European nations in acquiring lands in other parts of the world. Make a diagram, like the one above, showing the European nations’ motives for taking the land.
2.9 Analyzing Issues

An issue is a matter of public concern or debate. Issues in history are usually economic, social, political, or moral. Historical issues are often more complicated than they first appear. **ANALYZING AN ISSUE** means taking a controversy apart to find and describe the different points of view about the issue.

**Understanding the Skill**

**STRATEGY: LOOK FOR DIFFERENT SIDES OF THE ISSUE.** The following passage describes working conditions in English factories in the early 1800s. The cluster diagram that follows the passage helps you to analyze the issue of child labor.

**STEPS TO FOLLOW**

1. Look for a central problem with its causes and effects.
2. Look for facts and statistics. Factual information helps you understand the issue and evaluate the different sides or arguments.
3. Look for different sides to the issue. You need to consider all sides of an issue before deciding your position.

**Example:**

Children at Work

1. Child labor was one of the most serious problems of the early Industrial Revolution. Children as young as 6 years worked exhausting jobs in factories and mines. Because wages were very low, many families in cities could not survive unless all their members, including children, worked.

2. In most factories, regular work hours were 6 in the morning to 6 in the evening, often with two “over-hours” until 8. It was common for 40 or more children to work together in one room—a room with little light or air. Those who lagged behind in their work were often beaten. Because safety was a low concern for many factory owners, accidents were common.

3. In 1831, Parliament set up a committee to investigate abuses of child labor. Medical experts reported that long hours of factory work caused young children to become crippled or stunted in their growth. They recommended that children younger than age 14 should work no more than 8 hours.

**Facts:**
- Children as young as 6 years worked.
- Working hours were typically 12 hours a day, often with 2 hours overtime.
- Working conditions were dangerous, unhealthy, and inhumane.
- Factory work caused deformities in young children.

**In favor of child labor:**
- **Who:** factory owners, some parents
- **Reasons:** Shorter hours would reduce profits. Children’s income essential for families.

**Against child labor:**
- **Who:** medical examiners
- **Reasons:** Children working in factories suffered permanent deformities.

**Applying the Skill**

**MAKE YOUR OWN CLUSTER DIAGRAM.** Chapter 18, page 564, describes the partition of India. Make a cluster diagram to analyze the issue and the positions of the people involved.
2.10 Analyzing Bias

**BIAS** is a prejudiced point of view. Historical accounts that are biased tend to be one-sided and reflect the personal prejudices of the historian.

**Understanding the Skill**

**STRATEGY: THINK ABOUT THE WRITER AS YOU READ.** The European explorer Amerigo Vespucci reached the coast of Brazil in 1502, on his second voyage to the Americas. Below are his impressions of the people he met.

---

**Amerigo Vespucci Reports on the People of Brazil**

For twenty-seven days I ate and slept among them, and what I learned about them is as follows.

Having no laws and no religious faith, they live according to nature. **They understand nothing of the immortality of the soul.** There is no possession of private property among them, for everything is in common. They have no boundaries of kingdom or province. They have no king, nor do they obey anyone. Each one is his own master. **There is no administration of justice, which is unnecessary to them, because in their code no one rules...**

They are also **a warlike people and very cruel to their own kind...** That which made me... astonished at their wars and cruelty was that I could not understand from them why they made war upon each other, considering that they held no private property or sovereignty of empire and kingdoms and **did not know any such thing as lust for possession, that is pillaging or a desire to rule, which appear to me to be the causes of wars and every disorderly act.** When we requested them to state the cause, they did not know how to give any other cause than that this curse upon them began in ancient times and they sought to avenge the deaths of their forefathers.

---

**Identify the author and information about him or her.** Does the author belong to a special-interest group, social class, political party, or movement that might promote a one-sided or slanted viewpoint on the subject?

**Search for clues.** Are there words, phrases, statements, or images that might convey a positive or negative slant? What might these clues reveal about the author’s bias?

**Examine the evidence.** Is the information that the author presents consistent with other accounts? Is the behavior described consistent with human nature as you have observed it?

---

**STRATEGY: MAKE A CHART.**

Make a chart of your analysis. For each of the heads listed on the left side of the chart, summarize information presented in the passage.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vespucci’s impressions of the native peoples of Brazil</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>author, date</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>occasion</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>tone</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>bias</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Applying the Skill**

**MAKE YOUR OWN CHART.** Look at the quotation by the Qing emperor Kangxi in the Primary Source in Chapter 3, page 115. Summarize the underlying assumptions and biases using a chart like the one shown.
2.11 Evaluating Decisions and Courses of Action

EVALUATING DECISIONS means making judgments about the decisions that historical figures made. Historians evaluate decisions on the basis of their moral implications and their costs and benefits from different points of view.

EVALUATING VARIOUS COURSES OF ACTION means carefully judging the choices that historical figures had to make. By doing this, you can better understand why they made some of the decisions they did.

Understanding the Skill

STRATEGY: LOOK FOR CHOICES AND REASONS. The following passage describes the decisions U.S. President John Kennedy had to make when he learned of Soviet missile bases in Cuba. As you read it, think of the alternative responses he could have made at each turn of events. Following the passage is a chart that organizes information about the Cuban missile crisis.

1 Look at decisions made by individuals or by groups. Notice the decisions Kennedy made in response to Soviet actions.
2 Look at the outcome of the decisions.
3 Analyze a decision in terms of the choices that were possible. Both Kennedy and Khrushchev faced the same choice. Either could carry out the threat, or either could back down quietly and negotiate.

The Cuban Missile Crisis

During the summer of 1962, the flow of Soviet weapons into Cuba—including nuclear missiles—greatly increased. President Kennedy responded cautiously at first, issuing a warning that the United States would not tolerate the presence of offensive nuclear weapons in Cuba. Then, on October 16, photographs taken by American U-2 planes showed the president that the Soviets were secretly building missile bases on Cuba. Some of the missiles, armed and ready to fire, could reach U.S. cities in minutes.

On the evening of October 22, the president made public the evidence of missiles and stated his ultimatum: any missile attack from Cuba would trigger an all-out attack on the Soviet Union. Soviet ships continued to head toward the island, while the U.S. navy prepared to stop them and U.S. invasion troops massed in Florida. To avoid confrontation, the Soviet ships suddenly halted. Soviet Premier Nikita Khrushchev offered to remove the missiles from Cuba in exchange for a pledge not to invade the island. Kennedy agreed, and the crisis ended.

Some people criticized Kennedy for practicing brinkmanship, when private talks might have resolved the crisis without the threat of nuclear war. Others believed he had been too soft and had passed up a chance to invade Cuba and oust its Communist leader, Fidel Castro.

STRATEGY: MAKE A CHART.

Make a simple chart of your analysis. The problem was that Soviet nuclear missiles were being shipped to Cuba. The decision to be made was how the United States should respond.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Kennedy’s Choices</th>
<th>Pros</th>
<th>Cons</th>
<th>My Evaluation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Publicly confront Khrushchev with</td>
<td>Show Khrushchev and world the power and</td>
<td>Nuclear war could occur.</td>
<td>In your opinion, which was the better choice?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>navy and prepare for war.</td>
<td>strong will of the U.S.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Why?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Say nothing to U.S. public and</td>
<td>Avoid frightening U.S. citizens and avoid</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>negotiate quietly</td>
<td>threat of nuclear war</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Applying the Skill

MAKE A CHART. Chapter 15, page 485, describes the decisions British and French leaders made when Hitler took over the Sudetenland in Czechoslovakia just before World War II. Make a chart, like the one shown, to summarize the pros and cons of their choice of appeasement and evaluate their decision yourself.
2.12 Forming and Supporting Opinions

Historians do more than reconstruct facts about the past. They also **form opinions** about the information they encounter. Historians form opinions as they interpret the past and judge the significance of historical events and people. They **support their opinions** with logical thinking, facts, examples, quotes, and references to events.

**Understanding the Skill**

**Strategy: Find Arguments to Support Your Opinion.** In the following passage, journalist Paul Gray summarizes differing opinions about the significance and impact of Columbus’s voyages. As you read, develop your own opinion about the issue.

1. Decide what you think about a subject after reading all the information available to you. After reading this passage, you might decide that Columbus’s legacy was primarily one of genocide, cruelty, and slavery. On the other hand, you might believe that, despite the negatives, his voyages produced many long-term benefits.

2. Consider the opinions and interpretations of historians and other experts. Weigh their arguments as you form your own opinion.

3. Support your opinion with facts, quotes, and examples, including references to similar events from other historical eras.

**How Should History View the Legacy of Columbus?**

In one version of the story, Columbus and the Europeans who followed him brought civilization to two immense, sparsely populated continents, in the process fundamentally enriching and altering the Old World from which they had themselves come.

Among other things, Columbus’s journey was the first step in a long process that eventually produced the United States of America. A daring experiment in democracy that in turn became a symbol and a haven of individual liberty for people throughout the world. But the revolution that began with his voyages was far greater than that. It altered science, geography, philosophy, agriculture, law, religion, ethics, government—the sum, in other words, of what passed at the time as Western culture.

Increasingly, however, there is a counterchorus, an opposing rendition of the same events that deems Columbus’s first footfall in the New World to be fatal to the world he invaded, and even to the rest of the globe. The indigenous peoples and their cultures were doomed by European arrogance, brutality, and infectious diseases. Columbus’s gift was slavery to those who greeted him; his arrival set in motion the ruthless destruction, continuing at this very moment, of the natural world he entered. Genocide, ecocide, exploitation… are deemed to be a form of Eurocentric theft of history from [the Native Americans].

**Strategy: Make a Chart.**

Summarize your opinion and supporting information in a chart. Write an opinion and then list facts, examples, interpretations, or other information that support it.

**Applying the Skill**

**Make Your Own Chart.** Look at the Different Perspectives on Economics and the Environment in Chapter 20, page 647. Read the selections and form your own opinion about the concept of sustainable development. Summarize your supporting data in a chart like the one shown above.


Section 2: Higher-Order Critical Thinking

2.13 Synthesizing

SYNTHESIZING is the skill historians use in developing interpretations of the past. Like detective work, synthesizing involves putting together clues, information, and ideas to form an overall picture of a historical event. A synthesis is often stated as a generalization, or broad summary statement.

Understanding the Skill

STRATEGY: BUILD AN INTERPRETATION AS YOU READ. The passage below describes the first settlement of the Americas. The highlighting indicates the different kinds of information that lead to a synthesis—an overall picture of Native American life.

1. Read carefully to understand the facts. Facts such as these enable you to base your interpretations on physical evidence.
2. Look for explanations that link the facts together. This statement is based on the evidence provided by baskets, bows and arrows, and nets, which are mentioned in the sentences that follow.
3. Consider what you already know that could apply. Your general knowledge will probably lead you to accept this statement as reasonable.
4. Bring together the information you have about a subject. This interpretation brings together different kinds of information to arrive at a new understanding of the subject.

STRATEGY: MAKE A CLUSTER DIAGRAM.

Summarize your synthesis in a cluster diagram. Use a cluster diagram to organize the facts, opinions, examples, and interpretations that you have brought together to form a synthesis.

Applying the Skill

MAKE YOUR OWN CLUSTER DIAGRAM. In Chapter 1 on pages 54–55, the beginnings of the Protestant Reformation are discussed. Read the passage and look for information to support a synthesis about its fundamental causes. Summarize your synthesis in a cluster diagram.

The First Americans

1. From the discovery of chiseled arrowheads and charred bones at ancient sites, it appears that the earliest Americans lived as big game hunters. The woolly mammoth, their largest prey, provided them with food, clothing, and bones for constructing tools and shelters. 2. People gradually shifted to hunting small game and gathering available plants. They created baskets to collect nuts, wild rice, chokeberries, gooseberries, and currants. Later they invented bows and arrows to hunt small game such as jackrabbits and deer. They wove nets to fish the streams and lakes.

Between 10,000 and 15,000 years ago, a revolution took place in what is now central Mexico. People began to raise plants as food. Maize may have been the first domesticated plant, with pumpkins, peppers, beans, and potatoes following. Agriculture spread to other regions.

3. The rise of agriculture brought about tremendous changes to the Americas. Agriculture made it possible for people to remain in one place. It also enabled them to accumulate and store surplus food. As their surplus increased, people had the time to develop skills and more complex ideas about the world. 4. From this agricultural base rose larger, more stable societies and increasingly complex societies.

- earliest Americans big game hunters
- agriculture allowed people to settle, develop new skills and ideas
- Synthesis: The shift from hunting and gathering to agriculture allowed for the development of more complex societies in the Americas.
- shifted to hunting/gathering
- agriculture began in Mexico
- agriculture spread
3.1 Analyzing Primary and Secondary Sources

**PRIMARY SOURCES** are written or created by people who lived during a historical event. The writers might have been participants or observers. Primary sources include letters, diaries, journals, speeches, newspaper articles, magazine articles, eyewitness accounts, and autobiographies.

**SECONDARY SOURCES** are derived from primary sources by people who were not present at the original event. They are written after the event. They often combine information from a number of different accounts. Secondary sources include history books, historical essays, and biographies.

**Understanding the Skill**

**STRATEGY: EVALUATE THE INFORMATION IN EACH TYPE OF SOURCE.** This passage describes political reforms made by Pericles, who led Athens from 461 to 429 B.C. It is mainly a secondary source, but it includes a primary source in the form of a speech.

**Primary Source:**

The introduction of direct democracy was an important legacy of Periclean Athens. Few other city-states practiced this style of government. In Athens, male citizens who served in the assembly established all the important policies that affected the polis. In a famous “Funeral Oration” for soldiers killed in the Peloponnesian War, Pericles expressed his great pride in Athenian democracy:

> Our constitution is called a democracy because power is in the hands not of a minority but of the whole people. When it is a question of settling private disputes, everyone is equal before the law; when it is a question of putting one person before another in positions of public responsibility, what counts is not membership of a particular class, but the actual ability which the man possesses. No one, as long as he has it in him to be of service to the state, is kept in political obscurity because of poverty.

**Secondary Source: Look for information collected from several sources.** Here the writer presents an overall picture of the reforms made by Pericles and the reasons for them.

**Secondary Source: Look for analysis and interpretation.** A secondary source provides details and perspective that are missing in a primary source. It also provides context for the primary source.

**Primary Source: Identify the author and evaluate his or her credentials.** How is the speaker connected to the event? Here, this speaker is Pericles himself.

**Primary Source: Analyze the source using historical perspective.** Read the source for factual information while also noting the speaker’s opinions, biases, assumptions, and point of view.

**STRATEGY: MAKE A CHART.**

Summarize information from primary and secondary sources on a chart.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primary Source</th>
<th>Secondary Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Author:</strong> Pericles</td>
<td><strong>Author:</strong> world history textbook</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Qualifications:</strong> main figure in the events described</td>
<td><strong>Qualifications:</strong> had access to multiple accounts of event</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Information:</strong> describes his view of Athenian democracy—power in the hands of “the whole people”</td>
<td><strong>Information:</strong> puts events in historical perspective—Athens one of most democratic governments in history but limited rights to citizens</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Applying the Skill**

**MAKE YOUR OWN CHART.** Read the passage “Mehmed II Conquers Constantinople” in Chapter 2, pages 74–75, which includes a quote from the Greek historian Kritovoulos. Make a chart in which you summarize information from the primary and secondary sources.
3.2 Visual, Audio, and Multimedia Sources

In addition to written accounts, historians use many kinds of **VISUAL SOURCES**. These include paintings, photographs, political cartoons, and advertisements. Visual sources are rich with historical details and sometimes reflect the mood and trends of an era better than words can.

Spoken language has always been a primary means of passing on human history. **AUDIO SOURCES**, such as recorded speeches, interviews, press conferences, and radio programs, continue the oral tradition today.

Movies, CD-ROMs, television, and computer software are the newest kind of historical sources, called **MULTIMEDIA SOURCES**.

Understanding the Skill

**STRATEGY: EXAMINE THE SOURCE CAREFULLY.** Below are two portraits from the late 1700s, one of Marie Antoinette, the queen of France, and one of a woman who sells vegetables at the market. The chart that follows summarizes historical information gained from interpreting and comparing the two paintings.

1. Identify the subject and source.

2. Identify important visual details. Look at the faces, poses, clothing, hairstyles, and other elements.

3. Make inferences from the visual details. Marie Antoinette’s rich clothing and her hand on the globe symbolize her wealth and power. The contrast between the common woman’s ordinary clothing and her defiant pose suggests a different attitude about power.

Use comparisons, information from other sources, and your own knowledge to give support to your interpretation. Royalty usually had their portraits painted in heroic poses. Ordinary people were not usually the subjects of such portraits. David’s choice of subject and pose suggests that he sees the common people as the true heroes of France.

**STRATEGY: MAKE A CHART.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Visual Details</th>
<th>Inferences</th>
<th>Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Common woman</td>
<td>Face is worn and</td>
<td>Has worked hard for</td>
<td>Although the details</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>clothing is plain, but</td>
<td>little in life, but strong,</td>
<td>are strikingly different</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>her head is held high</td>
<td>proud, and defiant</td>
<td>conveys similar characteristics about their subjects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and she wears the red</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>scarf of revolution</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marie Antoinette</td>
<td>Richly dressed and</td>
<td>Lives life of comfort</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>made up, strikes an</td>
<td>and power, proud,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>imperial pose</td>
<td>strong, and defiant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

 Applying the Skill

**MAKE YOUR OWN CHART.** Turn to the painting *School of Athens* by Raphael in Chapter 1, page 45. Use a chart, like the one above, to analyze and interpret the painting.
3.3 Using the Internet

The Internet is a network of computers associated with universities, libraries, news organizations, government agencies, businesses, and private individuals worldwide. Each location on the Internet has a Home Page with its own address, or URL.

With a computer connected to the Internet, you can reach the home pages of many organizations and services. You might view your library’s home page to find the call number of a book or visit an online magazine to read an article. On some sites you can view documents, photographs, and even moving pictures with sound.

The international collection of home pages, known as the World Wide Web, is a good source of up-to-the-minute information about current events as well as in-depth research on historical subjects. This textbook contains many suggestions for navigating the World Wide Web. Begin by entering HMHSOCIALSTUDIES.COM to access the home page for Holt McDougal World History.

Understanding the Skill

STRATEGY: EXPLORE THE ELEMENTS ON THE SCREEN. The computer screen below shows the “Issues & Press” page of the U.S. Department of State, the department of the executive branch responsible for international affairs.

1. Go directly to a Web page. If you know the address of a particular Web page, type the address in the box at the top of the screen and press ENTER (or RETURN). After a few seconds, the Web page will appear on your screen.

2. Explore the links. Click on any one of the images or topics to find out more about a specific subject. These links take you to another page at this Web site. Some pages include links to related information that can be found at other places on the Internet.

3. Learn more about the page. Scan the page to learn the types of information contained at this site. This site has information about current events, politics, and health and environmental issues.

4. Explore the features of the page. This page provides multimedia links and a chance to ask questions of State Department officials.

Applying the Skill

DO YOUR OWN INTERNET RESEARCH. Explore the web sites for Chapter 34 located at hmhsocialstudies.com. PATH: HMHSOCIALSTUDIES.COM → World History → Chapter 34 → Research Links.
3.4 Interpreting Maps

Maps are representations of features on the earth’s surface. Historians use maps to locate historical events, to show how geography has influenced history, and to illustrate human interaction with the environment.

Different kinds of maps are used for specific purposes.

**Political Maps** show political units, from countries, states, and provinces, to counties, districts, and towns. Each area is shaded a different color.

**Physical Maps** show mountains, hills, plains, rivers, lakes, and oceans. They may use contour lines to indicate elevations on land and depths under water.

**Historical Maps** illustrate such things as economic activity, political alliances, land claims, battles, population density, and changes over time.

---

**Compass Rose** The compass rose is a feature indicating the map’s orientation on the globe. It may show all four cardinal directions (N, S, E, W) or just indicate north.

**Locator** A locator map shows which part of the world the map subject area covers.

**Scale** The scale shows the ratio between a unit of length on the map and a unit of distance on the earth. The maps in this book usually show the scale in miles and kilometers.

**Lines** Lines indicate rivers and other waterways, political boundaries, roads, and routes of exploration or migration.

**Legend or Key** The legend or key explains the symbols, lines, and special colors that appear on the map.

**Symbols** Locations of cities and towns often appear as dots. A capital city is often shown as a star or as a dot with a circle around it. Picture symbols might be used to indicate an area’s products, resources, and special features.

**Labels** Key places such as cities, bodies of water, and landmarks are labeled. Key dates, such as those for the founding of cities, may also be labeled.

**Colors** Maps use colors and shading for various purposes. On physical maps, color may be used to indicate different physical regions or altitudes. On political maps, color can distinguish different political units. On specialty maps, color can show variable features such as population density, languages, or cultural areas.

**Inset** An inset is a small map that appears within a larger map. It often shows an area of the larger map in greater detail. Inset maps may also show a different area that is in some way related to the area shown on the larger map.

**Lines of Latitude and Longitude** Lines of latitude and longitude appear on maps to indicate the absolute location of the area shown.

- Lines of latitude show distance measured in degrees north or south of the equator.
- Lines of longitude show distance measured in degrees east or west of the prime meridian, which runs through Greenwich, England.
3.4 (Continued)

Understanding the Skill

**STRATEGY: READ ALL THE ELEMENTS OF THE MAP.** The historical maps below show European landholdings in North America in 1754 and after 1763. Together they show changes over time.

1 Look at the map’s title to learn the subject and purpose of the map. What area does the map cover? What does the map tell you about the area? Here the maps show North America in 1754 and after 1763 with the purpose of comparing European claims at two different times.

2 Look at the scale and compass. The scale shows you how many miles or kilometers are represented. Here the scale is 500 actual miles to approximately 5/8 inch on the map. The compass shows you which direction on the map is north.

3 Read the legend. The legend tells you what the symbols and colors on the map mean.

4 Find where the map area is located on the earth. These maps show a large area from the Arctic Circle to below latitude 20°N and 40° to 140°W.

**STRATEGY: MAKE A CHART.** Study the maps and pose questions about how the geographic patterns and distributions changed. Use the answers to create a chart.

Relate the map to five geography themes by making a chart. The five themes are described online and on the Student One Stop DVD-ROM. Ask questions about the themes and record your answers on the chart.

What Was the Location? Large area from Arctic Circle to below 20° N, and 40° to 140° W
What Was the Place? North American continent
What Was the Region? Western Hemisphere
Was There Any Movement? Between 1754 and 1763, land claimed by France was taken over by the other two colonial powers. Spain expanded its territories northward, while Britain expanded westward.
How Did Humans Interact with the Environment? Europeans carved out political units in the continent, which already had inhabitants. They claimed vast areas, with waterways and large mountain ranges to cross.

**Applying the Skill**

**MAKE YOUR OWN CHART.** Turn to Chapter 3, page 100, and study the map titled “The Mongol Empire, 1294.” Make a chart, like the one shown above, in which you summarize what the map tells you according to the five geography themes.
3.5 Interpreting Charts

**CHARTS** are visual presentations of materials. Historians use charts to organize, simplify, and summarize information in a way that makes it more meaningful or easier to remember. Several kinds of charts are commonly used.

**SIMPLE CHARTS** are used to summarize information or to make comparisons.

**TABLES** are used to organize statistics and other types of information into columns and rows for easy reference.

**DIAGRAMS** provide visual clues to the meaning of the information they contain. Venn diagrams are used for comparisons. Web diagrams are used to organize supporting information around a central topic. Illustrated diagrams or diagrams that combine different levels of information are sometimes called **INFOGRAPHICS**.

**Understanding the Skill**

**STRATEGY: STUDY ALL THE ELEMENTS OF THE CHART.** The infographic below conveys a great deal of information about the three estates, or classes, that existed in 18th-century France. The infographic visually combines a political cartoon, a bulleted chart, a pie graph, and a bar graph.

Read the title.

Identify the symbols and colors and what they represent. Here, three colors are used consistently in the infographic to represent the three estates.

Study each of the elements of the infographic. The political cartoon visually represents the power of the First and Second Estates over the Third Estate. The bulleted chart gives details about the estates. The two graphs give statistics.

Look for the main idea. Make connections among the types of information presented. What was the relationship among the three estates?

Look for geographic patterns and distributions. Pose questions about the way land is distributed among the three estates. Include your answers in your summary paragraph.

**STRATEGY: WRITE A SUMMARY.**

Write a paragraph to summarize what you learned from the chart.

In 1787, French society was unevenly divided into three estates. Ninety-seven percent of the people belonged to the Third Estate. They had no political power, paid high taxes, and owned only 65 percent of the land. The First Estate, made up of the clergy, and the Second Estate, made up of rich nobles, held the power, the wealth, and more than their share of the land. Both opposed change and took advantage of the Third Estate.

Applying the Skill

**WRITE YOUR OWN SUMMARY.** Turn to Chapter 9, page 293, and look at the chart titled “Industrialization.” Study the chart and write a paragraph in which you summarize what you learn from it.
3.6 Interpreting Graphs

**GRAPHS** show statistical information in a visual manner. Historians use graphs to show comparative amounts, ratios, economic trends, and changes over time.

**LINE GRAPHS** can show changes over time, or trends. Usually, the horizontal axis shows a unit of time, such as years, and the vertical axis shows quantities.

**PIE GRAPHS** are useful for showing relative proportions. The circle represents the whole, such as the entire population, and the slices represent the different groups that make up the whole.

**BAR GRAPHS** compare numbers or sets of numbers. The length of each bar indicates a quantity. With bar graphs, it is easy to see at a glance how different categories compare.

**Understanding the Skill**

**STRATEGY: STUDY ALL THE ELEMENTS OF THE GRAPH.** The line graphs below show average global temperatures and world population figures over a period of 25,000 years. Pose questions about geographic patterns and distributions shown on this graph; for example, when did worldwide temperature start to rise?

1. **Read the title to identify the main idea of the graph.** When two subjects are shown, look for a relationship between them. This set of graphs shows that the agricultural revolution had links to both global temperature and population.

2. **Read the vertical axis.** The temperature graph shows degrees Fahrenheit. The other shows population in millions, so that 125 indicates 125,000,000.

3. **Note any information that is highlighted in a box.**

4. **Read the horizontal axis.** Both graphs cover a period of time from 25,000 years ago to 0 (today).

5. **Look at the legend to understand what colors and certain marks stand for.**

**Summarize the information shown in each part of the graph.** What trends or changes are shown in each line graph?

**STRATEGY: WRITE A SUMMARY.**

Use the answers to your questions about geographic patterns and distributions to write your summary paragraph.

Write a paragraph to summarize what you learned from the graphs.

Some 20,000 years ago, after the last Ice Age, temperatures started to rise worldwide. This steady rise in average temperature from 51° to 55° made possible the beginnings of agriculture. As a result of the agricultural revolution, world population grew from about 2 million to about 130 million over a period of 10,000 years.

**Applying the Skill**

**WRITE YOUR OWN SUMMARY.** Turn to Chapter 15, page 474, and look at the graph “World Trade, 1929–1933.” Study the graph and write a paragraph in which you summarize what you learn from it.
3.7 Analyzing Political Cartoons

POLITICAL CARTOONS are drawings that express the artist’s point of view about a local, national, or international situation or event. They may criticize, show approval, or draw attention to a particular issue, and may be either serious or humorous. Political cartoonists often use symbols as well as other visual clues to communicate their message.

Understanding the Skill

STRATEGY: EXAMINE THE CARTOON CAREFULLY. The cartoon below was drawn during the period of détente—a lessening of Cold War tensions between the United States and the Soviet Union.

1. Look at the cartoon as a whole to determine the subject.
2. Look for symbols, which are especially effective in communicating ideas visually. In this cartoon, Szabo uses symbols that stand for two nations. The stars and stripes stand for the United States. The hammer and sickle stand for the Soviet Union.
3. Analyze the visual details, which help express the artist’s point of view. The lit fuse suggests that the world is in immediate danger. The United States and the Soviet Union are cooperating to reduce the danger by cutting the fuse.

STRAtegy: Make a Chart.

Summarize your analysis in a chart. Look for details and analyze their significance. Then decide on the message of the cartoon.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbols and Visual Details</th>
<th>Significance</th>
<th>Message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Stars and stripes</td>
<td>• United States</td>
<td>The United States and the Soviet Union are trying to prevent their differences from destroying the world.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Hammer and sickle</td>
<td>• Soviet Union</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Lit fuse</td>
<td>• Danger</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Both nations hold the scissors</td>
<td>• Cooperation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Applying the Skill

MAKE YOUR OWN CHART. Turn to the political cartoon in Chapter 7, page 218. Read the information provided in the chart and graphs to help you understand the basis for the cartoon. Note the clothing and apparent attitudes of the figures in the drawing, as well as how they relate to one another. Then make a chart like the one above.
**Section 4: Creating Presentations**

### 4.1 Writing for Social Studies

**Writing for Social Studies** requires you to describe an idea, a situation, or an event. Often, you will be asked to take a stand on a particular issue or to make a specific point. To successfully describe an event or make a point, your writing needs to be clear, concise, and accurate. When you write reports or term papers, you will also need to create a bibliography of your sources; and you need to evaluate how reliable those sources are.

**Understanding the Skill**

**Strategy: Organize Information and Write Clearly.** The following passage describes the rise and fall of Napoleon Bonaparte. Notice how the strategies below helped the writer explain the historical importance of Napoleon’s power.

1. **Focus on your topic.** Be sure that you clearly state the main idea of your piece so that your readers know what you intend to say.

2. **Collect and organize your facts.** Collect accurate information about your topic to support the main idea you are trying to make. Use your information to build a logical case to prove your point.

To express your ideas clearly, use standard grammar, spelling, sentence structure, and punctuation when writing for social studies. Proofread your work to make sure it is well organized and grammatically correct.

**Strategy: Use Standard Formats when Making Citations.** Use standard formats when citing books, magazines, newspapers, electronic media, and other sources. The following examples will help you to interpret and create bibliographies.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Newspaper</td>
<td>Gutierrez, Andrew R. &quot;Memorial for Scott at Antarctic.&quot; Los Angeles Times 8 January 2001: 14A.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Applying the Skill**

**Write Your Own Response.** Turn to Chapter 7, Section 4, “Napoleon’s Empire Collapses.” Read the section and use the strategies above to write your answer to question 6 on page 237.

Find three or four different sources on the Internet or in the library relating to Napoleon’s fall. Create a short bibliography and use standard formats for each type of source. Be sure to interpret, or evaluate, how reliable your sources are.
4.2 Creating a Map

Creating a map can help you understand routes, regions, landforms, political boundaries, or other geographical information.

Understanding the Skill

Strategy: Create a map to clarify information and help you visualize what you read. Creating a map is similar to taking notes, except that you draw much of the information. After reading the passage below, a student sketched the map shown.

The French Explore North America

A number of Frenchmen were among the early explorers of North America. In 1534, Jacques Cartier sailed up a broad river that he named the St. Lawrence. When he came to a large island dominated by a mountain, he called the island Mont Real, which eventually became known as Montreal. In 1608, another French explorer, Samuel de Champlain, sailed further up the St. Lawrence and laid claim to a region he called Quebec. In 1673, Jacques Marquette and Louis Joliet explored the Great Lakes and the upper Mississippi River. Nearly 10 years later, Sieur de La Salle explored the lower Mississippi and claimed the entire river valley for France.

1. Create a title that shows the purpose of the map.

2. Consider the purpose of the map as you decide which features to include. Because the main purpose of this sketch map is to show the routes of early explorers, it includes a scale of distance.

3. Find one or more maps to use as a guide. For this sketch map, the student consulted a historical map and a physical map.

4. Create a legend to explain any colors or symbols used.

Applying the Skill

Make your own sketch map. Turn to Chapter 4, page 122, and read the first three paragraphs of the section “Spanish Conquests in Peru.” Create a sketch map showing the cities where Pizarro conquered the Inca. Use either a modern map of Peru or an historic map of the Incan Empire as a guide. (The conquered cities of the empire also belong to the modern nation of Peru.) Include a scale of miles to show the distance traveled by the Spanish to make their conquests. Add a legend to indicate which conquest involved a battle and which did not.
4.3 Creating Charts and Graphs

**Charts** and **Graphs** are visual representations of information. (See Skillbuilders 3.5, Interpreting Charts, and 3.6, Interpreting Graphs.) Three types of graphs are **Bar Graphs**, **Line Graphs**, and **Pie Graphs**. Use a line graph to show changes over time, or trends. Use a pie graph to show relative proportions. Use a bar graph to display and compare information about quantities. Use a **Chart** to organize, simplify, and summarize information.

**Understanding the Skill**

**Strategy: Create a Bar Graph.** Choose the information that you wish to compare. After reading the following paragraph, a student created the bar graph below to compare population shifts in three European cities.

**Strategy: Organize the Data.** Be consistent in how you present similar kinds of information.

1. **Use a title that sums up the information.**
2. **Clearly label vertical and horizontal axes.**
   - Use the vertical axis to show increasing quantities.
   - Label the horizontal axis with what is being compared.
3. **Add a legend to indicate the meaning of any colors or symbols.**

**Applying the Skill**

**Create a Bar Graph.** Turn to Chapter 7, page 236. Study the map “Napoleon’s Russian Campaign, 1812.” Use the information to create a bar graph showing the number of soldiers in Napoleon’s army from June 1812 to December 6, 1812. Label the vertical axis Soldiers (in thousands) and show the grid in increments of 100, beginning with 0 and ending with 500. Provide a bar for each of the following dates: June 1812, September 7, 1812, November 1812, and December 6, 1812. Label each bar with the number of soldiers. Add a title. Be sure to read carefully the information in the boxes on the chart for each date you include in your graph.
4.4 Creating and Using a Database

A DATABASE is a collection of data, or information, that is organized so that you can find and retrieve information on a specific topic quickly and easily. Once a computerized database is set up, you can search it to find specific information without going through the entire database. The database will provide a list of all information in the database related to your topic. Learning how to use a database will help you learn how to create one.

Understanding the Skill

**STRATEGY: CREATE THE DATABASE.** First, identify the topic of the database. Both words in this title, “Five Empires,” are important. These words were used to begin the research for this database.

1. **Determine the order of presentation of information.** For example, will you list items from largest to smallest? from oldest to newest? The five empires are listed in order of date, from earliest empire to latest.

2. **Identify the entries included under each heading.** Here, five empires from the text were chosen as topics for research.

3. **Ask yourself what kind of data to include.** For example, what geographic patterns and distributions will be shown? Your choice of data will provide the column headings. The key words Dates, Greatest Territory, and Greatest Population were chosen to focus the research.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Five Empires</th>
<th>1 Dates</th>
<th>2 Greatest Territory*</th>
<th>3 Greatest Population**</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Persian</td>
<td>550 B.C.—330 B.C.</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>14.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roman</td>
<td>27 B.C.—A.D. 476</td>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>54.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Byzantine</td>
<td>A.D. 395—A.D. 1453</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>30.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mongol</td>
<td>A.D. 1206—A.D. 1380</td>
<td>11.7</td>
<td>125.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aztec</td>
<td>A.D. 1325—A.D. 1521</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>6.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Estimated in millions of square miles
** Estimated in millions of people

4. **Add labels or footnotes as necessary to clarify the nature of the data presented.** Are the figures shown in thousands? hundred of thousands? millions? Users of the database need to know what the figures represent.

**STRATEGY: USE THE DATABASE.** Use the database to help you find information quickly. For example, in this database you could search for “empires with populations of more than 10 million” and compile a list including the Persian, Roman, Byzantine, and Mongol empires.

Applying the Skill

**CREATE A DATABASE** for World War II that shows the dates and locations of important battles, estimated casualty figures, and the significance of the outcome for each battle. Use information presented in Chapter 16 to find the data. Follow a chart format similar to the one above for your database. Then use the database to list the three battles that resulted in the highest number of casualties.
Section 4: Creating Presentations

4.5 Creating a Model

**WHEN YOU CREATE A MODEL**, you use information and ideas to show an event or a situation in a visual way. A model might be a poster or a diagram drawn to explain how something happened. Or, it might be a three-dimensional model, such as a diorama, that depicts an important scene or situation.

**Understanding the Skill**

**STRATEGY: CREATE A MODEL.** The poster below shows the hardships and dangers that children faced while working in the textile factories in the early 1800s. Use the strategies listed below to help you create your own model.

1. **Gather the information you need to understand the situation or event.** In this case, you need to be able to show the hardships and dangers of child labor.

2. **Visualize and sketch an idea for your model.** Once you have created a picture in your mind, make an actual sketch to plan how it might look.

3. **Think of symbols you may want to use.** Since the model should give information in a visual way, think about ways you can use color, pictures, or other visuals to tell the story.

Gather the supplies you will need and create the model. For example, you may need crayons and markers.

**Applying the Skill**

**CREATE YOUR OWN MODEL.** Read the Interact with History feature on page 282. Create a poster that shows how working conditions might be made more fair in England during the Industrial Revolution.
4.6 Creating/Interpreting a Research Outline

When you **CREATE A RESEARCH OUTLINE**, you arrange information you have gathered into an organized format. When you **INTERPRET A RESEARCH OUTLINE**, you use the outline’s structure to guide you in writing a research report or paper that is clear and focused.

**Understanding the Skill**

**STRATEGY: DECIDE HOW IDEAS ARE CONNECTED, THEN CREATE AN OUTLINE.** As you research a topic, you are likely to gather names, dates, facts, and ideas. All of this information needs to be organized to show how the ideas connect to one another. To decide how the ideas connect, think about your purpose for writing the research report.

For example, suppose you are writing a report about Napoleon’s retreat from Moscow. You might choose to create an outline using the sequence of events or using the causes and effects that led to the destruction of the Grand Army. Your outline would reflect your purpose.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chronological outline</th>
<th>Cause-and-effect outline</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Purpose:</strong> Describe the events that led to Napoleon’s defeat in Russia.</td>
<td><strong>Purpose:</strong> Describe the reasons for Napoleon’s defeat in Russia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>I.</strong> Napoleon’s defeat in Russia</td>
<td><strong>I.</strong> Napoleon’s mistakes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. June 1812</td>
<td>3. troops not loyal to Napoleon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. march into Russia</td>
<td>B. waited too long to retreat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. scorched-earth policy</td>
<td>4. 1. starvation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>B.</strong> September 7, 1812</td>
<td>2. winter snows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Battle of Borodino</td>
<td>II. Russian tactics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. narrow victory for the French</td>
<td>A. scorched-earth policy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>C.</strong> September 14, 1812</td>
<td>B. no offer of peace from the czar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. arrival in Moscow</td>
<td>C. attacks on the retreating army</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. city in flames</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**II.** Napoleon’s defeat in Russia

A. mid-October 1812

1. waiting for offer of peace
2. too late to advance
3. begins retreat from Moscow

B. early November 1812

1. retreat in snow storm
2. attack by Russians

**STRATEGY: INTERPRET THE OUTLINE TO WRITE A RESEARCH REPORT.**

Use the organization of the outline to choose signal words that match your purpose for writing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Signal words to show time-order</th>
<th>Signal words to show cause and effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dates September 14, 1812</td>
<td>because</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time frames for five weeks</td>
<td>so</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>order first, next, then, last</td>
<td>as a result</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Applying the Skill**

**CREATE YOUR OWN OUTLINE.** Read Chapter 13, “The Great War, 1914–1918.” Create an outline that shows a sequence of events leading up to World War I or that shows the series of causes and effects that resulted in the war. Choose appropriate signal words to write a rough draft from your outline.
4.7 Creating Oral Presentations

When you **CREATE AN ORAL PRESENTATION**, you prepare a speech or a talk to give before an audience. The object of an oral presentation is to provide information about a particular topic or to persuade an audience to think or act in a particular way.

**Understanding the Skill**

**STRATEGY: CHOOSE A TOPIC.** The following is an excerpt from a student’s speech in support of recycling.

1. **State your theme or point of view.**
2. **Include facts or arguments to support your theme.**
3. **Choose words and images that reflect the theme.** The comparison to Disneyland is a visual image that helps to communicate the amount of waste in the Fresh Kills Landfill.

   - To help preserve the earth’s dwindling natural resources, Americans need to get serious about recycling. At the moment, our track record is not very good.
   - Although people in the United States account for less than 5% of the world’s population, they use 40% of the world’s resources, and generate a huge amount of waste. The Fresh Kills Landfill, which serves New York City, is a prime example. It contains so much garbage that Fresh Kills Landfill is 4 times the size of Disneyland, and that's just New York’s garbage.

   With so many people throwing away so much, is there any point in trying to change things? The answer is yes! Recycling one glass bottle saves enough energy to light a 100-watt light bulb for four hours. Twenty-five million trees could be saved every year by recycling just 10% of our newspapers. Making new aluminum products from recycled aluminum, rather than from bauxite, uses 95% less energy. By increasing the recycling of our bottles, jars, cans, and paper, we could dramatically reduce our demand for trees, fossil fuels, and other precious resources.

**STRATEGY: USE THESE TIPS FOR SUCCESSFUL ORAL PRESENTATIONS.**

- Maintain eye contact with your audience.
- Use gestures and body language to emphasize main points.
- Pace yourself. Speak slowly and distinctly.
- Vary your tone to help bring out the message you wish to make.

**STRATEGY: PRACTICE THE PRESENTATION** in front of a mirror or ask a friend or family member to listen to your presentation and give you feedback.

**Applying the Skill**

**CREATE YOUR OWN ORAL PRESENTATION.** Turn to Chapter 6. Choose a topic from the “New” section of one of the “Changing Idea” boxes on pages 192, 195, 204, or 208. Create an oral presentation in which you explain how the idea was new and why it was important. Use information from the chapter to support your chosen idea.
4.8 Creating Written Presentations

**CREATING A WRITTEN PRESENTATION** means writing an in-depth report on a topic in history. Your objective may be to inform or to support a particular point of view. To succeed, your writing must be clear and well organized. For additional information on creating a historical research paper, see Skillbuilder 4.1, Writing for Social Studies.

**Understanding the Skill**

**STRATEGY: CREATE AN OUTLINE** such as the one below. Use it as a guide to write your presentation.

1. State the main idea.
2. Organize the information by category.
3. Add supporting facts and details.

---

**The Incan Empire**

1. The Inca created a large and highly developed empire.

2. **A Theocracy**
   1. Members of only 11 families could rule
   2. Rulers believed to be descendants of the sun god
   3. Religion supported the state, worship of the sun god, Inti, amounted to worship of the king

3. **B. Expansion**
   1. Rulers conquered new territories to acquire wealth
   2. Pachacuti created the largest empire in the Americas
   3. Size by 1500: 2,500 miles along western coast, 16 million people

4. **C. Unifying strategies**
   1. Rulers practiced diplomacy
   2. Rulers imposed a single official language, Quechua
   3. Schools taught conquered peoples the Incan ways
   4. Extensive system of roads led to Cuzco, the capital

5. **D. Early socialism**
   1. Supported aged and disabled
   2. Rewarded citizens’ labor with food and beer

6. **E. Culturally advanced**
   1. Elaborate calendar system
   2. Artisans created works in gold and silver
   3. Exception: no writing system, but oral tradition
The Incan Empire

The Incan Empire was the largest empire ever seen in the Americas. Despite its size, the Incan Empire was highly unified. Its government was diplomatic, bureaucratic, and socialist in nature, and its ruler was believed to be a god-king.

The Incan ruler was selected from one of 11 noble families, who were believed to have descended from Inti, the sun god. Religion therefore supported the state, for worship of the sun god amounted to worship of the king. Thus, the empire was a theocracy, which is a state believed to be ruled directly by divine guidance.

The empire’s expansion was largely the result of an important tradition: dead rulers retained the wealth they accumulated during their lives. To acquire wealth of their own, succeeding rulers often attempted to conquer new territories. One such ruler, Pachacuti, conquered all of Peru and many neighboring lands as well. By 1500, the Incan Empire extended 2,500 miles along the coast of western South America and included an estimated 16 million people.

Incan rulers used a number of strategies to achieve unification. They practiced diplomacy by allowing conquered peoples to retain their own customs as long as they were loyal to the state. The Inca imposed a single official language, Quechua, to be used throughout the empire. They founded schools to teach Incan ways. They built 14,000 miles of roads and bridges, which connected cities in conquered areas with Cuzco, the Incan capital.

The government’s concern for the welfare of its citizens suggests an early form of socialism. Citizens worked for the state and, in turn, were taken care of. At public feasts, food and beer were distributed as a reward for labor. In addition, the aged and disabled often received state support.

The many cultural achievements of the Inca were the development of an elaborate calendar system and the creation of beautiful works in gold and silver. Surprisingly, the Inca had no system of writing. They preserved their history and literature by means of an oral tradition.

Applying the Skill

CREATE A TWO-PAGE WRITTEN PRESENTATION on a topic of historical importance that interests you.
The Economics Handbook is a glossary of economic terms. Graphs and charts in the handbook provide a better understanding of these terms.

Primary Source Handbook

Rig Veda, *Creation Hymn*

Bible, *Psalm 23*

Confucius, *Analects*

Thucydides, *History of the Peloponnesian War*

Plato, *The Apology*

Tacitus, *Annals*

Qur’an

Sei Shônagon, *The Pillow Book*

*Magna Carta*

*Popol Vuh*

Niccolò Machiavelli, *The Prince*

Sir Thomas More, *Utopia*

James Madison, *The Federalist, “Number 51”*

Mary Wollstonecraft, *A Vindication of the Rights of Woman*

Élisabeth Vigée-Lebrun, *Memoirs of Madame Vigée-Lebrun*

Sadler Committee, *Report on Child Labor*

Abraham Lincoln, *Second Inaugural Address*

Elizabeth Cady Stanton, *The Natural Rights of Civilized Women*

Woodrow Wilson, *The Fourteen Points*

Elie Wiesel, *Night*

Jeanne Wakatsuki Houston and James D. Houston, *Farewell to Manzanar*

Nelson Mandela, *Inaugural Address*

Martin Luther King, Jr., *I Have a Dream*

Cesar Chavez, *An Open Letter*
The Glossary is an alphabetical listing of many of the key terms from the chapters, along with their meanings. The definitions listed in the Glossary are the ones that apply to the way the words are used in this textbook. The Glossary gives the part of speech of each word. The following abbreviations are used:

adj. adjective  n. noun  v. verb

### Pronunciation Key

Some of the words in this book are followed by respellings that show how the words are pronounced. The following key will help you understand what sounds are represented by the letters used in the respellings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Examples</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>apple [AP•uhl], catch [kach]</td>
<td>oh</td>
<td>road, [rohd], know [noh]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ah</td>
<td>barn [bahrn], pot [paht]</td>
<td>oo</td>
<td>school [skool], glue [gloo]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>air</td>
<td>bear [bair], dare [dain]</td>
<td>ow</td>
<td>out [owt], cow [kow]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aw</td>
<td>bought [bawt], horse [hawrs]</td>
<td>oy</td>
<td>coin [koyn], boys [boyz]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ay</td>
<td>ape [ayp], mail [mayl]</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>pig [pihg], top [tahp]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>bell [behhl], table [TAY•buhhl]</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>rose [rohz], star [stahr]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ch</td>
<td>chain [chain], ditch [dich]</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>soap [sohp], icy [EYE•see]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>dog [dawg], raised [raynd]</td>
<td>sh</td>
<td>share [shair], nation [NAY•shuhn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ee</td>
<td>even [EE•vuhn], meal [meel]</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>tired [tyrd], boat [boht]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eh</td>
<td>egg [egh], ten [ten]</td>
<td>th</td>
<td>thin [thihn], mother [MUH•thuur]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eye</td>
<td>iron [EYE•uhrn]</td>
<td>u</td>
<td>pull [pul], look [luk]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>fall [fawl], laugh [laf]</td>
<td>uh</td>
<td>bump [buhmp], awake [uh•WAYK], happen [HAP•uhhn], pencil [PEHN•suuhl], pilot [PY•lught]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>gold [gohld], big [bihg]</td>
<td>v</td>
<td>vase [vays], love [luhv]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>hot [haht], exhale [ehks•HAYL]</td>
<td>w</td>
<td>web [wehb], twin [twihn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hw</td>
<td>white [hwyt]</td>
<td>y</td>
<td>As a consonant: yard [yahrd], mule [myool]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ih</td>
<td>into [IHN•too], sick [sihkh]</td>
<td>z</td>
<td>As a vowel: ice [ys], tried [tryd], sigh [sy]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>j</td>
<td>jar [jahr], badge [baj]</td>
<td></td>
<td>zone [zohn], reason [REE•zuhn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>cat [kat], luck [luhk]</td>
<td></td>
<td>treasure [TREHZH•uhr], garage [guh•RAHZH]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>l</td>
<td>load [lohd], ball [bawl]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>make [mayk], gem [jehm]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td>night [nyt], win [wen]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ng</td>
<td>song [sawng], anger [ANG•guhr]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Syllables that are stressed when the words are spoken appear in CAPITAL LETTERS in the respellings. For example, the respelling of patterns (PAT•uhrnz) shows that the first syllable of the word is stressed.

Syllables that appear in SMALL CAPITAL LETTERS are also stressed, but not as strongly as those that appear in capital letters. For example, the respelling of interaction (IHN•tuhr•AK•shuhn) shows that the third syllable receives the main stress and the first syllable receives a secondary stress.

---

**Aboriginal** [AB•uh•RIH•uh•nee] n. a member of any of the native peoples of Australia. (p. 318)

**absolute monarch** [MAHN•uhhrk] n. a king or queen who has unlimited power and seeks to control all aspects of society. (p. 160)

**Allies** [uh•LYZ] n. in World War I, the nations of Great Britain, France, and Russia, along with the other nations that fought on their side; also, the group of nations—including Great Britain, the Soviet Union, and the United States—that opposed the Axis Powers in World War II. (p. 411)

**Amritsar Massacre** n. killing by British troops of nearly 400 Indians gathered at Amritsar to protest the Rowlatt Acts. (p. 454)

**Anabaptist** [AN•uh•BAP•tihs] n. in the Reformation, a member of a Protestant group that believed in baptizing only those persons who were old enough to decide to be Christian and believed in the separation of church and state. (p. 62)

**Anglican** [ANG•glih•kuhn] adj. relating to the Church of England. (p. 60)

**annexation** [AN•ihk•SAY•shuhn] n. the adding of a region to the territory of an existing political unit. (p. 365, 379)

**annul** [uh•NUHHL] v. to cancel or set aside. (p. 58)

**anti-Semitism** [AN•tee•SEHM•ih•TH•Zuhr] n. prejudice against Jews. (p. 315)
apartheid [uh•PAHRT•HYT] n. a South African policy of complete legal separation of the races, including the banning of all social contacts between blacks and whites. (p. 609)

appeasement n. the making of concessions to an aggressor in order to avoid war. (p. 483)

armistice [AHR•mih•stihs] n. an agreement to stop fighting. (p. 421)

Aryans [AIR•e•uhn] n. to the Nazis, the Germanic peoples who formed a “master race.” (p. 502)

assembly line n. in a factory, an arrangement in which a product is moved from worker to worker, with each person performing a single task in its manufacture. (p. 330)

assimilation [uh•SiHM•uh•LAY•shuhn] n. a policy in which a nation forces or encourages a subject people to adopt its institutions and customs. (p. 347)

Atlantic Charter n. a declaration of principles issued in August 1941 by British prime minister Winston Churchill and U.S. president Franklin Roosevelt, on which the Allied peace plan at the end of World War II was based. (p. 496)

Atlantic slave trade n. the buying, transporting, and selling of Africans for work in the Americas. (p. 133)

Axis Powers n. in World War II, the nations of Germany, Italy, and Japan, which had formed an alliance in 1936. (p. 483)

balance of power n. a political situation in which no one nation is powerful enough to pose a threat to others. (p. 238)

Balkans [BAWL•kuhnz] n. the region of southeastern Europe now occupied by Greece, Albania, Bulgaria, Romania, the European part of Turkey, and the former republics of Yugoslavia. (p. 255)

baroque [buh•ROHK] adj. relating to a grand, ornate style that characterized European painting, music, and architecture in the 1600s and early 1700s. (p. 203)

Battle of Britain n. a series of battles between German and British air forces, fought over Britain in 1940–1941. (p. 494)

Battle of Guadalcanal [gwa•uh•kuh•NALE] n. a 1942–1943 battle of World War II, in which Allied troops drove Japanese forces from the Pacific island of Guadalcanal. (p. 501)

Battle of Midway n. a 1942 sea and air battle of World War II, in which American forces defeated Japanese forces in the central Pacific. (p. 500)

Battle of Stalingrad [STAH•ihn•GRAD] n. a 1942–1943 battle of World War II, in which German forces were defeated in their attempt to capture the city of Stalingrad in the Soviet Union. (p. 507)

Battle of the Bulge n. a 1944–1945 battle in which Allied forces turned back the last major German offensive of World War II. (p. 510)

Battle of Trafalgar [truh•FAL•guhr] n. an 1805 naval battle in which Napoleon’s forces were defeated by a British fleet under the command of Horatio Nelson. (p. 233)

Berlin Conference of 1884–85 n. a meeting at which representatives of European nations agreed upon rules for the European colonization of Africa. (p. 342)

Bill of Rights n. the first ten amendments to the U.S. Constitution, which protect citizens’ basic rights and freedoms. (p. 211)

blitzkrieg [BLIHTS•KREEG] n. “lightning war”—a form of warfare in which surprise attacks with fast-moving airplanes are followed by massive attacks with infantry forces. (p. 491)

blockade [blah•KAYD] n. the use of troops or ships to prevent commercial traffic from entering or leaving a city or region. (p. 234)

Boer [bohr] n. a Dutch colonist in South Africa. (p. 342)

Boer War n. a conflict, lasting from 1899 to 1902, in which the Boers and the British fought for control of territory in South Africa. (p. 344)

Bolsheviks [BOHL•shuh•VIHKS] n. a group of revolutionary Russian Marxists who took control of Russia’s government in November 1917. (p. 434)

Boxer Rebellion n. a 1900 revolt in China, aimed at ending foreign influence in the country. (p. 374)

boyars [bob•YAH•RHZ] n. landowning nobles of Russia. (p. 174)

brinkmanship n. a policy of threatening to go to war in response to any enemy aggression. (p. 536)

bureaucracy n. a group of advisers or ministers chosen by the head of a country to help make government decisions. (p. 183)

Calvinism [KAL•vih•NIGH•uhm] n. a body of religious teachings based on the ideas of the reformer John Calvin. (p. 61)

Camp David Accords n. the first signed agreement between Israel and an Arab country, leading to a 1979 peace treaty, in which Egypt recognized Israel as a legitimate state and Israel agreed to return the Sinai Peninsula to Egypt. (p. 586)

capitalism n. an economic system based on private ownership and on the investment of money in business ventures in order to make a profit. (pp. 139, 300)

Catholic Reformation [reh•uh•MAY•shuhn] n. a 16th-century movement in which the Roman Catholic Church sought to make changes in response to the Protestant Reformation. (p. 64)
caudillo [kaw•DEEL•yoh] n. a military dictator of a Latin American country. (p. 382)

Central Powers n. in World War I, the nations of Germany and Austria-Hungary, along with the other nations that fought on their side. (p. 411)

Chartist movement n. in 19th-century Britain, members of the working class demanded reforms in Parliament and in elections, including suffrage for all men. (p. 314)

checks and balances n. measures designed to prevent any one branch of government from dominating the others. (p. 211)

CIS n. the Commonwealth of Independent States—a loose association of former Soviet republics that was formed after the breakup of the Soviet Union. (p. 615)

civil disobedience n. a deliberate and public refusal to obey a law considered unjust. (p. 454)

cloning [KLOH•nihng] n. the creation of plants or animals that are genetically identical to an existing plant or animal. (p. 639)

coalition [koi•uh•LIHSH•uhn] government n. a government controlled by a temporary alliance of several political parties. (p. 470)

Cold War n. the state of diplomatic hostility between the United States and the Soviet Union in the decades following World War II. (p. 535)

collective farm n. a large government-controlled farm formed by combining many small farms. (p. 444)

colony n. a land controlled by another nation. (p. 120)

Columbian Exchange n. the global transfer of plants, animals, and diseases that occurred during the European colonization of the Americas. (p. 137)

command economy n. an economic system in which the government makes all economic decisions. (p. 443)

commune [KAHM•yoon] n. in Communist China, a collective farm on which a great number of people work and live together. (p. 540)

Communist Party n. a political party practicing the ideas of Karl Marx and V.I. Lenin; originally the Russian Bolshevik Party. (p. 439)

communism n. an economic system in which all means of production—land, mines, factories, railroads, and businesses—are owned by the people, private property does not exist, and all goods and services are shared equally. (p. 303)

Concert [KAHN•surt] of Europe n. a series of alliances among European nations in the 19th century, devised by Prince Klemens von Metternich to prevent the outbreak of revolutions. (p. 240)

concordat [kuhn•KAWR•dah] n. a formal agreement—especially one between the pope and a government, dealing with the control of Church affairs. (p. 230)

Congress of Vienna [ve•EHN•uh] n. a series of meetings in 1814–1815, during which the European leaders sought to establish long-lasting peace and security after the defeat of Napoleon. (p. 238)

Congress Party n. a major national political party in India—also known as the Indian National Congress. (p. 563)

conquistadors [kahng•KEE•stuh•DAWR] n. the Spanish soldiers, explorers, and fortune hunters who took part in the conquest of the Americas in the 16th century. (p. 120)

conservative n. in the first half of the 19th century, a European—mainly wealthy landowners and nobles—who wanted to preserve the traditional monarchies of Europe. (p. 253)

constitutional monarchy [MAHN•uh•kee] n. a system of governing in which the ruler’s power is limited by law. (p. 183)

containment n. a U.S. foreign policy adopted by President Harry Truman in the late 1940s, in which the United States tried to stop the spread of communism by creating alliances and helping weak countries to resist Soviet advances. (p. 533)

Continental System n. Napoleon’s policy of preventing trade between Great Britain and continental Europe, intended to destroy Great Britain’s economy. (p. 234)

corporation n. a business owned by stockholders who share in its profits but are not personally responsible for its debts. (p. 297)

Council of Trent n. a meeting of Roman Catholic leaders, called by Pope Paul III to rule on doctrines criticized by the Protestant reformers. (p. 65)

coup d’état [KOO•day•TAH] n. a sudden seizure of political power in a nation. (p. 230)

creole [KREE•oh•] n. in Spanish colonial society, a colonist who were born in Latin America to Spanish parents. (p. 247)

Crimean [kry•MEE•uh•] War n. a conflict, lasting from 1853 to 1856, in which the Ottoman Empire, with the aid of Britain and France, halted Russian expansion in the region of the Black Sea. (p. 353)

crop rotation n. the system of growing a different crop in a field each year to preserve the fertility of the land. (p. 283)

Cultural Revolution n. a 1966–1976 uprising in China led by the Red Guards, with the goal of establishing a society of peasants and workers in which all were equal. (p. 541)

cyberterrorism n. politically motivated attacks on information systems. (p. 654)

daimyo [DY•me•oh] n. a Japanese feudal lord who commanded a private army of samurai. (p. 108)
D-Day *n.* June 6, 1944—the day on which the Allies began their invasion of the European mainland during World War II. (p. 510)

Declaration of Independence *n.* a statement of the reasons for the American colonies’ break with Britain, approved by the Second Continental Congress in 1776. (p. 207)

demilitarization [de•MHL•ih•uh•ruh•ih•ZAY•shuhn] *n.* a reduction in a country’s ability to wage war, achieved by disbanding its armed forces and prohibiting it from acquiring weapons. (p. 516)

democratization *n.* the process of creating a government elected by the people. (p. 516)

Department of Homeland Security *n.* U.S. federal agency created in 2002 to coordinate national efforts against terrorism. (p. 657)

détente [day•TAHNT] *n.* a policy of reducing Cold War tensions that was adopted by the United States during the presidency of Richard Nixon. (p. 556)

developed nation *n.* a nation with all the facilities needed for the advanced production of manufactured goods. (p. 641)

devshirme [dEhv•SHEER•meh] *n.* in the Ottoman Empire, the policy of taking boys from conquered Christian peoples to be trained as Muslim soldiers. (p. 76)

dissident [DIHSH•ih•duhn] *n.* an opponent of a government’s policies or actions. (p. 608)

divine right *n.* the idea that monarchs are God’s representatives on earth and are therefore answerable only to God. (p. 160)

dominion *n.* in the British Empire, a nation (such as Canada) allowed to govern its own domestic affairs. (p. 318)

domino theory *n.* the idea that if a nation falls under Communist control, nearby nations will also fall under Communist control. (p. 544)

Dreyfus [DRY•fuhs] *affair* *n.* a controversy in France in the 1890s, centering on the trial and imprisonment of a Jewish army officer, Captain Alfred Dreyfus, who had been falsely accused of selling military secrets to Germany. (p. 315)

Dutch East India Company *n.* a company founded by the Dutch in the early 17th century to establish and direct trade throughout Asia. (p. 100)

Eastern Front *n.* in World War I, the region along the German-Russian border where Russians and Serbs battled Germans, Austrians, and Turks. (p. 414)

Edict of Nantes [EE•dih•kuh•t uh•NAHNT] *n.* a 1598 declaration in which the French king Henry IV promised that Protestants could live in peace in France and could set up houses of worship in some French cities. (p. 162)

Emancipation Proclamation [ih•MAN•suh•PAY•shuhn PRAHK•ih•MAY•shuhn] *n.* a declaration issued by U.S. president Abraham Lincoln in 1863, stating that all slaves in the Confederate states were free. (p. 326)

emerging nation *n.* a nation in which the process of industrialization is not yet complete. (p. 641)

émigré [EHM•ih•GRAY] *n.* people who leave their native country for political reasons, like the nobles and others who fled France during the peasant uprisings of the French Revolution. (p. 224)

enclosure *n.* one of the fenced-in or hedged-in fields created by wealthy British landowners on land that was formerly worked by village farmers. (p. 283)

encomienda [ehng•kaw•MYEHN•dah] *n.* a grant of land made by Spain to a settler in the Americas, including the right to use Native Americans as laborers on it. (p. 123)

English Civil War *n.* a conflict, lasting from 1642 to 1649, in which Puritan supporters of Parliament battled supporters of England’s monarchy. (p. 181)

enlightened despot [DEHSH•puht] *n.* one of the 18th-century European monarchs who was inspired by Enlightenment ideas to rule justly and respect the rights of subjects. (p. 204)

Enlightenment *n.* an 18th-century European movement in which thinkers attempted to apply the principles of reason and the scientific method to all aspects of society. (p. 195)

entrepreneur [AHN•truh•PRUH•NUR] *n.* a person who organizes, manages, and takes on the risks of a business. (p. 287)

estate [ih•STAYT] *n.* one of the three social classes in France before the French Revolution—the First Estate consisting of the clergy; the Second Estate, of the nobility; and the Third Estate, of the rest of the population. (p. 217)

Estates-General [ih•STAYTS•JEHN•uh•uhl] *n.* an assembly of representatives from all three of the estates, or social classes, in France. (p. 219)

ethnic cleansing *n.* a policy of murder and other acts of brutality by which Serbs hoped to eliminate Bosnia’s Muslim population after the breakup of Yugoslavia. (p. 622)

existentialism [EHG•zih•STEHN•shuh•LEHZ•uhm] *n.* a philosophy based on the idea that people give meaning to their lives through their choices and actions. (p. 464)

extraterritorial [EHK•struh•TEHR•ih•TAWR•ee•uhl] *rights* *n.* an exemption of foreign residents from the laws of a country. (p. 372)

factors of production *n.* the resources—including land, labor, and capital—that are needed to produce goods and services. (p. 284)
Glossary

**factory** *n.* a large building in which machinery is used to manufacture goods. (p. 286)

**fascism** [FASH•ih•Z•uhm] *n.* a political movement that promotes an extreme form of nationalism, a denial of individual rights, and a totalitarian one-party rule. (p. 476)

**favorable balance of trade** *n.* an economic situation in which a country sells more goods abroad than it buys from abroad. (p. 141)

**federal system** *n.* a system of government in which power is divided between a central authority and a number of individual states. (pp. 211, 607)

**“Final Solution”** *n.* Hitler’s program of systematically killing the entire Jewish people. (p. 503)

**Five-Year Plans** *n.* plans outlined by Joseph Stalin in 1928 for the development of the Soviet Union’s economy. (p. 443)

**Four Modernizations** *n.* a set of goals adopted by the Chinese leader Deng Xiaoping in the late 20th century, involving progress in agriculture, industry, defense, and science and technology. (p. 626)

**Fourteen Points** *n.* a series of proposals in which U.S. president Woodrow Wilson outlined a plan for achieving a lasting peace after World War I. (p. 424)

**free trade** *n.* commerce between nations without economic restrictions or barriers (such as tariffs). (p. 642)

**French and Indian War** *n.* a conflict between Britain and France for control of territory in North America, lasting from 1754 to 1763. (p. 130)

**gender inequality** *n.* the difference between men and women in terms of wealth and status. (p. 650)

**genetic** [jih•NEHT•ih] *engineering* *n.* the transferring of genes from one living thing to another in order to produce an organism with new traits. (p. 639)

**genocide** [JEHN•uh•SYED] *n.* the systematic killing of an entire people. (p. 503)

**geocentric theory** *n.* in the Middle Ages, the earth-centered view of the universe in which scholars believed that the earth was an immovable object located at the center of the universe. (p. 189)

**geopolitics** [jee•oh•PAHL•ih•tihks] *n.* a foreign policy based on a consideration of the strategic locations or products of other lands. (p. 352)

**ghazi** [GAH•zee] *n.* a warrior for Islam. (p. 73)

**ghettos** [GEHT•ohz] *n.* city neighborhoods in which European Jews were forced to live. (p. 503)

**glasnost** [GLAHS•nuhst] *n.* a Soviet policy of openness to the free flow of ideas and information, introduced in 1985 by Mikhail Gorbachev. (p. 612)

**global economy** *n.* all the financial interactions—involving people, businesses, and governments—that cross international boundaries. (p. 642)

**Glorious Revolution** *n.* the bloodless overthrow of the English king James II and his replacement by William and Mary. (p. 182)

**Great Depression** *n.* the severe economic slump that followed the collapse of the U.S. stock market in 1929. (p. 473)

**Great Fear** *n.* a wave of senseless panic that spread through the French countryside after the storming of the Bastille in 1789. (p. 221)

**Great Purge** *n.* a campaign of terror in the Soviet Union during the 1930s, in which Joseph Stalin sought to eliminate all Communist Party members and other citizens who threatened his power. (p. 442)

**green revolution** *n.* a 20th-century attempt to increase food resources worldwide, involving the use of fertilizers and pesticides and the development of disease-resistant crops. (p. 640)

**guerrilla** [guh•RIHL•uh] *n.* a member of a loosely organized fighting force that makes surprise attacks on enemy troops occupying his or her country. (p. 235)

**guillotine** [GHL•uh•TEEN] *n.* a machine for beheading people, used as a means of execution during the French Revolution. (p. 226)

**habeas corpus** [HAY•bee•uh•KAWR•puhs] *n.* a document requiring that a prisoner be brought before a court or judge so that it can be decided whether his or her imprisonment is legal. (p. 182)

**haiku** [HY•koo] *n.* a Japanese form of poetry, consisting of three unrhymed lines of five, seven, and five syllables. (p. 110)

**heliocentric** [HEE•lee•oh•SEHN•trihks] *theory* *n.* the idea that the earth and the other planets revolve around the sun. (p. 190)

**Holocaust** [HAHL•uh•KAWST] *n.* a mass slaughter of Jews and other civilians, carried out by the Nazi government of Germany before and during World War II. (p. 502)

**Holy Alliance** *n.* a league of European nations formed by the leaders of Russia, Austria, and Prussia after the Congress of Vienna. (p. 240)

**home rule** *n.* a control over internal matters granted to the residents of a region by a ruling government. (p. 320)

**humanism** [HYOO•muh•NIHZ•uhm] *n.* a Renaissance intellectual movement in which thinkers studied classical texts and focused on human potential and achievements. (p. 38)

**Hundred Days** *n.* the brief period during 1815 when Napoleon made his last bid for power, deposing the French king and again becoming emperor of France. (p. 237)

**imperialism** [ihm•PEER•ee•uh•LHZ•uhm] *n.* a policy in which a strong nation seeks to dominate other countries politically, economically, or socially. (p. 339)
impressionism [ihn•PREHSH•uh•NIHZ•uhm] n. a movement in 19th-century painting, in which artists reacted against realism by seeking to convey their impressions of subjects or moments in time. (p. 267)

indulgence [ihn•DUHL•juhns] n. a pardon releasing a person from punishments due for a sin. (p. 55)

industrialization [ihn•huhn•tree•uh•uh•ZAY•shuhn] n. the development of industries for the machine production of goods. (p. 284)

Industrial Revolution n. the shift, beginning in England during the 18th century, from making goods by hand to making them by machine. (p. 283)

intendant [ihn•TEHN•duhnt] n. a French government official appointed by the monarch to collect taxes and administer justice. (p. 164)

International Space Station n. cooperative venture sponsored by the United States, Russia, and 14 other nations to establish and maintain a working laboratory for scientific experimentation in space. (p. 637)

Internet n. a linkage of computer networks that enables people around the world to exchange information and communicate with one another. (p. 639)

intifada n. Literally, “shaking off”; Palestinian campaigns of violent and non-violent resistance against Israel. Violence during the 1980s intifada targeted the Israeli army. Violence during the 2000s intifada targeted Israeli civilians. (p. 587)

Irish Republican Army (IRA) n. an unofficial nationalist military force seeking independence for Ireland from Great Britain. (p. 321)

iron curtain n. during the Cold War, the boundary separating the Communist nations of Eastern Europe from the mostly democratic nations of Western Europe. (p. 533)

isolationism n. a policy of avoiding political or military involvement with other countries. (p. 484)

janissary [JAN•ih•SHEHR•ee] n. a member of an elite force of soldiers in the Ottoman Empire. (p. 76)

jazz n. a 20th-century style of popular music developed mainly by African-American musicians. (p. 465)

Jesuits [JEHZH•oo•ihnts] n. members of the Society of Jesus, a Roman Catholic religious order founded by Ignatius of Loyola. (p. 65)

“jewel in the crown” n. the British colony of India—so called because of its importance in the British Empire, both as a supplier of raw materials and as a market for British trade goods. (p. 357)

joint-stock company n. a business in which investors pool their wealth for a common purpose, then share the profits. (p. 139)

kabuki [kuh•boo•kee] n. a type of Japanese drama that combines music, dance, and mime. (p. 110)

kaiser [KY•zuh] n. a German emperor (from the Roman title Cæsar). (p. 263)

kamikaze [kah•mih•kay•zee] n. during World War II, Japanese suicide pilots trained to sink Allied ships by crashing bomb-filled planes into them. (p. 511)

Khmer Rouge [roozh] n. a group of Communist rebels who seized power in Cambodia in 1975. (p. 547)

Kristallnacht [krih•STAH•nahkt] n. “Night of Broken Glass”—the night of November 9, 1938, on which Nazi storm troopers attacked Jewish homes, businesses, and synagogues throughout Germany. (p. 502)

Kuomintang [kwoh•mihn•TANG] n. the Chinese Nationalist Party, formed in 1912. (p. 448)

laissez faire [LEHS•ee•FAIR] n. the idea that government should not interfere with or regulate industries and businesses. (p. 300)

land reform n. a redistribution of farmland by breaking up large estates and giving the resulting smaller farms to peasants. (p. 600)

La Reforma [lah•reh•FAWR•mah] n. a liberal reform movement in 19th-century Mexico, led by Benito Juárez. (p. 390)

League of Nations n. an international association formed after World War I with the goal of keeping peace among nations. (p. 425)

lebensraum [LAY•buhns•ROWM] n. “living space”—the additional territory that, according to Adolf Hitler, Germany needed because it was overcrowded. (p. 478)

Legislative [LEHJ•ih•SLAY•thuhv] Assembly n. a French congress with the power to create laws and approve declarations of war, established by the Constitution of 1791. (p. 223)

legitimacy [luh•JIHT•uh•muh•see] n. the hereditary right of a monarch to rule. (p. 239)

liberals n. in the first half of the 19th century, those Europeans—mainly middle-class business leaders and merchants—who wanted to give more political power to elected parliament. (p. 253)

Long March n. a 6,000-mile journey made in 1934–1935 by Chinese Communists fleeing from Jiang Jieshi’s Nationalist forces. (p. 452)

Lutheran [LOO•thuh•uh] n. a member of a Protestant church founded on the teachings of Martin Luther. (p. 56)

lycée [lee•SAY] n. a state-run public school in France. (p. 230)

Manchus [MAN•chooz] n. a people, native to Manchuria, who ruled China during the Qing dynasty (1644–1912). (p. 105)
manifest destiny n. the idea, popular among mid-19th-century Americans, that it was the right and the duty of the United States to rule North America from the Atlantic Ocean to the Pacific Ocean. (p. 324)

Maori [MOW•ree] n. a member of a Polynesian people who settled in New Zealand around A.D. 800. (p. 318)

Marshall Plan n. a U.S. program of economic aid to European countries to help them rebuild after World War II. (p. 534)

martial [MAHR•shuhl] law n. a temporary rule by military authorities over a civilian population, usually imposed in times of war or civil unrest. (p. 607)

mass culture n. the production of works of art and entertainment designed to appeal to a large audience. (p. 332)

materialism n. a placing of high value on acquiring material possessions. (p. 662)

May Fourth Movement n. a national protest in China in 1919, in which people demonstrated against the Treaty of Versailles and foreign interference. (p. 449)

Meiji [MAY•JEE] era n. the period of Japanese history from 1867 to 1912, during which the country was ruled by Emperor Mutsuhito. (p. 377)

Mein Kampf [MYN KAHMPF] n. “My Struggle”—a book written by Adolf Hitler during his imprisonment in 1923–1924, in which he set forth his beliefs and his goals for Germany. (p. 478)

mercantilism [MUR•kuhn•tie•iz•uhm] n. an economic policy under which nations sought to increase their wealth and power by obtaining large amounts of gold and silver and by selling more goods than they bought. (p. 140)

mestizo [mehs•TEE•zoh] n. a person of mixed Spanish and Native American ancestry. (p. 123)

middle class n. a social class made up of skilled workers, professionals, businesspeople, and wealthy farmers. (p. 291)

middle passage n. the voyage that brought captured Africans to the West Indies, and later to North and South America, to be sold as slaves—so called because it was considered the middle leg of the triangular trade. (p. 135)

militarism [MIHL•uh•riz•uhm] n. a policy of glorifying military power and keeping a standing army always prepared for war. (p. 408)

Ming Dynasty n. a Chinese dynasty that ruled from 1368 to 1644. (p. 102)

Monroe Doctrine n. a U.S. policy of opposition to European interference in Latin America, announced by President James Monroe in 1823. (p. 384)

Mughal [MOO•guhl] n. one of the nomads who invaded the Indian subcontinent in the 16th century and established a powerful empire there. (p. 82)

mujahideen [moo•jah•heh•DEEN] n. in Afghanistan, holy warriors who banded together to fight the Soviet-supported government in the late 1970s. (p. 592)

mulattos [mu•LAT•ohz] n. persons of mixed European and African ancestry. (p. 248)

Munich [MYOO•nihk] Conference n. a 1938 meeting of representatives from Britain, France, Italy, and Germany, at which Britain and France agreed to allow Nazi Germany to annex part of Czechoslovakia in return for Adolf Hitler’s pledge to respect Czechoslovakia’s new borders. (p. 485)

Muslim League n. an organization formed in 1906 to protect the interests of India’s Muslims, which later proposed that India be divided into separate Muslim and Hindu nations. (p. 563)

Napoleonic [nuh•POH•lee•AHN•ihk] Code n. a comprehensive and uniform system of laws established for France by Napoleon. (p. 230)

National Assembly n. a French congress established by representatives of the Third Estate on June 17, 1789, to enact laws and reforms in the name of the French people. (p. 220)

nationalism n. the belief that people should be loyal mainly to their nation—that is, to the people with whom they share a culture and history—rather than to a king or empire. (p. 253)

nation-state n. an independent geopolitical unit of people having a common culture and identity. (p. 253)

NATO [NAH•toh] n. the North Atlantic Treaty Organization—a defensive military alliance formed in 1949 by ten Western European nations, the United States, and Canada. (p. 535)

Nazism [NAH•zi•uhm] n. the fascist policies of the National Socialist German Workers’ party, based on totalitarianism, a belief in racial superiority, and state control of industry. (p. 478)

Negritude [NEE•grih•TOOD] movement n. a movement in which French-speaking Africans and West Indians celebrated their heritage of traditional African culture and values. (p. 578)

neoclassical [NEE•oh•KLAS•uh•kuhl] adj. relating to a simple, elegant style (based on ideas and themes from ancient Greece and Rome) that characterized the arts in Europe during the late 1700s. (p. 203)

New Deal n. U.S. president Franklin Roosevelt’s economic reform program designed to solve the problems created by the Great Depression. (p. 475)

nonaggression [NAHN•uh•GRESHS•uhm] pact n. an agreement in which nations promise not to attack one another. (p. 491)

nonaligned nations n. the independent countries that remained neutral in the Cold War competition between the United States and the Soviet Union. (p. 548)
Nuremberg [NUR•uh•BURG] Trials n. a series of court proceedings held in Nuremberg, Germany, after World War II, in which Nazi leaders were tried for aggression, violations of the rules of war, and crimes against humanity. (p. 516)

Old Regime [ray•ZHEEM] n. the political and social system that existed in France before the French Revolution. (p. 217)

Open Door Policy n. a policy, proposed by the United States in 1899, under which all nations would have equal opportunities to trade in China. (p. 374)

Opium War n. a conflict between Britain and China, lasting from 1839 to 1842, over Britain’s opium trade in China. (p. 372)

Oslo Peace Accords n. an agreement in 1993 in which Israeli prime minister Rabin granted Palestinian self-rule in the Gaza Strip and the West Bank. (p. 587)

ozone layer n. a layer of the earth’s upper atmosphere, which protects living things from the sun’s damaging ultraviolet rays. (p. 645)

Pacific Rim n. the lands surrounding the Pacific Ocean—especially those in Asia. (p. 362)

Panama Canal n. a man-made waterway connecting the Atlantic and Pacific oceans, built in Panama by the United States and opened in 1914. (p. 387)

partition n. a division into parts, like the 1947 division of the British colony of India into the two nations of India and Pakistan. (p. 564)

paternalism [puh•TUR•uh•LIH•z•uhm] n. a policy of treating subject people as if they were children, providing for their needs but not giving them rights. (p. 347)

patron [PAY•truhhn] n. a person who supports artists, especially financially. (p. 38)

Peace of Augsburg [AWGZ•BURG] n. a 1555 agreement declaring that the religion of each German state would be decided by its ruler. (p. 58)

penal [PEE•nuh] colony n. a colony to which convicts are sent as an alternative to prison. (p. 318)

peninsulares [peh•neen•soo•LAH•rehs] n. in Spanish colonial society, colonists who were born in Spain. (p. 247)

Peninsular [puh•NIH•syuh•luhr] War n. a conflict, lasting from 1808 to 1813, in which Spanish rebels, with the aid of British forces, fought to drive Napoleon’s French troops out of Spain. (p. 235)

perestroika [FER•uh•STROY•kuh] n. a restructuring of the Soviet economy to permit more local decision making, begun by Mikhail Gorbachev in 1985. (p. 613)

perspective [puh•SPEHK•tihv] n. an artistic technique that creates the appearance of three dimensions on a flat surface. (p. 40)

philosophe [FIHL•uh•SAHF] n. one of a group of social thinkers in France during the Enlightenment. (p. 196)

Pilgrims n. a group of people who, in 1620, founded the colony of Plymouth in Massachusetts to escape religious persecution in England. (p. 128)

plebiscite [PLEHB•ih•SVYT] n. a direct vote in which a country’s people have the opportunity to approve or reject a proposal. (p. 230)

PLO n. The Palestine Liberation Organization—dedicated to the establishment of an independent state for Palestinian Arabs and the elimination of Israel. (p. 585)

Politburo [PAHL•ih•BYOOR•oh] n. the ruling committee of the Communist Party in the Soviet Union. (p. 612)

political dissent n. the difference of opinion over political issues. (p. 650)

popular culture n. the cultural elements—sports, music, movies, clothing, and so forth—that reflect a group’s common background and changing interests. (p. 659)

predestination [pree•DEH•uh•NAY•shuhn] n. the doctrine that God has decided all things beforehand, including which people will be eternally saved. (p. 61)

Presbyterian [PREHZ•bih•TEER•ee•uhhn] n. a member of a Protestant church governed by presbyters (elders) and founded on the teachings of John Knox. (p. 62)

PRI n. the Institutional Revolutionary Party—the main political party of Mexico. (p. 603)

proletariats [PROH•lih•TAIR•ee•uhht] n. in Marxist theory, the group of workers who would overthrow the czar and come to rule Russia. (p. 434)

proliferation [puh•LUR•uh•RAY•shuhn] n. a growth or spread—especially the spread of nuclear weapons to nations that do not currently have them. (p. 649)

propaganda [PRAH•uh•GAN•duh] n. information or material spread to advance a cause or to damage an opponent’s cause. (p. 420)

Protestant [PRAHT•ih•stuhnt] n. a member of a Christian church founded on the principles of the Reformation. (p. 56)

provisional government n. a temporary government. (p. 436)

psychology [sy•KAHL•uh•jee] n. the study of the human mind and human behavior. (p. 332)

Puritans n. a group of people who sought freedom from religious persecution in England by founding a colony at Massachusetts Bay in the early 1600s. (p. 128)

Qing [chiung] dynasty n. China’s last dynasty, which ruled from 1644 to 1912. (p. 105)

racism [RAY•shuh•uhm] n. the belief that one race is superior to others. (p. 341)
radicals n. in the first half of the 19th century, those Europeans who favored drastic change to extend democracy to all people. (p. 253)

radioactivity n. a form of energy released as atoms decay. (p. 331)

Raj [rah] n. British rule after India came under the British crown during the reign of Queen Victoria. (p. 360)

rationing [RASH•uh•nihng] n. the limiting of the amounts of goods people can buy—often imposed by governments during wartime, when goods are in short supply. (p. 420)

realism n. a 19th-century artistic movement in which writers and painters sought to show life as it is rather than life as it should be. (p. 266)

realpolitik [ray•AHL•POH•lih•Teek] n. “the politics of reality”—the practice of tough power politics without room for idealism. (p. 261)

recession n. a slowdown in a nation’s economy. (p. 600)

Red Guards n. militia units formed by young Chinese people in 1966 in response to Mao Zedong’s call for a social and cultural revolution. (p. 541)

Reformation [REH•uh•MAY•shuhn] n. a 16th-century movement for religious reform, leading to the founding of Christian churches that rejected the pope’s authority. (p. 55)

refugee n. a person who leaves his or her country to move to another to find safety. (p. 652)

Reign [rayn] of Terror n. the period, from mid-1793 to mid-1794, when Maximilien Robespierre ruled France nearly as a dictator and thousands of political figures and ordinary citizens were executed. (p. 226)

Renaissance [REHN•ih•SAHNS] n. a period of European history, lasting from about 1300 to 1600, during which renewed interest in classical culture led to far-reaching changes in art, learning, and views of the world. (p. 37)

Restoration [REH•uh•RAY•shuhn] n. the period of Charles II’s rule over England, after the collapse of Oliver Cromwell’s government. (p. 182)

reunification [ree•yoo•uh•fih•KAY•shuhn] n. a bringing together again of things that have been separated, like the reuniting of East Germany and West Germany in 1990. (p. 620)

romanticism [roh•MAN•tih•SHIH•shuhn] n. an early-19th-century movement in art and thought, which focused on emotion and nature rather than reason and society. (p. 264)

Roosevelt Corollary [ROH•zuh•VEHHLT KAW•uh•lehr•ee] n. President Theodore Roosevelt’s 1904 extension of the Monroe Doctrine, in which he declared that the United States had the right to exercise “police power” throughout the Western Hemisphere. (p. 387)

Rowlatt Acts n. laws passed in 1919 that allowed the British government in India to jail anti-British protesters without trial for as long as two years. (p. 453)

Russification [RUH•uh•fih•KAY•shuhn] n. the process of forcing Russian culture on all ethnic groups in the Russian Empire. (p. 259)

Russo-Japanese War n. a 1904–1905 conflict between Russia and Japan, sparked by the two countries’ efforts to dominate Manchuria and Korea. (p. 378)

Safavid [suh•FAH•VIHD] n. a member of a Shi’a Muslim dynasty that built an empire in Persia in the 16th–18th centuries. (p. 78)

salon [suh•LAHN] n. a social gathering of intellectuals and artists, like those held in the homes of wealthy women in Paris and other European cities during the Enlightenment. (p. 202)

SALT n. the Strategic Arms Limitation Talks—a series of meetings in the 1970s, in which leaders of the United States and the Soviet Union agreed to limit their nations’ stocks of nuclear weapons. (p. 557)

Salt March n. a peaceful protest against the Salt Acts in 1930 in India in which Mohandas Gandhi led his followers on a 240-mile walk to the sea, where they made their own salt from evaporated seawater. (p. 455)

sans-culottes [sans•kyoo•LAHTS] n. in the French Revolution, a radical group made up of Parisian wage-earners and small shopkeepers who wanted a greater voice in government, lower prices, and an end to food shortages. (p. 224)

Schlieffen [SHLEE•fun] Plan n. Germany’s military plan at the outbreak of World War I, according to which German troops would rapidly defeat France and then move east to attack Russia. (p. 412)

scientific method n. a logical procedure for gathering information about the natural world, in which experimentation and observation are used to test hypotheses. (p. 191)

Scientific Revolution n. a major change in European thought, starting in the mid-1500s, in which the study of the natural world began to be characterized by careful observation and the questioning of accepted beliefs. (p. 189)

scorched-earth policy n. the practice of burning crops and killing livestock during wartime so that the enemy cannot live off the land. (p. 235)

secede [sih•SEED] v. to withdraw formally from an association or alliance. (p. 326)

secular [SEHK•yuh•luhr] adj. concerned with worldly rather than spiritual matters. (p. 38)

segregation [SEH•ruh•GAY•shuhn] n. the legal or social separation of people of different races. (p. 327)

self-determination [SEHL•dih•TUR•muh•NAY•shuhn] n. the freedom of a people to decide under what form of government they wish to live. (p. 424)
sepoy [SEE•POY] n. an Indian soldier serving under British command. (p. 357)

Sepoy Mutiny [MYOOT•uh•nee] n. an 1857 rebellion of Hindu and Muslim soldiers against the British in India. (p. 359)

Seven Years’ War n. a conflict in Europe, North America, and India, lasting from 1756 to 1763, in which the forces of Britain and Prussia battled those of Austria, France, Russia, and other countries. (p. 173)

shah [shah] n. hereditary monarch of Iran. (p. 80)

“shock therapy” n. an economic program implemented in Russia by Boris Yeltsin in the 1990s, involving an abrupt shift from a command economy to a free-market economy. (p. 616)

Sikh [seek] n. a member of a nonviolent religious group whose beliefs blend elements of Buddhism, Hinduism, and Sufism. (p. 85)

skepticism [SKEH•pih•shuh•uhm] n. a philosophy based on the idea that nothing can be known for certain. (p. 163)

social contract n. the agreement by which people define and limit their individual rights, thus creating an organized society or government. (p. 195)

Social Darwinism [DAHR•uh•nuh•tee] n. the application of Charles Darwin’s ideas about evolution and “survival of the fittest” to human societies—particularly as justification for imperialist expansion. (p. 341)

socialism n. an economic system in which the factors of production are owned by the public and operate for the welfare of all. (p. 302)

Solidarity [sah•luh•DAH•ih•tuh•tee] n. a Polish labor union that during the 1980s became the main force of opposition to Communist rule in Poland. (p. 618)

soviet [SOH•vye•ch] n. one of the local representative councils formed in Russia after the downfall of Czar Nicholas II. (p. 436)

Spanish-American War n. an 1898 conflict between the United States and Spain, in which the United States supported Cubans’ fight for independence. (p. 384)

sphere of influence n. a foreign region in which a nation has control over trade and other economic activities. (p. 373)

standard of living n. the quality of life of a person or a population, as indicated by the goods, services, and luxuries available to the person or people. (p. 600)

strike v. to refuse to work in order to force an employer to meet certain demands. (p. 304)

Suez [soo•EHZ] Canal n. a human-made waterway, which was opened in 1869, connecting the Red Sea and the Mediterranean Sea. (p. 354)

suffrage [SUHF•ruh] n. the right to vote. (p. 313)

sultan n. “overlord,” or “one with power”; title for Ottoman rulers during the rise of the Ottoman Empire. (p. 73)

surrealism [suh•REE•uh•luh•nee] n. a 20th-century artistic movement that focuses on the workings of the unconscious mind. (p. 465)

sustainable growth n. economic development that meets people’s needs but preserves the environment and conserves resources for future generations. (p. 646)

Taiping [ty•pihn] Rebellion n. a mid-19th century rebellion against the Qing Dynasty in China, led by Hong Xiuquan. (p. 373)

Taj Mahal [TAH•ZHH muh•HAHL] n. a beautiful tomb in Agra, India, built by the Mughal emperor Shah Jahan for his wife Mumtaz Mahal. (p. 85)

Taliban n. conservative Islamic group that took control of Afghanistan after the Soviet Union withdrew its troops; driven from power by U.S. forces in December, 2001, because of its harboring of suspected terrorists. (p. 592)

Tennis Court Oath n. a pledge made by the members of France’s National Assembly in 1789, in which they vowed to continue meeting until they had drawn up a new constitution. (p. 220)

terrorism n. the use of force or threats to frighten people or governments to change their policies. (p. 653)

theocracy [thee•AHK•ruh•see] n. a government controlled by religious leaders. (p. 62)

theory of evolution n. the idea, proposed by Charles Darwin in 1859, that species of plants and animals arise by means of a process of natural selection. (p. 331)

theory of relativity [REHL•uh•TEE•hee•tee] n. Albert Einstein’s ideas about the interrelationships between time and space and between energy and matter. (p. 463)

Third Reich [ryk] n. the Third German Empire, established by Adolf Hitler in the 1930s. (p. 484)

Third Republic n. the republic that was established in France after the downfall of Napoleon III and ended with the German occupation of France during World War II. (p. 315)

Third World n. during the Cold War, the developing nations not allied with either the United States or the Soviet Union. (p. 548)

Thirty Years’ War n. a European conflict over religion and territory and for power among ruling families, lasting from 1618 to 1648. (p. 169)

Tiananmen [tyahn•ahn•mehn] Square n. a huge public space in Beijing, China; in 1989, the site of a student uprising in support of democratic reforms. (p. 627)

Tokugawa Shogunate [TOH•koo•GAH•wah] n. a dynasty of shoguns that ruled a unified Japan from 1603 to 1867. (p. 110)

totalitarianism [toh•TAIR•ee•uh•luh•nee] n. government control over every aspect of public and private life. (p. 440)
total war *n.* a conflict in which the participating countries devote all their resources to the war effort. (p. 419)

Treaty of Kanagawa [kah•NAH•gah•wah] *n.* an 1854 agreement between the United States and Japan, which opened two Japanese ports to U.S. ships and allowed the United States to set up an embassy in Japan. (p. 376)

Treaty of Tordesillas [TAWR•day•SEEL•yahs] *n.* a 1494 agreement between Portugal and Spain, declaring that newly discovered lands to the west of an imaginary line in the Atlantic Ocean would belong to Spain and newly discovered lands to the east of the line would belong to Portugal. (p. 99)

Treaty of Versailles [vuhr•SY] *n.* the peace treaty signed by Germany and the Allied powers after World War I. (p. 424)

trench warfare *n.* a form of warfare in which opposing armies fight each other from trenches dug in the battlefield. (p. 413)

triangular trade *n.* the transatlantic trading network along which slaves and other goods were carried between Africa, England, Europe, the West Indies, and the colonies in North America. (p. 134)

Triple Alliance *n.* a military alliance between Germany, Austria-Hungary, and Italy in the years preceding World War I. (p. 408)

Triple Entente [ahn•TAHNT] *n.* a military alliance between Great Britain, France, and Russia in the years preceding World War I. (p. 409)

Truman Doctrine *n.* announced by President Harry Truman in 1947, a U.S. policy of giving economic and military aid to free nations threatened by internal or external opponents. (p. 534)

union *n.* an association of workers, formed to bargain for better working conditions and higher wages. (p. 304)

United Nations *n.* an international peacekeeping organization founded in 1945 to provide security to the nations of the world. (p. 532)

Universal Declaration of Human Rights *n.* a 1948 statement in which the United Nations declared that all human beings have rights to life, liberty, and security. (p. 650)

unrestricted submarine warfare *n.* the use of submarines to sink without warning any ship (including neutral ships and unarmed passenger liners) found in an enemy’s waters. (p. 418)

urbanization [UR•buh•nih•ZAY•shuhn] *n.* the growth of cities and the migration of people into them. (p. 289)

U.S.A. Patriot Act *n.* an antiterrorism bill of 2001 that strengthened governmental rights to detain foreigners suspected of terrorism and prosecute terrorist crimes. (p. 658)

U.S. Civil War *n.* a conflict between Northern and Southern states of the United States over the issue of slavery, lasting from 1861 to 1865. (p. 326)

utilitarianism [yuoo•THL•ih•TAIR•ee•uh•NIIHZ•uhm] *n.* the theory, proposed by Jeremy Bentham in the late 1700s, that government actions are useful only if they promote the greatest good for the greatest number of people. (p. 301)

Utopia [yuoo•TOH•pee•uh] *n.* an imaginary land described by Thomas More in his book Utopia—hence, an ideal place. (p. 48)

vernacular [vuhr•NAK•yuh•lur] *n.* the everyday language of people in a region or country. (p. 41)

Vietcong [vee•EHT•KAHNG] *n.* a group of Communist guerrillas who, with the help of North Vietnam, fought against the South Vietnamese government in the Vietnam War. (p. 546)

Vietnamization [vee•EHT•muh•nii•ZAY•shuhn] *n.* President Richard Nixon’s strategy for ending U.S. involvement in the Vietnam War, involving a gradual withdrawal of American troops and replacement of them with South Vietnamese forces. (p. 546)

War of the Spanish Succession *n.* a conflict, lasting from 1701 to 1713, in which a number of European states fought to prevent the Bourbon family from controlling Spain as well as France. (p. 167)

Warsaw Pact *n.* a military alliance formed in 1955 by the Soviet Union and seven Eastern European countries. (p. 535)

Weimar [WY•MAHR] Republic *n.* the republic that was established in Germany in 1919 and ended in 1933. (p. 471)

Western Front *n.* in World War I, the region of northern France where the forces of the Allies and the Central Powers battled each other. (p. 412)

westernization *n.* an adoption of the social, political, or economic institutions of Western—especially European or American—countries. (p. 176)

Zionism [ZY•uh•NIIHZ•uhm] *n.* a movement founded in the 1890s to promote Jewish self-determination and the establishment of a Jewish state in the ancient Jewish homeland. (p. 316)
Spanish Glossary

Aborigine [aborigen] s. miembro de cualquiera de los pueblos nativos de Australia. (pág. 318)

absolute monarch [monarca absoluto] s. rey o reina que tiene poder ilimitado y que procura controlar todos los aspectos de la sociedad. (pág. 160)

Allies [Aliados] s. durante la I Guerra Mundial, las naciones de Gran Bretaña, Francia y Rusia, junto con otras que lucharon a su lado; también, el grupo de naciones —entre ellas Gran Bretaña, la Unión Soviética y Estados Unidos— opuestas a las Potencias del Eje en la II Guerra Mundial. (pág. 411)

Amritsar Massacre [Masacre de Amritsar] s. matanza por tropas británicas de casi 400 indios, reunidos en Amritsar para protestar contra las Leyes Rowlatt. (pág. 454)

Anabaptist [anabaptista] s. en la Reforma, miembro de un grupo protestante que enseñaba que sólo los adultos podían ser bautizados, y que la Iglesia y el Estado debían estar separados. (pág. 62)

Anglican [anglicano] adj. relacionado con la Iglesia de Inglaterra. (pág. 60)

annexation [anexión] s. añadir una región al territorio de una unidad política existente. (págs. 365, 379)

antilex [anular] v. cancelar o suspender. (pág. 58)

anti-Semitism [antisemitismo] s. prejuicio contra los judíos. (pág. 315)

apartheid s. política de Sudáfrica de separación total y legalizada de las razas; prohibía todo contacto social entre negros y blancos. (pág. 609)

appeasement [apaciguamiento] s. otorgar concesiones a un agresor a fin de evitar la guerra. (pág. 483)

armistice [armisticio] s. acuerdo de suspender combates. (pág. 421)

Aryans [arios] s. para los nazis, los pueblos germanos que formaban una “raza maestra”. (pág. 502)

assembly line [línea de montaje] s. en una fábrica, correa que lleva un producto de un trabajador a otro, cada uno de los cuales desempeña una sola tarea. (pág. 330)

assimilation [asimilación] s. política de una nación de obligar o alentar a un pueblo subyugado a adoptar sus instituciones y costumbres. (pág. 347)

Atlantic Charter [Carta del Atlántico] s. declaración de principios emitida en agosto de 1941 por el primer ministro británico Winston Churchill y el presidente de E.U.A. Franklin Roosevelt, en la cual se basó el plan de paz de los Aliados al final de la II Guerra Mundial. (pág. 496)

Atlantic slave trade [trata de esclavos del Atlántico] s. compra, transporte y venta de africanos para trabajar en las Américas. (pág. 133)

Axis Powers [Potencias del Eje] s. en la II Guerra Mundial, las naciones de Alemania, Italia y Japón, que formaron una alianza en 1936. (pág. 483)

balance of power [equilibrio de poder] s. situación política en que ninguna nación tiene suficiente poder para ser una amenaza para las demás. (pág. 238)

The Balkans [Balcanes] s. región del sureste de Europa ocupada actualmente por Grecia, Albania, Bulgaria, Rumania, la parte europea de Turquía y las antiguas repúblicas de Yugoslavia. (pág. 255)

baroque [barroco] s. estilo grandioso y ornamentado del arte, la música y la arquitectura a fines del siglo 17 y principios del 18. (pág. 203)

Battle of Britain [Batalla Británica] s. batallas entre las fuerzas aéreas de Alemania y Gran Bretaña que se libraron sobre el territorio británico entre 1940–1941. (pág. 494)

Battle of Guadalcanal [Batalla de Guadalcanal] s. batalla de la II Guerra Mundial ocurrida en 1942–1943 en que las fuerzas aliadas expulsaron a las fuerzas japonesas de la isla de Guadalcanal en el Pacífico. (pág. 501)

Battle of Midway [Batalla del Midway] s. batalla aérea y naval de la II Guerra Mundial librada en 1941 en que las fuerzas estadounidenses derrotaron a las japonesas en el Pacífico central. (pág. 500)

Battle of Stalingrad [Batalla de Stalingrado] s. batalla de la II Guerra Mundial ocurrida en 1942–1943 en que las fuerzas alemanas perdieron y no lograron capturar la ciudad de Stalingrado en la Unión Soviética. (pág. 507)

Battle of the Bulge [Batalla del Bolsón] s. batalla de 1944–45 en que las fuerzas aliadas repulsaron la última ofensiva alemana de envergadura en la II Guerra Mundial. (pág. 510)

Battle of Trafalgar [Batalla de Trafalgar] s. batalla naval de 1805 en que las fuerzas de Napoleón fueron derrotadas por una flota inglesa al mando de Horacio Nelson. (pág. 233)

Berlin Conference [Conferencia de Berlín de 1884–1885] s. reunión en la cual representantes de las naciones europeas acordaron reglas para la colonización europea de África. (pág. 342)

Bill of Rights [Carta de Derechos] s. primeras diez enmiendas a la Constitución de E.U.A., que protegen los derechos y libertades básicos de los ciudadanos. (pág. 211)

blitzkrieg s. “guerra relámpago”; táctica bélica de ataque sorpresa con aviones rápidos, seguidos de numerosas fuerzas de infantería. (pág. 491)

blockade [bloqueo] s. desplazamiento de tropas o barcos para impedir para evitar la entrada o salida de todo tráfico comercial a una ciudad o región. (pág. 234)

Boer [bóer] s. colonos holandeses que se establecieron en Sudáfrica. (pág. 342)

Boer War [Guerra de los Bóers] s. conflicto de 1899 a 1902 entre los bóers y los británicos por el control de territorio en Sudáfrica. (pág. 344)

Bolsheviks [bolcheviques] s. grupo de marxistas revolucionarios rusos que tomó el control del gobierno ruso en noviembre de 1917. (pág. 434)
Boxer Rebellion [Rebelión de los Bóxers] s. rebelión de 1900 en China contra la influencia extranjera en el país. (pág. 374)
boycot [boycote] s. nibles terratenientes de Rusia. (pág. 174)
brinkmanship [política arriesgada] s. política de amenazar con lanzarse a la guerra en respuesta a una agresión enemiga. (pág. 536)
cabinet [gabinete] s. grupo de asesores o ministros escogidos por el jefe de gobierno de un país para que participen en la toma de decisiones del gobierno. (pág. 183)
Calvinism [calvinismo] s. conjunto de enseñanzas religiosas basadas en las ideas del reformador Juan Calvino. (pág. 61)
Camp David Accords [Acuerdos de Camp David] s. primer acuerdo firmado entre Israel y un país árabe, que luego derivó en el tratado de paz de 1979, en el que Egipto reconoció a Israel como un estado legítimo, e Israel acordó devolver la Península del Sinaí a Egipto. (pág. 586)
capitalism [capitalismo] s. sistema económico basado en la propiedad privada y en la inversión de dinero en empresas comerciales con el objetivo de obtener ganancias. (págs. 573, 734)
Catholic Reformation [Contra Reforma] s. movimiento del siglo 16 en el que la Iglesia Católica intentó reformarse en respuesta a la Reforma protestante. (pág. 64)
caudillo s. dictador militar de un país latinoamericano. (pág. 382)
Central Powers [Potencias Centrales] s. en la I Guerra Mundial, las naciones de Alemania y Austro-Hungría, y las demás que lucharon a su lado. (pág. 411)
Chartist movement [movimiento cartista] s. movimiento de reforma inglés del siglo 19 en que mis miembros de la clase trabajadora pidieron reformas en el Parlamento y en las elecciones, como el voto para todos los hombres. (pág. 314)
checks and balances [control y compensación de poderes] s. medidas para evitar que una rama del gobierno domine sobre las otras. (pág. 211)
CIS [CEI] s. Comunidad de Estados Independientes: asociación de los antiguos territorios soviéticos formada cuando la Unión Soviética se desmembró. (pág. 615)
civil disobedience [desobediencia civil] s. negativa pública y deliberada a obedecer una ley considerada injusta. (pág. 454)
cloning [clonación] s. creación de plantas o animales genéticamente idénticos a plantas o animales existentes. (pág. 639)
coalition government [gobierno de coalición] s. gobierno controlado por una alianza temporal de varios partidos políticos. (pág. 470)
Cold War [Guerra Fría] s. estado de hostilidad diplomática entre Estados Unidos y la Unión Soviética en las décadas siguientes a la II Guerra Mundial. (pág. 535)
collective farm [granja colectiva] s. granja controlada por el gobierno, formada mediante la unión de muchas pequeñas granjas. (pág. 444)
colony [colonia] s. tierra controlada por una nación distante. (pág. 120)
Columbian Exchange [trasferencia colombina] s. trasferencia mundial de plantas, animales y enfermedades durante la colonización europea de América. (pág. 137)
command economy [economía de mando] s. sistema económico en el que el gobierno toma todas las decisiones económicas. (pág. 443)
commune [comuna] s. en la China comunista, granja colectiva en la que mucha gente trabaja y vive junta. (pág. 540)
communism [comunismo] s. sistema económico en el que todos los medios de producción —tierras, minas, fábricas, ferrocarriles y negocios— son propiedad del pueblo, en que no existe la propiedad privada, y en que todos los productos y servicios se comparten por igual. (pág. 303)
Communist Party [Partido Comunista] s. partido político basado en las ideas de Karl Marx y V. I. Lenin; originalmente el Partido Bolchevique ruso. (pág. 439)
Concert of Europe [Concierto de Europa] s. serie de alianzas entre naciones europeas en el siglo 19, ideadas por el príncipe Klemens von Metternich para impedir revoluciones. (pág. 240)
concordat [concordato] s. acuerdo firmado entre Napoleón y el Papa para establecer una nueva relación entre la Iglesia y el Estado. (pág. 230)
Congress of Vienna [Congreso de Viena] s. serie de reuniones en 1814 y 1815 en las cuales los dirigentes europeos trataron de establecer una paz y seguridad duraderas tras la derrota de Napoleón. (pág. 238)
Congress Party [Partido del Congreso] s. importante partido político nacional de India; también se llama Congreso Nacional de India. (pág. 563)
conquistadors [conquistadores] s. soldados, exploradores y aventureros españoles que participaron en la conquista de América en el siglo 16. (pág. 120)
conservatives [conservadores] s. en la primera mitad del siglo 19, los europeos —principalmente los terratenientes y nobles acuñados— que querían preservar las monarquías tradicionales. (pág. 253)
constitutional monarchy [monarquía constitucional] s. monarquía en que el poder del gobernante está limitado por la ley. (pág. 183)
containment [contención] s. política exterior estadounidense adoptada por el presidente Harry Truman a fines de la década de 1940 para impedir la expansión del comunismo creando alianzas con países débiles y ayudándolos a contener los avances soviéticos. (pág. 533)
Continental System [Sistema Continental] s. política de Napoleón de impedir el comercio de Gran Bretaña con la Europa continental para destruir la economía británica. (pág. 234)
corporation [corporación] s. empresa de accionistas que comparten las ganancias pero que no son personalmente responsables de sus deudas. (pág. 297)
Council of Trent [Concilio de Trento] s. reunión de líderes de la Iglesia Católica Romana, convocada por el papa Pablo III, para fallar sobre varias doctrinas criticadas por los reformadores protestantes. (pág. 65)
coup d’etat [golpe de Estado] s. toma repentina del poder político de una nación. (pág. 230)
creole [criollo] s. en la sociedad española colonial, el colono nacido en Latinoamérica de padres españoles. (pág. 247)
Crimean War [Guerra de Crimea] s. conflicto de 1853 a 1856, en el cual el imperio otomano, con ayuda de Gran Bretaña y Francia, frenó la expansión rusa en la región del mar Negro. (pág. 353)
crop rotation [rotación de cultivos] s. sistema que cultiva distintos productos en un campo cada año para conservar la fertilidad de la tierra. (pág. 283)
Cultural Revolution [Revolución Cultural] s. levantamiento de 1966–1976 en China, encabezado por los Guardias Rojos de Mao Tsetung, con el propósito de establecer una sociedad de campesinos y trabajadores donde todos fueran iguales. (pág. 541)
cyberterrorism [terrorismo cibernético] s. ataques por motivos políticos contra sistemas de tecnología informática. (pág. 654)

daimyo s. señor feudal de Japón que comandaba un ejército privado de samurais. (pág. 108)
D-Day [Día D] s. 6 de junio de 1944; día elegido para la invasión aliada de Europa continental durante la II Guerra Mundial. (pág. 510)
Declaration of Independence [Declaración de Independencia] s. declaración de las razones de la ruptura de las colonias americanas con Gran Bretaña, aprobada por el Segundo Congreso Continental. (pág. 207)
demilitarization [desmilitarización] s. reducción de la capacidad bélica de un país que se logra desbandando sus fuerzas armadas y prohibiéndole que adquiera armas. (pág. 516)
democratization [democratización] s. proceso de crear un gobierno elegido por el pueblo. (pág. 516)
Department of Homeland Security [Departamento de la Seguridad del Territorio Nacional] s. agencia federal estadounidense creada en 2002 para coordinar una estrategia nacional integral contra el terrorismo. (pág. 657)
détente s. política de reducir las tensiones de la Guerra Fría, adoptada por Estados Unidos durante la presidencia de Richard Nixon. (pág. 556)
developed nation [país desarrollado] s. nación con las instalaciones necesarias para la producción avanzada de productos manufacturados. (pág. 641)
devshirme s. en el imperio otomano, política de llevarse a los niños de los pueblos cristianos conquistados para entrenarlos como soldados musulmanes. (pág. 76)
dissident [disidente] s. opositor a la política oficial de un gobierno. (pág. 608)
divine right [derecho divino] s. noción de que los monarcas son representantes de Dios en la Tierra y, por lo tanto, sólo le deben responder a él. (pág. 160)
dominion [dominio] s. en el imperio británico, una nación (como Canadá) a la que se permitía gobernar sus asuntos internos. (pág. 318)
dominio theory [teoría del dominó] s. noción de que si una nación cae bajo control comunista, los países vecinos también lo harán. (pág. 544)
Dreyfus affair [caso Dreyfus] s. controversia surgida en Francia en la década de 1890 por el juicio y encarcelamiento del capitán Alfred Dreyfus, oficial judío falsamente acusado de vender secretos militares a Alemania. (pág. 315)
Dutch East India Company [Compañía Holandesa de las Indias Orientales] s. empresa fundada por holandeses a principios del siglo 17 para establecer y dirigir comercio por todo Asia. (pág. 100)

Eastern Front [Frente Oriental] s. en la I Guerra Mundial, región a lo largo de la frontera ruso-alemana donde rusos y servicios pelearon contra alemanes, austriacos y turcos. (pág. 414)
Edict of Nantes [Edicto de Nantes] s. declaración en que el rey francés Enrique IV prometió que los protestantes podían vivir en paz en Francia y tener centros de veneración en algunas ciudades. (pág. 162)
Emancipation Proclamation [Proclama de Emancipación] s. declaración emitida por el presidente Abraham Lincoln en 1862, asentando la libertad de todos los esclavos de los estados confederados. (pág. 326)
emerging nation [nación emergente] s. nación en proceso de industrialización cuyo desarrollo no ha terminado todavía. (pág. 641)
émigré s. quien abandona su país de origen por razones políticas, como los nobles y otros que huyeron de Francia durante los levantamientos campesinos de la Revolución Francesa. (pág. 224)
enclosure [cercado] s. uno de los campos rodeados de cercas o de arbustos que crearon terratenientes británicos ricos en tierras que antes trabajaban los campesinos. (pág. 283)
encomienda s. tierras otorgadas por España a un colonizador de América, con el derecho de hacer trabajar a los amerindios que vivían en ellas. (pág. 123)
English Civil War [Guerra Civil Inglesa] s. conflicto de 1642 a 1649 en que los seguidores puritanos del Parlamento lucharon contra los defensores de la monarquía de Inglaterra. (pág. 181)
enlightened despot [déspota ilustrado] s. uno de los monarcas europeos del siglo 18 inspirados por las ideas de la Ilustración para gobernar con justicia y respeto a los derechos de sus súbditos. (pág. 204)
Enlightenment [Ilustración] s. movimiento del siglo 18 en Europa que trató de aplicar los principios de la razón y el método científico a todos los aspectos de la sociedad. (pág. 195)
entrepreneur [empresario] s. persona que organiza, administra y asume los riesgos de un negocio. (pág. 287)
estate [estado] s. una de las tres clases sociales existentes en Francia antes de la Revolución Francesa; el primer estado era el de la clerecía; el segundo era el de la nobleza; y el tercero era del resto de la población. (pág. 217)

Estates-General [Estados Generales] s. asamblea de representantes de los tres estados, o clases sociales, de Francia. (pág. 219)

ethnic cleansing [limpieza étnica] s. política de asesinatos y otros actos de brutalidad con que los servos quisieron eliminar la población musulmana de Bosnia después de la división de Yugoslavia. (pág. 622)

existentialism [existencialismo] s. filosofía basada en la idea de que el ser humano da significado a su vida con sus decisiones y acciones. (pág. 464)

extraterritorial rights [derechos extraterritoriales] s. exención a los extranjeros de las leyes de un país. (pág. 372)

factors of production [factores de producción] s. recursos —como tierra, mano de obra y capital— necesarios para producir bienes y servicios. (pág. 284)

factory [fábrica] s. construcción amplia en que se manufac­turan productos con maquinaria. (pág. 286)

fascism [fascismo] s. movimiento político que postula una forma extrema de nacionalismo, la supresión de los derechos individuales y un régimen dictatorial de un solo partido. (pág. 476)

favorable balance of trade [balanza comercial favorable] s. situación económica en la cual un país exporta más de lo que importa, es decir, que vende más productos de los que compra en el extranjero. (pág. 141)

federal system [sistema federal] s. sistema de gobierno en el que el poder se divide entre una autoridad central y varios estados. (págs. 211, 607)

“Final Solution” [solución final] s. programa de Hitler de asesinar sistemáticamente a todo el pueblo judío. (pág. 503)

Five-Year Plans [Planes de Cinco Años] s. planes delineados por José Stalin en 1928 para desarrollar la economía de la Unión Soviética. (pág. 443)

Four Modernizations [cuatro modernizaciones] s. serie de objetivos adoptados por el líder chino Deng Xiaoping a finales del siglo 20 con miras al progreso en agricultura, industria, defensa, y ciencia y tecnología. (pág. 626)

Fourteen Points [los catorce puntos] s. serie de propuestas en que el presidente estadounidense Woodrow Wilson esbozó un plan para alcanzar una paz duradera después de la I Guerra Mundial. (pág. 424)

free trade [libre comercio] s. comercio entre naciones sin restricciones o barreras económicas (tales como aranceles). (pág. 642)

French and Indian War [Guerra contra Franceses e Indígenas] s. conflicto entre Gran Bretaña y Francia por control de territorio en Norteamérica, de 1754 a 1763. (pág. 130)

gender inequality [desigualdad de género] s. diferencia entre hombres y mujeres con respecto a riqueza y posición social. (pág. 650)

genetic engineering [ingeniería genética] s. transferencia de genes de un organismo a otro para producir un organismo con nuevos rasgos. (pág. 639)

genocide [genocidio] s. matanza sistemática de todo un pueblo. (pág. 503)

del gazo [guerrero del islam] (pág. 73)

ghettos s. barrios en que tenían que vivir los judíos europeos. (pág. 503)

glasnost s. política soviética de “apertura” a la libre circulación de ideas e información introducida en 1985 por Mijail Gorbachev. (pág 1046)

global economy [economía global] s. todas las interacciones financieras —entre individuos, empresas y gobiernos— que rebasan fronteras internacionales. (pág. 642)

Glorious Revolution [Revolución Gloriosa] s. derrocamiento incipiente del rey Jacobo II de Inglaterra, quien fue reemplazado por Guillermo y María. (pág. 182)

Great Depression [Gran Depresión] s. crisis económica aguda que siguió a la caída del mercado de valores en 1929. (pág. 473)

Great Fear [Gran Miedo] s. ola de temor insensato que se extendió por las provincias francesas después de la toma de la Bastilla en 1789. (pág. 221)

Great Purge [Gran Purga] s. campaña de terror en la Unión Soviética durante la década de 1930, en la cual José Stalin trató de eliminar a todos los miembros del Partido Comunista y ciudadanos que amenazaban su poder. (pág. 442)

green revolution [revolución verde] s. esfuerzo en el siglo 20 de aumentar los alimentos en el mundo entero, a través del uso de fertilizantes y pesticidas, y de la creación de cultivos resistentes a enfermedades. (pág. 640)

guerrilla [guerrillero] s. miembro de una unidad de combate informal que ataca por sorpresa las tropas enemigas que ocupan su país. (pág. 235)

guillotine [guillotina] s. máquina para decapitar con que se hicieron ejecuciones durante la Revolución Francesa. (pág. 226)

habeas corpus s. documento que requiere que un detenido comparezca ante un tribunal o juez para que se determine si su detención es legal. (pág. 182)

haiku s. poema japonés que tiene tres versos no rimados de cinco, siete y cinco sílabas. (pág. 110)
heliocentric theory [teoría heliocéntrica] s. idea de que la Tierra y los otros planetas giran en torno al Sol. (pág. 190)

Holocaust [Holocausto] s. matanza en masa de judíos y otros civiles, ejecutada por el gobierno de la Alemania nazi, antes y durante la II Guerra Mundial. (pág. 502)

Holy Alliance [Alianza Sagrada] s. liga de naciones europeas formada por los dirigentes de Rusia, Austria y Prusia después del Congreso de Viena. (pág. 240)

home rule [autogobierno] s. control sobre asuntos internos que da el gobierno a los residentes de una región. (pág. 320)

humanism [humanismo] s. movimiento intelectual del Renacimiento que estudió los textos clásicos y se enfocó en el potencial y los logros humanos. (pág. 38)

Hundred Days [Cien Días] s. corto período de 1815 en que Napoleón hizo su último intento de recuperar el poder, depuso al rey francés y de nuevo se proclamó emperador de Francia. (pág. 237)

imperialism [imperialismo] s. política en que una nación fuerte buscar dominar la vida política, económica y social de otros países. (pág. 339)

impressionism [impresionismo] s. movimiento de la pintura del siglo 19 en reacción al realismo, que buscaba dar impresiones personales de sujetos o momentos. (pág. 267)

indulgence [indulgencia] s. perdón que libera al pecador de la penitencia por un pecado. (pág. 55)

industrialization [industrialización] s. desarrollo de industrias para la producción con máquinas. (pág. 284)

Industrial Revolution [Revolución Industrial] s. cambio, que comenzó en Inglaterra durante el siglo 18, de la producción manual a la producción con máquinas. (pág. 283)

intendant [intendente] s. funcionario del gobierno francés nombrado por el monarca para recaudar impuestos e impartir justicia. (pág. 164)

International Space Station [Estación Espacial Internacional] s. colaboración patrocinada por Estados Unidos, Rusia y otras 14 naciones para establecer y mantener un laboratorio activo para realizar experimentos científicos en el espacio. (pág. 637)

Internet s. vinculación de redes de computadora que permite a gente de todo el mundo comunicarse e intercambiar información. (pág. 639)

intifada [intifada] s. literalmente, “quitarse de encima”; campañas palestinas de resistencia violenta y no violenta contra Israel. La violencia durante la intifada de la década de 1980 estuvo dirigida a la armada israelí; la violencia durante la intifada de la década de 2000 estuvo dirigida a los civiles israelíes. (pág. 587)

Irish Republican Army (IRA) [Ejército Republicano Irlandés (el IRA)] s. fuerza paramilitar nacionalista que lucha porque Gran Bretaña dé la independencia a la Irlanda del Norte. (pág. 321)

iron curtain [cortina de hierro] s. durante la Guerra Fría, división que separaba las naciones comunistas de Europa oriental de las naciones democráticas de Europa occidental. (pág. 533)

isolationism [aislacionismo] s. política de evitar lazos políticos o militares con otros países. (pág. 484)

janissary [janísero] s. miembro de una fuerza élite de soldados del imperio otomano. (pág. 76)

jazz s. estilo de música popular del siglo 20 concebido principalmente por músicos afroamericanos. (pág. 465)

Jesuits [jesuitas] s. miembros de la Sociedad de Jesús, orden católica romana fundada por Ignacio de Loyola. (pág. 65)

“jewel in the crown” [“joya de la corona”] s. colonia británica de India, así llamada por su importancia para el imperio británico, tanto como proveedor de materia prima como mercado para sus productos. (pág. 357)

joint-stock company [sociedad de capitales] s. negocio en el que los inversionistas reúnen capital para un propósito común y después comparten las ganancias. (pág. 139)

kabuki s. forma de teatro japonés en que se representa una historia con música, danza y mímica. (pág. 110)

kaiser s. emperador alemán (del título romano Caesar). (pág. 263)

kamikaze s. durante la II Guerra Mundial, pilotos suicidas japoneses entrenados para hundir barcos de los Aliados lanzándose sobre ellos con aviones llenos de bombas. (pág. 511)

Khmer Rouge s. grupo de rebeldes comunistas que tomaron el poder en Camboya en 1975. (pág. 547)

Kristallnacht s. “Noche de cristales rotos”: noche del 9 de noviembre de 1938, en que milicianos nazis atacaron hogares, negocios y sinagogas judíos en toda Alemania. (pág. 502)

Kuomintang s. Partido Nacionalista de China, formado en 1912. (pág. 448)

laissez faire s. idea de que el gobierno no debe regular ni interferir en las industrias y empresas. (pág. 300)

land reform [reforma agraria] s. redistribución de tierras agrícolas con división de grandes latifundios y reparto de fincas a campesinos. (pág. 600)

La Reforma s. movimiento de reforma liberal en el siglo 19 en México fundado por Benito Juárez. (pág. 390)

League of Nations [Liga de las Naciones] s. organización internacional formada después de la I Guerra Mundial cuyo propósito era mantener la paz entre las naciones. (pág. 425)

lebensraum s. “espacio vital”: territorio adicional que, según Adolfo Hitler, Alemania necesitaba porque estaba sobrepoblada. (pág. 478)

Legislative Assembly [Asamblea Legislativa] s. consejo creado por la Constitución francesa de 1791, con poder para emitir leyes y aprobar declaraciones de guerra. (pág. 223)

legitimacy [legitimidad] s. derecho hereditario de un monarca a gobernar. (pág. 239)
liberal [libere] s. en la primera mitad del siglo 19, europeo —principalmente empresarios y comerciantes de clase media— que deseaba darle más poder político a los parlamentos elegidos. (pág. 253)

Long March [Larga Marcha] s. viaje de 6,000 millas que realizaron en 1934–35 las fuerzas comunistas de China para escapar de las fuerzas nacionalistas de Jiang Jieshi. (pág. 452)

Lutheran [luterano] s. miembro de una iglesia protestante basada en las enseñanzas de Martín Lutero. (pág. 56)

lycée [liceo] s. escuela pública en Francia. (pág. 230)

Manchu [manchú] s. pueblo originario de Manchuria que gobernó en China durante la dinastía Qing (1644–1912). (pág. 105)

manifest destiny [destino manifiesto] s. idea popular en el siglo 19 en Estados Unidos de que era su derecho y obligación regir Norteamérica, desde el océano Atlántico hasta el Pacífico. (pág. 324)

Maori [maorí] s. miembro de un pueblo polinesio establecido en Nueva Zelanda hacia 800 d.C. (pág. 318)

Marshall Plan [Plan Marshall] programa estadounidense de ayuda económica a países europeos para su reconstrucción después de la II Guerra Mundial. (pág. 534)

martial law [ley marcial] s. gobierno militar temporal impuesto a la población civil, normalmente en época de guerra o de trastornos civiles. (pág. 607)

mass culture [cultura de masas] s. producción de obras de arte y diversión concebidas con el fin de atraer a un amplio público. (pág. 332)

materialism [materialismo] s. alto interés en la adquisición de posesiones materiales. (pág. 662)

May Fourth Movement [Movimiento del 4 de Mayo] s. protesta nacional china en 1919 con manifestaciones contra el Tratado de Versalles y la interferencia extranjera. (pág. 449)

Meiji era [era Meiji] s. período de la historia japonesa entre 1867 y 1912, cuando gobernó el emperador Mutshito. (pág. 377)

Mein Kampf [Mi lucha] s. libro escrito por Adolfo Hitler en prisión (1923–1924), en el cual expone sus creencias y sus ideales para Alemania. (pág. 478)

mercantilism [mercantilismo] s. política económica de aumentar la riqueza y poder de una nación obteniendo grandes cantidades de oro y plata, y vendiendo más bienes de los que se compran. (pág. 140)

mestizo s. mezcla de español y amerindio. (pág. 123)

middle class [clase media] s. clase social formada por trabajadores especializados, profesionales, comerciantes y granjeros acuñados. (pág. 291)

middle passage [travesía intermedia] s. viaje que trajo a africanos capturados al Caribe y, posteriormente, a América del Norte y del Sur, para venderlos como esclavos; recibió este nombre porque era considerada la porción media del triángulo comercial trasatlántico. (pág. 135)

militarism [militarismo] s. política de glorificar el poder militar y de mantener un ejército permanente, siempre preparado para luchar. (pág. 408)

Ming Dynasty [dinastía Ming] s. dinastía que reinó en China desde 1368 hasta 1644. (pág. 102)

Monroe Doctrine [doctrina Monroe] s. política estadounidense de oposición a la interferencia europea en Latinoamérica, anunciada por el presidente James Monroe en 1823. (pág. 384)

Mughal [mogol] s. uno de los nómadas que invadieron el subcontinente de India en el siglo 16 y establecieron un poderoso imperio. (pág. 82)

mujahideen [muyahidin] s. guerreros religiosos afganos que se unieron para luchar contra el gobierno apoyado por los soviéticos a fines de la década de 1970. (pág. 592)

mulatto [mulatos] s. personas de ascendencia europea y africana. (pág. 248)

Munich Conference [Conferencia de Munich] s. reunión en 1938 de Inglaterra, Francia, Italia y Alemania, en la cual Gran Bretaña y Francia aceptaron que la Alemania nazi anexara parte de Checoslovaquia, a cambio de la promesa de Adolfo Hitler de respetar las nuevas fronteras checas. (pág. 485)

Muslim League [Liga Musulmana] s. organización formada en 1906 para proteger los intereses de los musulmanes de India; después propuso la división del país en dos naciones: una musulmana y una hindú. (pág. 563)

Napoleonic Code [código napoleónico] s. sistema extenso y uniforme de leyes establecido para Francia por Napoleón. (pág. 230)

National Assembly [Asamblea Nacional] s. congreso francés establecido el 17 de junio de 1789 por representantes del Tercer Estado para promulgar leyes y reformas en nombre del pueblo. (pág. 220)

nationalism [nacionalismo] s. creencia de que la principal lealtad del pueblo debe ser a su nación —es decir, a la gente con quien comparte historia y cultura— y no al rey o al imperio. (pág. 253)

nation-state [nación Estado] s. nación independiente de gente que tiene una cultura e identidad común. (pág. 253)


Nazism [nazismo] s. políticas fascistas del Partido Nacional socialista de los Trabajadores de Alemania, basadas en el totalitarismo, la creencia en superioridad racial y el control estatal de la industria. (pág. 478)

Negritude movement [movimiento de negritud] s. movimiento de africanos de lengua francesa que celebra el legado de la cultura tradicional africana y sus valores. (pág. 578)

neoclassical [neoclásico] adj. relacionado con un estilo sencillo y elegante (inspirado en ideas y temas de la antigua Grecia y Roma) que caracterizó las artes en Europa a fines del siglo 18. (pág. 203)
New Deal s. programa de reformas económicas del presidente Franklin D. Roosevelt ideado para solucionar los problemas creados por la Gran Depresión. (pág. 475)
nonaggression pact s. acuerdo en que dos o más naciones prometen no atacarse. (pág. 491)
nonaligned nations s. naciones independientes que permanecieron neutrales durante la Guerra Fría entre Estados Unidos y la Unión Soviética. (pág. 548)
Nuremberg Trials s. serie de juicios realizados en Nuremberg, Alemania, tras la II Guerra Mundial a líderes nazis por agresión, violación a las leyes de guerra y crímenes contra la humanidad. (pág. 516)
Old Regime s. sistema político y social que existía en Francia antes de la Revolución Francesa. (pág. 217)
Open Door Policy s. política propuesta por E.U.A. en 1899, que postulaba que todas las naciones tuvieran las mismas oportunidades de comerciar con China. (pág. 374)
Opium War s. conflicto entre Inglaterra y China, de 1839 a 1842, por el comercio inglés de opio en China. (pág. 372)
Oslo Peace Accords s. acuerdos de 1993 cuando el primer ministro israelí, Rabin, otorgó autonomía a Palestina en la Franja de Gaza y Cisjordania. (pág. 587)
ozone layer s. capa de ozono que protege a los seres vivos de los rayos ultravioleta de la luz solar. (pág. 645)
Pacific Rim s. tierras que bordean el océano Pacífico, especialmente las de Asia. (pág. 362)
Panama Canal s. vía marítima que une al océano Atlántico con el Pacífico, construida en Panamá por Estados Unidos y terminada en 1914. (pág. 387)
partition s. división en partes, como la división en 1947 de la colonia británica de India en dos naciones: India y Paquistán. (pág. 564)
paternalism s. política de tratar a los gobernados como si fueran niños, atendiendo a sus necesidades pero sin darles derechos. (pág. 347)
patron s. persona que apoya a los artistas, especialmente, en el aspecto financiero. (pág. 38)
Peace of Augsburg s. acuerdo realizado en 1555 que declaró que la religión de cada Estado alemán sería decidida por su gobernante. (pág. 58)
penal colony s. colonia a donde se mandan convictos como alternativa a una prisión. (pág. 318)
peninsulares s. en la sociedad española colonial, colonos nacidos en España. (pág. 247)
Peninsular War s. conflicto de 1808–1813 en que los rebeldes españoles lucharon con la ayuda de Gran Bretaña para expulsar de España las tropas de Napoleón. (pág. 235)
perestroika s. reestructuración de la economía soviética para permitir mayor poder de decisión local, iniciada por Mijail Gorbachev en 1985. (pág. 613)
perspective s. técnica artística que crea la apariencia de tres dimensiones en una superficie plana. (pág. 40)
philosophe s. miembro de un grupo de pensadores sociales de la Ilustración en Francia. (pág. 196)
Pilgrims s. grupo que en 1620 fundó la colonia de Plymouth en Massachusetts para escapar de persecución religiosa en Inglaterra. (pág. 128)
plebiscite s. voto directo mediante el cual la población de un país tiene la oportunidad de aceptar o rechazar una propuesta. (pág. 230)
PLO s. Organización de Liberación Palestina, dedicada a establecer un estado independiente para los árabes palestinos y a la eliminación de Israel. (pág. 585)
Politburo s. comité dirigente del Partido Comunista en la Unión Soviética. (pág. 612)
political dissent s. diferencia de opiniones sobre asuntos políticos. (pág. 650)
popular culture s. elementos culturales—deportes, música, cine, ropa, etc.—que muestran los antecedentes comunes de un grupo y sus intereses cambiantes. (pág. 659)
predetermination s. doctrina que postula que Dios ha decidido todo de antemano, incluso quiénes obtendrán la salvación eterna. (pág. 61)
Presbyterian s. miembro de una iglesia protestante fundada por presbíteros conforme a las enseñanzas de John Knox. (pág. 62)
PRI s. Partido Revolucionario Institucional: principal partido político en México. (pág. 603)
proletariat s. grupo de trabajadores que derrocaría al zar y gobernaría a Rusia. (pág. 434)
proliferation s. crecimiento o expansión, especialmente la expansión de armas nucleares a naciones que actualmente no las tienen. (pág. 649)
propaganda s. información o material distribuido para acercar una causa o socavar una causa opuesta. (pág. 420)
Protestant s. miembro de una iglesia cristiana fundada de acuerdo a los principios de la Reforma. (pág. 56)
provisional government s. gobierno temporal. (pág. 436)
psychology s. estudio de la mente y la conducta humanas. (pág. 332)
 Puritans s. grupo que, para liberarse de la persecución religiosa en Inglaterra, fundó una colonia en la bahía de Massachusetts a principios del siglo 17. (pág. 128)
Qing Dynasty [dinastía Qing] s. última dinastía china; reinó de 1644 a 1912. (pág. 105)

Racism [racismo] s. creencia de que una raza es superior a otras. (pág. 341)

Radical [radical] s. en la primera mitad del siglo 19, el europeo a favor de cambios drásticos para extender la democracia a toda la población. (pág. 253)

Radioactivity [radioactividad] s. forma de energía liberada mediante la descomposición de átomos. (pág. 331)

Raj s. porciones de India controladas por Gran Bretaña de 1757 a 1947. (pág. 360)

Rationing [racionamiento] s. limitación de la cantidad de bienes que la población puede comprar, generalmente impuesta por un gobierno durante una guerra debido a escasez. (pág. 420)

Realism [realismo] s. movimiento artístico del siglo 19 en que los escritores y pintores trataron de mostrar la vida como es, no como debiera ser. (pág. 266)

Realpolitik s. “política de la realidad”; posición política dura que no da lugar al idealismo. (pág. 261)

Recession [recesión] s. descenso de la economía de una nación. (pág. 600)

Red Guards [Guardias Rojos] s. unidades de milicianos formadas por jóvenes chinos en 1966 en respuesta al llamado de Mao Zedong a llevar a cabo una revolución social y cultural. (pág. 541)

Reformation [Reforma] s. movimiento del siglo 16 para realizar cambios religiosos que llevó a la fundación de iglesias cristianas que rechazaron la autoridad del Papa. (pág. 55)

Refugee [refugiado] s. persona que sale de su país a otro país para buscar seguridad. (pág. 652)

Reign of Terror [Régimen del Terror] s. período entre 1793–1794 en que Maximilien Robespierre gobernó a Francia casi como dictador, durante el cual fueron ejecutados miles de personajes políticos y de ciudadanos comunes. (pág. 226)

Renaissance [Renacimiento] s. período de la historia europea de aproximadamente 1300 a 1600, durante el cual renació un interés en la cultura clásica que generó importantes cambios en el arte, la educación y la visión del mundo. (pág. 37)

Restoration [Restauración] s. en Inglaterra, período del reinado de Carlos II, después del colapso del gobierno de Oliver Cromwell. (pág. 182)

Reunification [reunificación] s. proceso de unir dos elementos que estaban separados, como la reunificación de Alemania oriental y Alemania occidental en 1990. (pág. 620)

Romanticism [romanticismo] s. movimiento de principios del siglo 19 en el arte y las ideas que recalca la emoción y la naturaleza, más que la razón y la sociedad. (pág. 264)

Roosevelt Corollary [corolario Roosevelt] s. ampliación de la doctrina Monroe, emitida por el presidente Theodore Roosevelt en 1904, en que declaró que Estados Unidos tenía el derecho de ejercer “poderes policiales” en el hemisferio occidental. (pág. 387)

Rowlatt Acts [leyes Rowlatt] s. leyes, ratificadas en 1919, que los permitían al gobierno británico en India encarcelar a manifestantes por dos años sin juicio. (pág. 453)

Russification [rusificación] s. proceso que obliga a todos los grupos étnicos a adoptar la cultura rusa en el imperio ruso. (pág. 259)

Russo-Japanese War [Guerra Ruso-Japonesa] s. conflicto de 1904–1905 entre Rusia y Japón, causada por el interés de los dos países de dominar Manchuria y Corea. (pág. 378)

Safavid [safávido] s. miembro de una dinastía musulmana shi’a que construyó un imperio en Persia del siglo 16 al 18. (pág. 78)

Salon [salón] s. reunión social de intelectuales y artistas, como las que celebraban en sus hogares señoras acuadas de París y otras ciudades europeas durante la Ilustración. (pág. 202)

SALT s. Conversaciones para la Limitación de Armas Estratégicas: serie de reuniones durante la década de 1970 en que líderes de Estados Unidos y la Unión Soviética acordaron limitar el número de armas nucleares de sus países. (pág. 557)

Salt March [Marcha de la Sal] s. manifestación pacífica en 1930 en India ocasionada por las Leyes de la Sal; Mohandas Gandhi condujo a sus seguidores, caminando 240 millas al mar, donde hicieron su propia sal del agua de mar evaporada. (pág. 455)

Sans-culottes s. en la Revolución Francesa, grupo político radical de parisienes asalariados y pequeños comerciantes que anhelaban más voz en el gobierno, bajas de precios y fin a la escasez de alimentos. (pág. 224)

Schlieffen Plan [Plan Schlieffen] s. plan militar alemán al comienzo de la I Guerra Mundial, que preveía que Alemania derrotaría rápidamente a Francia y después atacaría a Rusia en el este. (pág. 412)

Scientific method [método científico] s. procedimiento lógico para reunir información sobre el mundo natural, en que se usa experimentación y observación para poner a prueba hipótesis. (pág. 191)

Scientific Revolution [Revolución Científica] s. profundo cambio en el pensamiento europeo que comenzó a mediados del siglo 16, en que el estudio del mundo natural se caracterizó por cuidadosa observación y cuestionamiento de teorías aceptadas. (pág. 189)

Scorched-earth policy [política de arrasamiento de campos] s. práctica de quemar campos de cultivo y de matar ganado durante la guerra para que el enemigo no pueda vivir de las tierras. (pág. 235)

Secede [seceder] v. retirarse formalmente de una asociación o alianza. (pág. 326)

Secular adj. relacionado con lo mundano más que con los asuntos espirituales. (pág. 38)
segregation [segregación] s. separación legal o social de gente de diferentes razas. (pág. 327)
self-determination [autodeterminación] s. libertad de un pueblo para decidir libremente la forma de gobierno que desea. (pág. 424)
sepoy [cipayo] s. soldado hindú bajo el mando británico. (pág. 357)
Suez Canal [canal de Suez] s. canal marítimo que une al mar Rojo y al golfo de Suez con el mar Mediterráneo, cuya construcción terminó en 1869. (pág. 354)
suffrage [sufragio] s. derecho al voto. (pág. 313)
sultan [sultán] s. “jefe supremo” o “el que tiene poder”; título de los gobernantes otomanos durante el auge del imperio otomano. (pág. 73)
surrealism [surrealismo] s. movimiento artístico del siglo 20 que se concentra en el inconsciente. (pág. 465)
sustainable growth [crecimiento sostenido] s. desarrollo económico que satisface las necesidades de la población pero conserva el entorno y conserva recursos para futuras generaciones. (pág. 646)

Taiping Rebellion [Rebelión Taiping] s. rebelión a mediados del siglo 19 contra la dinastía Qing en China, encabezada por Hong Xiuquan. (pág. 373)
Taj Mahal s. bella tumba en Agra, India, construida por el emperador mogol Shah Jahan para su esposa Mumtaz Mahal. (pág. 85)
Taliban [Talibán] s. grupo musulmán conservador que tomó el poder en Afganistán después de que la Unión Soviética retiró sus tropas; expulsado por el ejército estadounidense en diciembre de 2001 por darles amparo a sospechosos de terrorismo. (pág. 592)
Tennis Court Oath [Juramento de la Cancha de Tenis] s. promesa hecha por los miembros de la Asamblea Nacional de Francia en 1789 de permanecer reunidos hasta que elaboraran una nueva constitución. (pág. 220)
terrorism [terrorismo] s. uso de la fuerza o de amenazas para presionar a personas o gobiernos a que cambien sus políticas. (pág. 653)
theocracy [teocracia] s. gobierno controlado por líderes religiosos. (pág. 62)
theory of evolution [teoría de la evolución] s. concepto propuesto por Charles Darwin en 1859 de que las especies de plantas y animales surgen debido a un proceso de selección natural. (pág. 331)
theory of relativity [teoría de la relatividad] s. ideas de Albert Einstein acerca de la interrelación entre el tiempo y el espacio, y entre la energía y la materia. (pág. 463)
Third Reich [Tercer Reich] s. Tercer Imperio Alemán establecido por Adolfo Hitler en la década de 1930. (pág. 484)
Third Republic [Tercera República] s. república establecida en Francia después de la caída del zar Nicolás II. (pág. 436)
Third World [Tercer Mundo] s. durante la Guerra Fría, naciones que no se aliaron ni con Estados Unidos ni con la Unión Soviética. (pág. 548)
Thirty Years’ War [Guerra de los Treinta Años] s. conflicto europeo de 1618 a 1648 por cuestiones religiosas, territoriales y de poder entre familias reinantes. (pág. 169)
Tiananmen Square [Plaza Tiananmen] s. plaza pública en Beijing, China; sede en 1989 de un enorme levantamiento estudiantil en favor de reformas democráticas. (pág. 627)
Tokugawa Shogunate [shogunato Tokugawa] s. dinastía de shogún que gobernó un Japón unificado de 1603 a 1867. (pág. 110)

totalitarianism [totalitarismo] s. gobierno que controla todo aspecto de la vida pública y privada. (pág. 440)
total war [guerra total] s. conflicto en el que los países participantes dedican todos sus recursos a la guerra. (pág. 419)

Treaty of Kanagawa [Tratado de Kanagawa] s. acuerdo de 1854 entre Estados Unidos y Japón, que abrió dos puertos japoneses a los barcos de Estados Unidos y le permitió abrir una embajada en Japón. (pág. 376)

Treaty of Tordesillas [Tratado de Tordesillas] s. acuerdo de 1494 entre Portugal y España que estableció que las tierras descubiertas al oeste de una línea imaginaria en el océano Atlántico pertenecerían a España y las tierras al este pertenecerían a Portugal. (pág. 99)

Treaty of Versailles [Tratado de Versalles] s. acuerdo de paz firmado por Alemania y los Aliados después de la I Guerra Mundial. (pág. 424)

trench warfare [guerra de trincheras] s. forma de guerra en la que dos ejércitos contrincantes luchan detrás de trincheras cavadas en el campo de batalla. (pág. 413)

triangular trade [triángulo comercial] s. red comercial trasatlántica que transportaba esclavos y productos entre África, Inglaterra, Europa continental, el Caribe y las colonias de Norteamérica. (pág. 134)

Triple Alliance [Triple Alianza] s. alianza militar establecida entre Alemania, Austro-Hungría e Italia antes de la I Guerra Mundial. (pág. 409)

Triple Entente [Triple Entente] s. alianza militar entre Gran Bretaña, Francia y Rusia establecida antes de la I Guerra Mundial. (pág. 409)

Truman Doctrine [Doctrina Truman] s. política estadounidense de dar ayuda económica y militar a las naciones libres amenazadas por oponentes internos o externos, anunciada por el presidente Harry Truman en 1947. (pág. 534)

union [sindicato] s. asociación de trabajadores formada para negociar mejores salarios y condiciones de trabajo. (pág. 304)

United Nations [Organización de las Naciones Unidas (ONU)] s. organización internacional fundada en 1945 con el propósito de ofrecer seguridad a las naciones del mundo. (pág. 532)

Universal Declaration of Human Rights [Declaración Universal de Derechos Humanos] s. declaración en que la ONU proclamó en 1948 que todos los seres humanos tienen derecho a la vida, la libertad y la seguridad. (pág. 650)

unrestricted submarine warfare [guerra submarina irrestricta] s. uso de submarinos para hundir sin alerta previa cualquier barco (incluso barcos neutrales y de pasajeros sin armamento) que se encuentre en aguas enemigas. (pág. 418)

urbanization [urbanización] s. crecimiento de ciudades y migración hacia ellas. (pág. 289)

U.S.A. Patriot Act [Ley Patriota de E.U.A.] s. proyecto de ley antiterrorista de 2001 que hizo más fuerte los derechos gubernamentales para detener a extranjeros sospechosos de terrorismo y para procesar crímenes terroristas. (pág. 658)

U.S. Civil War [Guerra Civil de E.U.A.] s. conflicto entre los estados del Norte y el Sur de Estados Unidos desde 1861 a 1865, sobre el asunto de la esclavitud. (pág. 326)

utilitarianism [utilitarismo] s. teoría, propuesta por Jeremy Bentham a fines del siglo 18, de que las acciones del gobierno sólo son útiles si promueven el mayor bien para el mayor número de personas. (pág. 301)

Utopia [Utopía] s. tierra imaginaria descrita por Tomás Moro en su libro del mismo nombre; lugar ideal. (pág. 48)

vernacular s. lenguaje común y corriente de la gente de una región o país. (pág. 41)

Vietcong s. grupo de guerrilleros comunistas que, con la ayuda de Vietnam del Norte, pelearon contra el gobierno de Vietnam del Sur durante la Guerra de Vietnam. (pág. 546)

Vietnamization [vietnamización] s. estrategia del presidente de E.U.A. Richard Nixon para terminar con la participación en la Guerra de Vietnam, mediante el retiro gradual de tropas estadounidenses y su reemplazo con fuerzas survietnamitas. (pág. 546)

War of the Spanish Succession [Guerra de Sucesión Española] s. conflicto de 1701 a 1713 en que varios Estados europeos lucharon para impedir que la familia Borbón controlara a España, como a Francia. (pág. 167)

Warsaw Pact [Pacto de Varsovia] s. alianza militar formada en 1955 por la Unión Soviética y siete países de Europa oriental. (pág. 535)

Weimar Republic [República de Weimar] s. república establecida en Alemania en 1919 que acabó en 1933. (pág. 471)

Western Front [Frente Occidental] s. en la I Guerra Mundial, región del norte de Francia donde peleaban las fuerzas de los Aliados y de las Potencias Centrales. (pág. 412)

westernization [occidentalización] s. adopción de las instituciones sociales, políticas o económicas del Occidente, especialmente de Europa o Estados Unidos. (pág. 176)

Zionism [sionismo] s. movimiento fundado en la década de 1980 para promover la autodeterminación judía y el establecimiento de un estado judío en la antigua patria judía. (pág. 316)
Index

An i preceding an italic page reference indicates that there is an illustration, and usually text information as well, on that page. An m or a c preceding an italic page reference indicates a map or chart, as well as text information on that page.

A
Abacha, General Sani, 695
Abbas the Great (Safavid Shah), 80–81
Abbas, Mahmoud, 589
Aborigines, 318–319, i322
absolute monarchs, 160–161, c184. See also monarchy.
absolute ruler, 161
absolutism, 160–161, c160
Abubakar, Abdulsalam, 608
Acropolis, 495
Addams, Jane, 305–306, i306
Adolphus, Gustavus, 169–170
Afghanistan, 354, 553
169–170
Adolphus, Gustavus, 169–170
absolute monarchs, 160–161, 318–319, 589
Afghanistan, 354, 553

Africa. See also East Africa; North Africa; South Africa; West Africa.
AIDS in, 651
Christianity in, c668
democracy in, 606–611
economic output, 689
ethnic conflict in, 578–579, 695
famine in, 683–684
human rights successes in, 696–697
imperialism in, 193–305
independence of, 578–582
maps

AIDS (acquired immune deficiency syndrome), 611, 651, m651
airplane
Earhart, Amelia, 467
hijacking of, 656
Lindbergh, Charles, 467
as terrorist weapons, 656
in World War I, i416, c520
in World War II, 493–494, 500, 511, i521
Wright brothers, 330, i330, c397
air pollution, 679–680, 682
Akbar, 83–84
Alamo, 389, i389
al-Din, Nasir (Persian ruler), 356, i356
Alexander II (Russian czar), 257
Alexander III (Russian czar), 257, 433, i433
Algeria
FLN ( Algerian National Liberation Front), 581
independence of, 581
resistance to French rule, 438, 581
Allah, 15
Allies
World War I, 411, m412, 417
World War II, 492–493, 496, 500, 506–513
alphabets,
in Focus on Virginia, 450
al-Qaeda, 655
alternative fuel cars, i682
“America.” See Americas, the; United States.
American Revolution, 26–27, 206–211, c272
causes of, 206–207
compared with Russian Revolution, 438
effects of, 207–211
Enlightenment, role of, 207–208, c209
French influence on, 208, c209
Americans, the. See also Aztec civilization;
Inca civilization; North America.
African influence on, 136
colonization of, 120–124
Columbian Exchange, 137–139, i138
economic developments of, 643
European exploration of, 119–124, i121,
127–129
maps
Europeans in, m130
Amerindians, 342, 609
African National Congress (ANC), 609–610
Agunnalo, Emilio, 364
Anglican Church, 17, 60
Angola, 339, 582
animals
extinction of, 646
livestock, 284
annexation, 365, 379
annul, 58
Anschluss, 484
anthrax
effects of, 656–657
September 11 terrorist attack and, 656–657
anti-Semitism, 315–316, 479–480
Kristallnacht, 480, 502–503
antiseptics, c397
antiterrorism bill, 657–658
antiterrorism coalition
Great Britain and, 649
Apartheid, 609–610, 696
appeasement, 483, 485
Aquino, Corazon, 571–572
Arab-Americans
civil rights of, 657
Arabia. See Saudi Arabia.
Arafat, Yasser, 585, 589
architecture
Akbar period of, 84
baroque, 203
of government, i48
Mughal Empire, 84–85, i86, 188
neoclassical, 203
Argentina
democracy in, 605
“Evita” ( Eva Perón), 605, i605
and Falkland Islands, 605
fascism in, i480
independence of, 249
Perón, Juan, i480
604–605
aristocracy, 5
Aristotle, 8, 29, 189
Armenian Massacre, 410
armistice ( World War I), 421
arms
control, 613
conventional, 690
race, 408, 613
trade, 690–691
Arnold, Gloria Macapagal, i671
art. See also drama; painting;
propaganda; sculpture.
Australian, i322
Catholic, 54, i65
Christian, i704
Dutch, 159, i159
Enlightenment values in, 203
Flemish, 47, 147
French, 267, i269
during French Revolution, i231
artifacts, i147
Aryans
and Nazi philosophy, 502, 504
Asante, i336
Asia
aggression in (1931–1937), m483, 498
“East Asia for the Asians,” 498
imperialism in, 362–364, 371–374
independence, 568–569
poverty levels in 2002, c680
assembly line, 330, i330
assimilation, 347
astrolabe, 96
astronomy
Ptolemy, 189
and Scientific Revolution, 190–191
Atahualpa, 122, i123
Athens, 5–9
Atlantic Charter, 496
Atlantic slave trade, 132–136.
See also slavery; slaves.
atomic bomb, i521
Cortés’ conquest of, i118, 122
aviation, i416
Axis Powers, 483–485
Azerbaijan, 590–591
Aztec civilization
Cortés’ conquest of, i118, 122
Babur, 82
Bacon, Francis, 192
balance of power, 238
in 1800s, 238–239, 263
Balboa, Vasco Núñez de, 120
Balfour Declaration, 583
Balkans
under Ottoman Empire, 74
in World War I, 407, 409
in World War II, 495
Baltic nations
in World War II, 491–492
Bangladesh, 568–569
Barak, Ehud, 588
baroque style, 203
baseball, international, 660
Batelle, storming of, 28, 220–221, i220
Bataan Death March, 498
battle
Adowa, 349
Austerlitz, 231, m232
Britain, 494
the Bulge, 510–511
Chaldiran, 80
Guadalcanal, 501
Hastings, 18
Marne, 412
Midway, 500
Peninsular, 235
Stalingrad, 507
Trafalgar, m322, 233
Beccaria, Cesare Bonesana, 198
Beethoven, Ludwig van, 203, 265, i265
Begin, Menachem, 586
Belgium
Congo, colony of, 340, 581
Industrial Revolution in, 298
in World War II, 492
Bell, Alexander Graham, 328
Bella, Ahmed Ben, 581
Bentham, Jeremy, 301
Berlin
ailift, 535, i535
Conference, 342
division, 534–535
Wall, 535, 619–620, i619
Blotto, Ali, i567, 568
Blutto, Benazir, i567, 568
Biafra, 607–608
Bible
as basis of truth, c57, i705
Gutenberg, 50
Hebrew, 12
King James, 180
Protestant, 17, c57
Roman Catholic, c57
Biko, Stephen, 609
Bill of Rights
English, 23, 183, 185, 275
South African, 610
United States, 211, i211
bin Laden, Osama, 657
as head of al-Qaeda, 593, 656
biological weapons. See weapons, of mass destruction.
bribery, 685
Bismarck, Otto von, 261–262, i262, 271, 408
Black Death. See bubonic plague.
Blair, Tony, 692, i683
blitzkrieg, 491, i521
blockade, 234
“Bloody Sunday,” 435, i435
Boccaccio, Giovanni, 42
Boers, 342, 344
Boer War, 344
Bohemia, 169, 171
Bohr, Niels, 332
Boleyn, Anne, 59, i59
Bolivar, Simón, 243, 249, i249, i250, i277
Bolshevik Revolution, 436–437, c437
Bolsheviks, 434, 436–437, 439
Bonaparte, Napoleon. See Napoleon I.
books
burning of, 65, 479
history of making, 50
Bosnia, 409–410, 622, 624, i630
Bosnia-Herzegovina, 622, 624
“Boston Tea Party,” 207
Bourbon dynasty, 162–163, 167
bourgeoisie, 217, 302
Boxer Rebellion, 234–235, i375
boyars, 174–175
Boyle, Robert, 194
Braque, Georges, 465
Brasilia, 600
Brazil
Amazon region, 678
da Silva, Luiz Inacio Lula, 602
destruction of rain forests, 680–681, c680
economy, 1382, 600, 602, c602 688
independence of, 241, 252, 600
indians of, 132
land reform in, 600
military dictatorship in, 600
national debt, 688
Portuguese in, 123, 133
Vargas, Getulio, 600
in World War I, m418
Brezhnev, Leonid, 555
brinkmanship, 536, 556
Britain
American colonies of, 25–26, 128–131,
206–207
Anglo-Saxons, 18
army, 414
Atlantic Charter, 496
colonies of, 128–131, 206, 317–319,
357–361, 363
common law, 19
development of legal system, 18–23
East India Company, 101, 357, 359–360
English Civil War, 21, 181, m182, c272

Index
Buddhism, 1702–703, c714
in Japan, i113
in Sri Lanka, 569
as world religion, 702–703
Zen, i113
Burke, Edmund, 228
Burma, 363, 572–573
Bush, George W., 692–693, i693
anti-terrorism bill and, 658
“road map” (Middle East peace plan), 589
war against terrorism and, 657
Byzantine Empire
Turkish rule in, 73
Cabinet, 183
Cajuns, m318
Calendar
under Robespierre, 226
Calvinism, 61–62
in Germany, m63
in Netherlands, 62, m63
Calvinist church, 17
Calvin, John, 61–62, i62
Cambodia
Khmer Rouge, i546, 547, 695
Camp David Accords, 586
Canada, m318
Quebec, 127, 317
self-rule of, 317–318
trade and, 128
Cannons, 112, 122
capitalism, 309, 300
compared to socialism, c303
roots of, c303
caravel, 96, i97
Cardoso, Fernando Henrique, 602
Caribbean
colonization of, 129
Carnegie, Andrew, 297
Carter, Jimmy
boycott of 1980 Olympics, 553
and Camp David Accords, 586
and SALT (Strategic Arms Limitation Talks) II, 557
Cartier, Jacques, 127
caste system
of India, i359
Castiglione, Baldassare, 39, i39
Castro, Fidel, 550–551, i551
Catherine the Great (Russian empress), 204–205, i205
Catholic Church
Catholicism. See also Inquisition.
in Spanish Empire, 155, 157
in Spanish Netherlands, 158–159
Catholic League, 169
Catholic Reformation, 64–65
caudillos, 382–383
Cavour, Camillo di, 260
Ceausescu, Nicolae, 621–622
censorship
Nazi, 479
of Roman Catholic Church, 56
in Russia, 433
in Soviet Union, 442–443, 555, 612
under Stalin, 442–443
Voltaire on, 196
Central America
See also Mexico.
United Provinces of, 252
Central Asia, m591, i591
economic struggles in, 590
ethnic and religious strife, 590–591
Central Asian Republics, 590–591
Central Intelligence Agency (CIA), 548
Central Powers, 411, 421
Cervantes, Miguel de, 157–158
Cetshwayo (Zulu king), 342, i342
Ceylon. See Sri Lanka.
CFCs (chlorofluorocarbons), 645
Chaldiran, Battle of, 80
Chamberlain, Neville, 485, i485
Champlain, Samuel de, 127
Chaplin, Charlie, 467, i467
Charles I (English king), 21, 180–181
Charles II (English king), 22, 182
Charles V (Holy Roman emperor), 56, 58, 155
Charles X (French king), 256
Chartist movement, 313–314
Chechnya, 616–617
Checks and balances, 197, 211. See also political ideas.
chemical weapons. See weapons, of mass destruction.
chemistry, 194, c396
Chiapas, 604
Child labor, i282, c290–291, 292, 294, 129, 304–305
in textile factories, i399
Children
Convention on the Rights of the Child, 696
human rights abuses suffered by, 696
in Industrial Revolution, i282, c290–291, 292, 294, 304–305
UNICEF (United Nations Children’s Fund), i683
China. See also names of dynasties. in the 1990s, 627–628
agriculture, 371
air pollution in, 680
army, i627
Boxer Rebellion, 374–375, i375
civil war in, 448, 450, 452, 538–539
and Cold War, 535, 539, 556–557
colonial powers carve up, m369
communes, 540
comunism in, 449–450, 538–541, 625–626
cultural developments, 107
Cultural Revolution, 541, 625–626
economic development, 626, 629
Forbidden City, i104
“Great Leap Forward,” 540–541
and Hong Kong, transfer to, 628–629
isolationism in, 371, 626
Japanese invasion of, 378, 452, i452, 482
last emperor, i430, 448
Long March, 450–452, i51
Mao Zedong, i432, 449–452, 538–541, i540, 625–626, i626
May Fourth Movement, 449
nationalists in, 374–375, 448
Olympics in, 629
Opium War, 372
peasants, 450
People’s Republic of China (mainland China), 539
political developments, 448–450, 629
population, c106, 372
Red Guards, 541, i541
reform in, 375, 625–626, 629
revolution in, 448
social changes, 629
Soviet split with, 540–541, 555–556, 626
special economic zones (SEZs), i372
Taiwan, 539
Tiananmen Square, i449, 627–628, i630
Tibet, 539, 695
and World War I, 417–418, 449
and World War II, 497, 538
chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs), 645
Christian humanists, 48
Christianity, 14–15, i704–705, c714.
See also church; Roman Catholic Church. and Enlightenment values, 24–25, 200
in Japan, 112
Jesus, 14–15
Reformation, the, 16–17
in Roman Empire, 14–15
and science, 191
sects, 56, 60–62
spread of, m14, 15, 96
as world religion, 704–705
Christians
missionaries, 65, 112
in Muslim culture, 15
Roman persecution of, 15
Sudanese persecution of, 695
church. See also Roman Catholic Church.
of England, 21
reform, 16–17
Roman Catholic, 16
Russian Orthodox, 176, 443
on appeasement, 485
and Boer War, i344
“Iron Curtain” speech, 533
at Yalta Conference, i531, 532
CIA (Central Intelligence Agency), 548
CIS. See Commonwealth of Independent States.
cities
and absolute monarchy, 161
Forbidden, i104
growth of, c309
citizens
in ancient Greece, 5–7
in ancient Rome, 10–11
in limited democracy, 7
rights and responsibilities, 7
role in democracy, 5
city-state(s)
Athens as, 5
Greek, 5–7
Northern Italian, c144
civic duty. See citizens.
civil disobedience, 454–455
in India, 455
in Israel, 585, 587–588
civil rights
Arabs and, 657
under dictatorship, c441
civil war(s)
American, 325–326, m326
in Angola, 582
in China, 448, 450, 452, 538–539
English, 21, 181, m182
in Japan, 108
in Lebanon, 587
in Nicaragua, 551
in Nigeria, 607–608
Russian, 437–438, c437
Saint Domingue, 248, 258
Spanish, 483, i484
Cixi (Chinese Dowager Empress), 373–375
Cleisthenes, 7
Clemenceau, Georges, 424, i425
Clinton, Bill, 588
cloning, i47, 289, 659, 661
coalition, 649
coalition government, 470
coop mining, 291, 304
coins, i11
Colbert, Jean Baptiste, 164–165
Cold War, 531–557, m530, c538, 690
1946–1980, c558
in Angola, 582
brinkmanship, 536, 556
China in, 539–540
détente, 556–557
end of, 557, 612, 620
enemies, m529
in Focus on Virginia, 613
hot spots in, m550
NAFTA (North Atlantic Treaty
Organization), 535, 648
nonaligned nations, 546
nuclear threat, 535–536
revolutions during, 550–553
strategies, 535, 548, c549
and Third World, 548–553
time line, c528–529
U-2 incident, 536, 556
Warsaw Pact, 535, 648
collective bargaining, 304
collective farms, 444, 540
colonialism, 687. See also colonies;
imperialism.
British, 128–130, 342, 344, 347–348,
357–361, 363
and capitalism, 139
and democracy, 606
economic, 383–384
effects of, 139–141, 350, 358
German, 348–349
impact on native Americans of, c122
in Latin America, 120–124, 241, 382
of Netherlands, 129
of Portugal, 123
post-World War I, 453–455, 481–482
post-World War II, 548–553, 563–564,
570, 578
resistance to, 125, 348–349
and slavery, 125, 132–136
of Southeast Asia, 362–364
of Spain, 247–248
colonies, 120. See also colonialism.
in Africa and Asia, 453–455, 581
of Belgian Congo, 340, 581
British, 128–129, 131, 206, 317–319,
357–361, 453–455
Dutch, 129–130, 342, 362
French, 127–128, 130, 164, 248, 363, 581
independence of British, 563–569, 579
revolt in French, 248
self-rule of, 317–319, 455
Colonna, Vittoria, 43
Columbian Exchange, 137–139, i138
effect on food of, i138
Columbus, Christopher, 119–120, i120
legacy of, 126
command economy, 443
common law, 19
Commonwealth
of Australia, 319
Commonwealth of Independent States (CIS), 615–616
communes, 540
communications
global, 638–639
Communist Manifesto, The (Marx and Engels), 302–304
computers, 638–639, 675–677
concordat, 230
Confucianism, i712–713, c714
as world ethical system, 712–713
Confucius
Analects, i713
Congo, 340, 581
Democratic Republic of, 581
Congress of Vienna, 238–241
Congress Party, 563
conquistadors, 120–124
Conservatives, 223, 253, 256
Constantinople, 590–591
Ottoman defeat of, 74–75, 175
constitution
first, 181
of Japan, post-World War II, 517
Korean, 544
Mexican, 393, c393
of the Philippines, 572
South African, 610
United States, 26–27, i26, c209, 210–211, 213
constitutional monarchy, 22, 183, 223. See also monarchy.
containment, 533
in South Korea, 542
in Vietnam, 544
Continental System, 234
Contras, 551, 557
conventional arms, 690
Cook, James, 318
Copernicus, Nicolaus, 190–191
Coronado, Francisco Vásquez de, 124, i124
corporation, 297
Cortés, Hernando, 120, 122
cotton
consumption in Britain, c285
in India, 358
in United States, 286
cotton gin, 286
Council of Trent, 65
Counter Reformation. See Reformation,
Catholic; Roman Catholic Church.
coup, 230
coup d’état, 230
deads, 240–241, 247–248, c247
criminal justice, 198
Croatia, 622
Cromwell, Oliver, 21–22, 181–182
Cry of Dolores. See Grito de Dolores.
Cuba
Batista, Fulgencio, 550
Bay of Pigs, 551
Castro, Fidel, 550–551, i551
independence of, 384–385
Revolution, 550
Cuban Missile Crisis, 551, 556
cultural blending, 78–79, c79. See also
global culture.
in Mughal India, i88–89
in Safavid Empire, 80–81
in world, 661–662
cultural identity, 663
Cultural Revolution (China), 541, 625–626
culture(s). See also Africa; Americas, the;
China; India; Japan.
change, 678
convergence of, 677–678
loss of, 678
mass, 332–333, c333
and nationalism, 253, c254
popular, 659–661
Curie, Marie, 331, i331, i397
cybercafé(s), i203
cyberterrorism, 654
Cyrillic alphabet. See alphabet, Cyrillic.
czar(s). See individual names of czars.
Czechoslovakia
in 1990s, 621
democracy in, 480, 621
falls to Hitler, 485
reforms, 621
resistance to communism in, 555
drama.

D
da Gama, Vasco, 98–99
daimyo
Dalai Lama, 539, 695
Dalí, Salvador, i465
Danton, Georges, 226–227, i227
Darwin, Charles, 331, i332
da Silva, Luiz Inacio Lula, 602
da Vinci, Leonardo, 41, i41, i704–705,
Dawes, Charles, 471
D-Day invasion (World War II), 509–510, m510
Decameron (Boccaccio), 42
Declaration of Independence, 26, 207–208
Locke’s influence on, 196, 208
Declaration of Rights of Man, 28, 222
"Deep Blue," 675
deforestation, 680–681, c680
de Gaulle, Charles, 493
de Klerk, F. W., 610, i610
Delhi, 82
Delhi Sultanate, 82
demilitarization, 516
democracy. See also democratic reforms;
government, democratic and repub-
lcan.
1945–present, c596–597
in Africa, 579, 581, 606–611
in ancient Greece, 5–9
in Cambodia, 544
in China, 627–629
and colonial rule, 606
common practices of, c599
comparison of Athenian and United
States, e8
Congress of Vienna and, 238
in Czechoslovakia, 621
direct, 7, 599
in former Soviet Union, 29, 696–697
and French Revolution, 27–28, 218,
220, 222
in Great Britain, 313–314
in India, 565–566
indirect, 10, 27, 599
in industrialized countries, 306
in Japan, 516
in Latin America, 599–605
limited, 7, 606
loss of confidence in, 471, 476–480
monarchy and, 313
movement toward, 29
origins of, m3
post-World War I, 470–472
rise of, 2–3, c3
role of photojournalism in, i630–631
in Russia, 615–617, 697
in South Africa, 29, 696
in South Korea, 544
struggles, 599–631, c632
time line of, c632
and United Nations, 28–29, 694, 697
in United States, 26–27, 183, c209
Western, m511
democratic reforms
in ancient Greece, 7
in ancient Rome, 10–11
in England, 18–23, 183, 313–315
of French Revolution, 28, 220, 222
in Industrial Revolution, 305–306
in Japan, 516–517
in modern world, 1, 568
in revolutionary China, 448, 450
in Russia, 697
in South Africa, 696–697
democratization, 516, 613
Deng Xiaoping, 626–627
Four Modernizations, 626
Department of Homeland Security, i636,
657
de Pizan, Christine, 48, i48
Depression, the, 470–475
causes of, 472–473, c486
effects of, 473–474, c486
and fascism, 476–478
global effects, 473–474
in Japan, 481
life in, i473
and Nazism, 478
recovery, 475
responses to, 474–475
Roosevelt, Franklin D., 475, i475
stock market, 472–473, c472
unemployment during, c474
in United States, 473, 475
Descartes, René, 192
destalinization, 554
d’Este, Isabella, 39, i39
détente, 556–557
developed nations, 641–642
developing nations, c666–667
devishirme, 76
Dias, Bartolomeu, 96, 98
Diaspora, 15, 583
Diaz, Porfirio, 391–392, i391
dictators. See also fascism; Nazism;
individual names of dictators.
in Argentina, i480, 604–605
in Brazil, 600
in Cuba, 550–551, i551
in France, 230–233
in Germany, 477–480
in Italy, 476–477
in Nicaragua, 551
in North Korea, 543
pre-World War II, 476–480
in Russia, 439, 442–445
in Spain, 483
Diderot, Denis, 202
Diem, Ngo Dinh, 544, 546
disease. See also bubonic plague.
of Aborigines, 319
AIDS (acquired immune deficiency
syndrome), 611, 651, m651
in Central Mexico, impact of, c122
in Columbian Exchange, 137–139, i139
germ theory of, 330
during Industrial Revolution, 290
inoculation against, 194
of Maoris, 319
in North America, 122, c122, 131,
137–139
post-World War II, 515
SARS (Severe Acute Respiratory
Syndrome), i636
smallpox, 122, i226, 131, 137, 139, 194
vaccines, 330, 401
during World War I, i419
dissidents, 608
divine right, 20, 160
DNA, 639–640
Dole, Sanford B., 365
dominion, 318
dominion theory, 544
Donatello, 40
Don Quixote de la Mancha (Cervantes),
157–158
drama. See also art.
Chinese, 107
Japanese, 110, i111
Dreyfus affair, 315–316
Dubček, Alexander, 555, i555
due process of law, 20
Duhald, Eduardo, 605
Duma, 436
Dürer, Albrecht, 47
Durham, Lord, 318
Dutch. See also Netherlands.
colonies, 129–130, 342
East India Company, 100, 160, 362
in Southeast Asia, 100–101, 362, 574
Index R65
dynasties. See also empire(s).
Bourbon, 162–163, 167
Ming, 102–105
Qing, 105, 371, 448
Romanov, 175

Earhart, Amelia, 467
East Asia. See also empire(s).
foreign influence in, 371–379
growth in, 573

Eastern Europe
in 1990s, 618–619, 621–624

Eastern Front
in World War I, 414–415
in World War II, 494–496

Eastern Germany. See also Germany.
Berlin Wall, 535, 619–620, i619, i631

Eastern Timor, 1, i1, 29, 574–575, i575

Economics
capitalism, 139, 300–301, c303
communism, 303, c438
environmental impact of, 645–646, 647, 681
factors of production, 284
free trade, 689
growth of modern product, 642, 699
of industrialization, 300–303
inflation, 139, 158, 471
investment capital, 687
issues in the developing world, 687–689
laissez faire, 300–301
Marxism, 302–304, c438
microcredit, 689
multinational corporations, 688
protectionism, 689
regional trading blocs, 689
socialism, 302–304, c303

Economy. See also Economics.
command, 443
crisis in post-World-War-I Germany, 471
global, 642, 644
recession, 600
reform of Russian, 438–439, 617
Soviet, 443–444, c444, 612
technology’s effect on, 641–642

Edict of Nantes, 162, 165

Edict of Worms, 56

Edison, Thomas, 328, i329, 332

Education
and colonial rule, 350, 358
in czarist Russia, 176–177
lycées, 230
in modern China, 629
in Pacific Rim, 363
public, 306, 377
after Sputnik, 536
in totalitarian states, 440, 442

Edward VI (English king), 59

EEC (European Economic Community), 642

Egypt
Camp David Accords, 586
under Ottoman rule, 75
reforms in, 354
relations with Israel, 586–587
Suez Crisis, 584–585

Einstein, Albert, 332, 463, i512
theory of relativity, 463

Eisenhower, Dwight D., 506, 509, i510
during Cold War, 536, 544
domino theory, 544

Elizabeth I (British queen), 21, 49, 59–60, i60

Elizabethan Age
Renaissance in England, 49, i52–53

El Salvador, 252
e-mail, 677

Emancipation Proclamation, i257, 326
emerging nations, 641–642
émigrés, 224
emperor(s). See also individual names of rulers.
China’s last emperor, i430, 448
Chinese, 105–107

Empire(s)
Austro-Hungarian, 410, 529
British, c346, m367
Christian, 102–107, 371–375
French, 233
Holy Roman, 171
Indian, 82–87
Mughal, 82–89
Napoleonic, m215, 231–237
nationalism’s effect on, 253, c254
Ottoman, 73–77, 171, 352–353
Russian, 259
Safavid, 78–81, m91
Spanish, 155–159

Empress. See individual names.

Enclosures, 283

Encyclopedia, 202

Energy
consumption, 681–682
nonrenewable sources of, 681–682
renewable sources of, 681–682

Engels, Friedrich, 302, 304

England. See Britain.

English Civil War. See civil war(s), English.

English language, 661

Enlightenment, 189–211
and American Revolution, 26, 207–208, c209
architecture of, i166, 203
centers of, m187, 196, 202
and French Revolution, 27, 218
impact of, 199–200, 202–205
literature of, 199, 202, 203
music of, 203
Paris during, 196, 202
political ideas of, 24–25, 195–198, c198
and revolution, 24–25, c212, m250
values in, 201, 205–210
women’s contributions to, 199, 202

Enola Gay, i512

Entrepreneur, 287

Environmental challenges
of agriculture, 684
air pollution, 679–670
deforestation, 680–681, c680
depletion of resources, 680–681, 683
energy use, 681–682
Exxon Valdez oil spill, 682
overpopulation, 683–686
global warming, 679, 682
greenhouse effect, 679, 682
solutions to, 682
water shortages, 680

Environmental influences
and decline of Mughal Empire, 87
disease, 122
of economic development, 645–646
geopolitics, 352–353
of global community, 645–646
of Industrial Revolution, 284, 298
and isolationism, 371
in North American colonies, 128–129
on the Renaissance, 37

Epidemics. See also influenza epidemic; smallpox.

Erasmus, Desiderius, 48

Esfahan, 80

Estates (French social classes), 217–218, c218

Estates-General, 27, 219–220

Este, Isabella d’, 39, i39

Estonia, 491, 615

Ethiopia
Haile Selassie, 482
infant mortality rate, c699
life expectancy, c699
Mussolini, attacks by, 482
per capita GDP, c699
resistance movements in, 349

Ethiopian Orthodox Church, i705

Ethnic cleansing. See also Hitler, Adolf.
in Bosnia, 622, i630

Ethnic conflict, 649
in Central Asia, 590–591
in post-colonial Africa, 578–579

EU (European Union), 643

Europe. See also European exploration.
aggression in, 407–408, c482
in the East, m100
and Japan, 111–113, 376–377
maps
1500, m35
1650, m133
1805–1813, war in, m232
1810/1817, m240
1848, revolutions in, m245
1870, industrie in, c281
1914, m405
1931–1939, expansion in, c460–461
post-Thirty Years’ War, 170, m170
post-World War I, 457–463, 470–471
post-World War II, 514–516
religions in (1560), m63
during World War I, 411–420
ancient, 5–9
city-states, 5–9
Council of Five Hundred, 7
democracy in, 5–9
independence of, 255, 352
legacy, 8
Macedonia's conquest of, 8
nationalism in, 255, 352
Peloponnesian War, 8
Pericles, 7–8
philosophers, 8
Solon, 7, 17
values, 7–8
war in, 7–8
in World War II, 495
greenhouse effect, 679, 682
Green Revolution, 640, 684
Grito de Dolores (Cry of Dolores), 251, i271
gross domestic product (GDP), 642
Guam, 498, m499
Guernica (Picasso), i484
guerrillas
in Peninsular War, 235
Vietcong, 546
guillotine, i225, 226
Gulf War, See Persian Gulf War.
Guirion, David Ben, 584
Gutenberg Bible, 50
Gutenberg, Johann, 50

habeas corpus, 22, 182
haiku, 110
Haile Selassie (Ethiopian emperor), 482
Hapsburgs, 163, 171
defeats, 169–170
triumphs, 169
Haussa-Fulani, 348, 607–608
Havel, Vaclav, 621
Hawaii, 364–365
Haydn, Joseph, 203
Hebrew Law, 12–13
Hebrews, 12–13. See also Jews; Judaism.
Abraham, 12
monotheism, 12
Moses, 13, i13
prophets, 13
Ten Commandments, 13, i13
heliocentric theory, 190–191
Helsinki Accords, 557
hemophilia, 435
Henry II (English king), 18
Henry IV (French king of Bourbon dynasty), 162
Henry VIII (English king), 58–59, c58–59
Henry of Navarre, 162
Henry the Navigator, 96, i96, 98
Henry, Prince. See Henry the Navigator.
Herzl, Theodor, 316
Hidalgo, Miguel, 251
hijacking. See airplane, hijacking of.
Hinduism, 1706–707, c714
central ideas of, c707
gods of, c707
sacred cows, 359

in Sri Lanka, 569
Vedas, 1707
as world religion, 706–707
Hindus
conflict with Muslims, 539, 564–565
Hirohito (Japanese emperor), 481, i517
Hiromsha, 512, 513
history
and nationalism, 253, c254
Hitler, Adolf, i478, i487. See also World War II.
anti-Semitism, 479–480, 502
Czechoslovakia, 485
"Final Solution," 503–505
Mein Kampf, 478
and Munich Conference, 485
Poland, 491
Rhineland, 483
rise to power, 477–479
Scandinavia, 492
Soviet Union, 495–496
SS (Schutzstaffell), 479, 504
suicide of, 511
Hobbes, Thomas, 24–25, 195
Ho Chi Minh, 544, i544, 559
Hohenzollerns, 172
Holocaust
Auschwitz, 504, 523
death camps, 504–505, m519
genocide, 503–505
Hitler's "Final Solution," 503
Jewish resistance, 503, i504
Kristallnacht, 480, 502–503
population killed during, c505
Holy Roman Empire
weakening of, 171
home rule, 320
Hong Kong, i4
return to China, 628–629
under British control, 372
Hongwu, 102
Hong Xiuquan, 373
Horta, Jose Ramos, 475
Hormuz, Straits of. See Straits of Hormuz.
house arrest, 573
House of Commons, 20, 313
House of Lords, 313
Hubble Space Telescope, 638
Huguenots, 62, 162–163, 165
Hu Jintao, 628
Hull House, i306
human genome project, i656
humanists
Christian, 48
Petrarch, Francesco, 41–42
humanities, 38
human rights
children's, 696
struggle for, c695
successes, 696–697
women's, 696
Human Rights, Universal Declaration of, 1, 29, 650
human rights violations, 650, 694–696. See also Holocaust; slavery.
in Argentina, 605, 632
Bataan Death March, 498
in Bosnia, 622, 630
of British, 344
in China, 628
death and labor camps of Nazis, m319
in East Timor, 574
in India, 453–454
in Iran, 552
of Japanese, 498
of Khmer Rouge, 547
in Nazi Germany, 502–505
in Nigeria, 608, 6108
in Ottoman Empire, 260
in Romania, 622
in Soviet Union, 442, 545
under Stalin, 442, 445
Hundred Days, 237
Hungary.
modern reforms in, 619
resistance to Communism in, i64, 554
Hussein, Saddam, 552, 649, 692–693

Ibn Saud, 456
Ibo. See Igbo.
Igbo (Ibo), 348
democratic tradition of, m6, 607
Ignatius of Loyola, 64–65
IMF (International Monetary Fund), c644
immigration. See migration.
imperialism, m337, 339–365, 378–379
1850–1925, c356–357
American, 364–365, 384–387
British, 342, 344, 347–348, 354, 355–361
causes of, 340–342
economics of, 342, 383–384
economy, 340
effect of technology on, 399
forms of, 345–347, c346
and government, 345, 347
impact of, 350
and industrialization, 299, 340
Japanese, 378–379
management of, 345–347, c346
resistance to, 342, 348–349, 356
and Social Darwinism, i322, 341
in the Third World, 548–553
views of, 351
and World War I, 407
impressionism, 267
INC (Indian National Congress), 361, 453, 563
Inca civilization.
government of, c144
Pizarro’s conquest of, 122–123
India
1947, m564
Amritsar Massacre, 453–454
British imperialism in, 357–361, 453–455, 563, 565
caste system, i359
Delhi Sultanate, 82
as developing nation, c666–667
during Cold War, 535, 540
Congress Party, 453, 563
economy of, c669
flag of, i668
Gandhi, Mohandas K., 418, i432, 454–455, i453, 563, 565
government of, c668
Government of India act, 455
industry, 566
infant mortality rate, c699
Kashmir, 565, i565
languages of, c668
life expectancy at birth, c699
modern leaders of, 565–566, c567
Mughal Empire, 82–89
nationalist movements, 361, 453–455
nonviolence, 454–455, 563
partitioning of, 564–565
per capita GDP, c699
poverty in, c568
religion, 563–565, c668
Rowlatt Acts, 453
Salt March, 455
self-rule, 455
servants, i359
social issues, 359, 566
women leaders, i85, 566
in World War I, 418
Indian National Congress (INC), 361, 453, 563
Indian Removal Act, 324
Indians. See Native Americans; North America.
Indonesia
during Cold War, 548
independence, 574
indulgence, 55
industrialization, 284, 286. See also Industrial Revolution.
in Belgium, 298
in Britain, 283–288
effects of, c293
environmental effects of, 294, 679–680
in Europe, m281
factors hindering, 298
in France, 256, 298
in Germany, 298
global effects of, 299
and imperialism, 299, 340
in Japan, 377
in Manchester (England), 290, 292, 294
philosophies of, 300–304
reform during, 304–306
reform laws, 304–305
during Cold War, 434
social effects of, 291–292, 299, 305–306
in Soviet Union, 443–444, c444
in Third World, 550
in United States, 295–297
views of, 307
Industrial Revolution, 283–288. See also industrialization.
from 1700–1900, c280–281
causes of, 283–284, 286, 300–301
cultural effects of, 292
economic effects of, 299
effects of, c308
environmental effects of, 294
long-term effects of, 292
Marx and Engels on, 302
political effects of, 299
social effects of, 291–292, 299
technology of, 284–286, i285
inflation, 139, 158
influenza epidemic, i419
information industry, 641–642
Inquisition
of Galileo, 191, i91
Institutional Revolutionary Party in Mexico (PRI), 393, 603–604
intendants, 164
international aid, 687–688
International Space Station (ISS), 637–638, i638
International Monetary Fund (IMF), c644, 687–688
Internet, 639, 677, i677
access to, c639
intifada, 587–589
inventions. See also technology.
age of inventions, c330
airplane, 330, i330
alternative fuel cars, i682
automobile, 328, 330, i330, c397
caravel, 96, i97
cotton gin, 286
and democracy, c335
electronics, i676
and imperialism, 341
of industrial revolution, 284–286, i285, 1286
iris identification, i676
light bulb, 328, i329, c397
microscope, 193
movies, i329, 332–333
MP3 player, i676
phonograph, 328, i328
photography, 266
printing press, i16, 50, i50
radio, 328, c397
Segway Human Transporter, i676
steam engine, 287, 341
telephone, 328, i330, c397, i397, 399
time line of, c396–397
investment capital, 687
Iran. See also Persia.
during Cold War, 552–553
as Islamic state, 552
Khomeini, Ayatollah Ruholla, 552, i552
natural resources of, 552
Pahlavi, Reza Shah, 456
Pahlavi, Shah Mohammed Reza, 552
secular rule in, 552
siege of U.S. embassy in Tehran, 552, 555
war with Iraq, 553


monarchy, 5
  clothing and, i154
  constitutional, 22, 183, 223, 313
divine origin of, 160
  and Enlightenment, 204–205
limited, 183
modern, 183
  after Napoleon I, 239
  in prehistory, i144

Monet, Claude, 267, i269
Monghut (Siamese king), 364
monothéism. See also polythéism.
  legacy of, 15
  of Muslims, Jews, and Christians, 12, 14–15
  in teachings of Jesus, 14
Monroe Doctrine, 384–387
Montaigne, Michel de, 163
Montenegro, 624
Montesquieu, Baron de, 25, 27, 197, i197
Montezuma II (Aztec emperor), 122
Montgomery, General Bernard, 506
More, Thomas, 48, i48
Morelos, Padre José María, 251
Moscow, 236. See also Russia.
  13, i13
Mother Teresa, i650
movies, 332–333
  Chaplin, Charlie, 467, i467
  Hollywood, California, 467
Mozart, Wolfgang Amadeus, 203
MP3 player, 203
Mubarak, Hosni, 587
Mughal Empire
  art of, i88–89
  cultural developments of, 84, i88–89
  decline of, 87
  economic developments of, 83, 85
growth of, m83
  political developments of, 83
Muhammad, 15
  Muhammad Ali (Egyptian king), 354, i354
mujahdeens, 553, 592
mulattos, c247, 248
multinational corporations, 642, c642, 688–689
Munich Conference, 485
music
  African, 136
  classical, 203, 465
  in global culture, 660
  impressionistic, 267
  jazz, 465
  neoclassical, i255
  post-World War I, 465
  rock ’n’ roll, i660–661
  Romanticism and, 265
  Stravinsky, Igor, 465
  vaudeville, 332
Muslim League, 361, 453, 563
Muslims, 15
  conflict with Hindus, 82, 359, 564–565
  extremist groups, 655, 657
  under Soviet rule, 616
  United States’ relations with, 657
Muslim world, 73–89. See also Islam;
  Ottoman Empire.
  empires of, 73–87
  imperialism in, 352–356
  slavery in, 132
Mussolini, Benito, 476–477, i477, i478
defeat of, 507
  and Munich Conference, 485
during World War II, 494, 507

Mutshwito, 376–377, i377
Myanmar. See Burma.

NAFTA (North American Free Trade Agreement), 643
Nagasaki, Japan, i512, 513, 525
Nagy, Imre, i555
Napoleon I, Napoleon Bonaparte (French emperor), 28, 229–237
  allies of, 233
  exile, 237
  nations controlled by, m215, 233
  nations at war with, 231, m232, 233, 235
  restoring order, 230
  Russian campaign, 235–236, m236
  at Waterloo, 237
Napoleon III, Louis-Napoleon (French emperor), 256, 391
Napoleonic Code, 230
National Assembly, 27–28, 220, 222
National Convention, 224, 226
nationalism, 253, c254, 258
  and art, 264
  Asian, 374–377
  Balkan, 255, 409
  Chinese, 374–375, 448
  in Europe, 253–257
  under fascism, 476, c477
  ideal of, 253–255
  impact of, c254
  and imperialism, 340
  Indian, 361, 453–455
  Korean, 379
  Kurdish, 649
  against Napoleon I, 235
  positive and negative results of, c254
  and revolution, 248–252, 255–256
  rise of, 233, 255
  in Southwest Asia, 456–457
  and World War I, 407
nationalist movements, c258
nation-state, 253, c254
Native Americans. See also North America, native.
  colonialism and, 130–131
  slavery of, 123, 125
NATO (North Atlantic Treaty Organization), 535, 648
natural resources. See also environmental influences.
  of Britain, 284
  of Congo, 581
natural rights, 25, 196
  Locke, John, 196, 208
nature. See environmental influences.
Nazis, 478–480, 502–505
Nazism, 478–479. See also Hitler, Adolf; World War II.
  anti-Semitism, 479–480, 502–505
Negritude movement, 578
Nehru, Jawaharlal, 565–566, i566
neoclassical style, 203
Netanyahu, Benjamin, 587
Netherlands, 100
Asian trade with, 100–101
French invasion of, 167
Japanese trade with, 113
republic of, 159
trade in, 101, 160
tulips of, i158
United provinces of, 158–158

New Deal, 475
New England, 128–129
New France, 127–128
New Netherland, 129
New Testament, 14
Newton, Isaac, 24, 192–193, i193
New York City, 656. See also September 11 terrorist attacks.

New Zealand, 318–319, 663
Nicaragua, 252, m550, 551, 557
multinational corporations in, 688
Nicholas I (Russian czar), 257
Nicholas II (Russian czar), 433, 435–436
Nietzsche, Friedrich
and existentialists, 465
Hitler’s use of, 479

Nigeria, 695
in 1914, m347
civil war in, 607–608
under colonial rule, 347–348
democracy in, 608–609
as developing nation, c666–667
dissidents, 608
economy of, c669
flag of, i668
government of, c668
languages of, c668
martial law, 607
religions of, c668

Niger River, 347, m347
Nightingale, Florence, 353
9–11 terrorist attacks. See September 11 terrorist attacks.
1984 (Orwell), i441

Nixon, Richard
in China, 556, i556, 626, i626
and détente, 556
in Soviet Union, 557
and Vietnam, 546

Nkrumah, Kwame, 579

Nobel Peace Prize, i572, i610, i650
Nobunaga, Oda, 108–109
nonaggression pact, 485, 491
nonaligned nations, 548
nonviolence, 454–455
Normandy, Invasion of, 510
North Africa
in World War II, 494–495, 506
North America. See also North America, native.
in 1783, m208
colonization of, 120–124, 127–131
maps, m130
North America, native. See also North America; Native Americans.
colonization of, 120–124, 127–131

North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA), 643, 689
North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO), 535, 648
Northern Alliance, 592
as U.S. allies, 593
Northern Ireland, 321, 655
Northern Renaissance
art of, 46–47, i47
technology of, 50, i50
writers of, 48–49
Northern Korea, 542–544
Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty, 649
nuclear weapons, i512, 691, m691
during Cold War, 535–536
in India and Pakistan, 566
reduction of, 649, 691
in South Korea, 543
Nuremberg Trials, 516
Nur Jahan, 84

Obasanjo, Olusegun, 608–609, i671
Oda Nobunaga, 108–109
oil
in Central Asia, 590
fields, m457
in Iran, 457, 552
in Mexico, 603
in Middle East, 552
in Persia, 355–356
as political tool, 645
in Southwest Asia, 457
supplies, 457

Old Regime, 217
Old Testament, 12–13. See also Bible.
oligarchy, i143

Olympic Games, 677
19th century, 333
boycott of 1980, 553
South Africa banned from, 610
terrorist attack in 1972, 654

OPEC (Organization of Petroleum Exporting Countries), 645
Open Door Policy, 374
Operation Iraqi Freedom, 692–693
Opium War, 692
oppression. See also Holocaust; human rights violations; slavery;
during Cultural Revolution, 541, i541
industrialization and, 294, 304–305
and Nazi rule, 502–505
in post-war Vietnam, 547
in Russia, 473
in Soviet Union, 442–443, 445
in China, 556, i556

Oregon territory, m325
Organization of Petroleum Exporting Countries (OPEC), 645

Osama bin Laden. See bin Laden, Osama.
Oslo Peace Accords, 587
Osman, 73

Ottoman Empire, 73–77, 352–353
1699–1914, m353
in the Balkans, 74, 409
cultural developments of, 77
decline of, 77, 171, 259–260, 352–353
government of, 76
nationalism weakens, 259–260, 352, 409
social organization, 76
sultan, 73
in World War I, 417, 421

overpopulation, 683
and famine, 683–684
solutions for, 685–686
and women’s status, 686

Owen, Robert, 302

ozone layer, 645–646, i646, 679

Pacific Rim, 362
Pahlavi, Mohammed Reza (Iranian shah, post-World War II), 552
Pahlavi, Reza Shah (Iranian shah), 456
Paine, Thomas, 228, i276

painters. See names of individual artists and paintings.

painting. See also art.
Dutch, 159, i159
of Enlightenment, 203
Flemish, 47, i47
French, 267
Guernica, i484
impressionism, 267, i269
Nazi, 479
perspective in, 40, i40
realism in, i269
Renaisance, i36, 40–41, i44–45, 47, i47
Romanticism and, i268
Spanish, 157, i157
St. Petersburg, i435
of van Eyck, i36, 47
of Velázquez, 157, i157

Pakistan
civil war in, 567–568
independence of, 564, 567
leaders of, 568, i567
modern leaders of, 568

Palestine
British rule in, 583
conflicts with Israel, 585–589, 654
Declaration of Principles, 587
independence, 589
intifada, 587–589

Palestinian Liberation Organization (PLO), 585, 587, 589
Panama Canal, 385–387, i386, c395, c397
Pankhurst, Emmeline, 315
Papal States, 261
Paris Commune, i312
Index

parliament
and absolute monarchs, 20–21, 23, 161
and Bill of Rights, 23, 183
British, 20–23, 26, 180–183, 313–314
democracy and, 23, 313–314
effect of democracy on, 314
and English monarchy, 20–21, 23, 180–183, 313
French, 256
Reformation, 58–59
separation of powers, 25
under William and Mary, 23, 183

Partition of India, 564–565
Pasteur, Louis, 330
paternalism, 347
patricians, 10
patrician

Perry, Commodore Matthew, 480, 604–605
Pentagon
September 11 terrorist attack on, 656
perestroika, 613
Pericles, 7–8
Perón, Juan, i480, 604–605
Perry, Commodore Matthew, 376
Persia
becomes Iran, 552
carpet, 91
exploitation of, 355–356
Persian Gulf War, 645, i645
perspective (in art), 40, i40
Peru, 249, 686, 689
Peter I, “Peter the Great” (Russian czar), 175–177, ii75
Petrarch, Francesco, 41–42
Philip II (Spanish king), 155, 157–158
Philippine Islands
Bataan Death March, 498
development of, c666–667
economy of, c669
flag, i668
government of, c668
independence of, 570–571
languages of, c668
Marcos regime, 571–572
religion of, c668
as United States colony, 364
in World War II, 497–498, 511

philosophers
Aristotle, 8, 29
Descartes, René, 192
Hobbes, Thomas, 24–25
of industrialization, 300–305
Locke, John, 24–25
Montesquieu, Baron de, 25, 27
Nietzsche, Friedrich, 465
Plato, 8
Rousseau, Jean Jacques, 25, 27, 197–198, i197
Socrates, 8
philosophes, 196–198, 204
philosophy
development of, 196–198
existential, 464–465
Social Darwinism, i332, 341
photojournalism, i630–631
physics
in Scientific Revolution, 192–193
Picasso, Pablo, 465, i484
pilgrims
religious, 128
Pilgrims, 128
pirates, ii29
Pizarro, Francisco, 122–123, ii23
Planck, Max, 332
Pluto, 8
plebians, 10
plebiscite, 230
PLO (Palestinian Liberation Organization), 585, 587, 589
pogroms, 316, 433
Poland
in 1990s, 618–619
modern reforms in, 618–619
Solidarity, 618
in World War II, 491
Poliburo, 612
political cartoons, i275, i595, i603, i613, i633
political dissent, 650, 694–695
political ideas
of American Revolution, 26–27, c209, 210–211
balance of power, 238–239
checks and balances, 197, 211
civil disobedience, 454–455
development of, 21, 180–181
direct democracy, 7
divine right, 20
during Enlightenment, 24–25, 195–198
equality before the law, 11, 600
of French Revolution, 27, 218, 220
greatest good, 198
importance of the individual, 200
of Machiavelli, i149
monarchy, 5, i144
natural rights, 25, 196
progress, 196
of Russian Revolution, 434, c438
scholarly influence on, 195–200
secret ballot, 319
separation of powers, 25, 197, c209, 211
political persecution. See Holocaust.
political systems. See also democracy;
government.
absolute monarchy, 160–161
aristocracy, 5
autocracy, 433
democracy, 5
direct democracy, 7
fascism, 476, c477
federal system, 27, 210–211
limited monarchy, 183
military state, 600
monarchy, 5, i144
Nazism, 478–479
oligarchy, 5, i145
representative government, 27
republic, 10
republican government, 10
socialism, 302
theocracy, 62
totalitarianism, 440–445, c441
welfare state, 605

politics
global, 663
Pol Pot, 547
polytheism, 12. See also monotheism.
pope(s)
and Galileo, 191, i191
Leo X, 56
Paul III, 65
Paul IV, 65
popular culture
movies, 332–333, 467
music, 660, i660–661
sports, 333, 660
television, 659–660
Western influence on, 661–662
population(s)
of China, c106, 372
of Japan, 510
of Korea, 510
of Japan, 510
of Korea, 510
of China, 510
of Japan, 510
of Korea, 510
of China, 510
of Japan, 510
of Korea, 510
of China, 510
of Japan, 510
of Korea, 510
of China, 510
of Japan, 510
of Korea, 510

Portugal
Angolan colony of, 582
Asian trade with, 98–99
colonies of, 123, 252
in European exploration, 96, 98, 120, 123
Japanese trade with, 111
North American slaves, 133
rivalry with Spain, 99
slave trade of, 98, 132–133
trade with India, 87, 99

Pot, Pol, 547
poverty
in Brazil, 602
predestination, 61
Presbyterians, 17, 62
PRI (Institutional Revolutionary Party in Mexico), 393, 603–604
prime minister, 183
Prince, The (Machiavelli), 42, 69
printing, 116
in China, 50
Gutenberg, 50, i50
Japanese woodblock, i380–381
and Renaissance ideas, 50
printing press, 50, i50
prison reform, 306
production, factors of, 284
proletariat, 302, 434, c438, 439
propaganda
Allied, i423, i429, 509, i509
totalitarian, c441, 442, i487
in World War I, 420, i429
in World War II, 509
prophets, 13
protectionism, 689
protectorate, 345, c346
Protestantism, 16–17, c57
Calvin’s influence on, 61–62
in Spanish Netherlands, 158–159
Protestants, 56, 162
Protestant Union, 169
provisional government, 436
Prussia
alliances of, 173
during the Enlightenment, 204
rise of, 172, 262
psychology
Freud, Sigmund, 332, 463, 464, 465
Pavlov, Ivan, 332
public works projects
during the Depression, 475
purge, 442
Puritans, 21–22
in English Civil War, 181
in “New England,” 128–129
victory over Metacom, 131
Putin, Vladimir, 616–617, i617
Rabin, Yitzhak, 587
racism
in India, 358, 360
and Social Darwinism, i332, 341
Western, 379
radar, 494
Radicals, 223, 253
radio, 328, c397
KDKA, 467
Nazi, 479
radioactivity, 331, c397
railroads
and Indian economy, 358
in United States, 296–297, i296, 327
rain forests, 680–681, i680
Raj, 360
Raphael, i40, 41
Rasputin, 435
rationing, 420, 509
Reagan, Ronald, i557
INF (Intermediate-Range Nuclear Forces) treaty, 613
Berlin Wall speech, 620
in Focus on Virginia, 613
Strategic Defense Initiative, 557
realism, 266–267
realpolitik, 261–262, 556
recession, 600
reconstruction, 326–327
Reconstruction, 326–327
Red Army, 437–438, c437
Red Cross, i685
Red Guards, 437, 541, i541
Red Shirts, 260
Reformation, the, 16–17, 54–67
and absolute monarchy, 59
Catholic, 64–65
causes of, 16, 54–55, c54
characteristics of, 55
effects of, 17, 56–60, 66
indulgences, 55
Luther, Martin, 16, 55–56
Peasants’ Revolt, i17, 57
values in, 17, 55
women in, 60, 62, 64
Reformation Parliament, 58–59
refugees, 652
number of, 1992–2002, c665
regional trading blocs, 689
Reign of Terror, 28, i28, 226–227
religion, 164–165
theology of, 466
religion. See also Buddhism; Christianity; Hinduism; Islam; Judaism.
effect of printing press on, 51
in Europe (1560), m63
and nationalism, c254
reforments, 55–56
world, 700–714
religious affiliations, world’s, c700–701
religious beliefs. See also religion.effects of science on, 191
religious conflict, 649
religious persecution. See also
Christianity; Holocaust; Inquisition.of Christians, 15, 36
in Japan, 112
of Muslims, 622
in Spanish colonies, 125
in Sudan, 695
of Tibetans, 695
under Chinese rule, 695
under Stalin, 443
religious symbolism, 705, c714
religious tolerated, 15
in Austria, 204
in Edict of Nantes, 162
and French Revolution, 222
in Mughal Empire, 83
in Netherlands, 159
in Ottoman empire, 76
Rembrandt (van Rijn), 159, i159, i194
Renaissance 16–17, 24. See also Northern Renaissanceduring the
art, i36, 40, i40, i44–45, 47
British, 49
causes of, 37
characteristics of, 38–39, 41
Chinese, i43
effects of, 51
European, 37–54
Flanders, 46–47
humanism, 38, 48
Italian, 37–43
Leonardo da Vinci, 41, i41, i44–45
literature, 41–43, 48–49
Michelangelo, 41, i41, i44
Northern, 46–51
Petrarch, 41–42
Raphael, i40, 41, i45
topics of, 38
values of, 37–39
women in, 39, i39, 43
“Renaissance men,” 39, i39
“Renaissance women,” 39, i39
representative government, 27
Republic
China, 448
France, 256
Roman, 10–11
United States, 210–211
Republic, The (Plato), 8
Restoration, 22, 182
reunification, 620
revolution(s)
1848, m245
American, i22, 25–26, 206–211, c272
biorevolution, 685
Bolshevik, 436–437, c437
causes of, i274
Chinese, 448
Cuban, 550
Cultural (Chinese), 541, 625–626
democratic (1899), i29
effects of, i276
English, 181–182, c272
and Enlightenment, 24–29, 207–208,
218, m250
failed, 255–256
French, 27–28, i210, 217–227, c272
gene, 685
Glorious, 22–23, 25, 182, c272
Green, 640, 684
in Haiti, 248
tales and, 247, 250
Latin American, 248–252, c273
leaders of, c458
Mexican, 251–252, 392–393
model of, c273
nationalist, 248–252
role of Enlightenment in, 207–208, 218
Russian, 435–438
in Saint Domingue, 231, 248
Scientific, 24, 189–194, c192–193
Southwest Asian, 456
in Soviet Union, 436–437, c437
time line of, c272–273
Rhodes, Cecil, 341, i341
Ricardo, David, 300–301
Ricci, Matteo, 463
Richardson, Samuel, 203
Richard the Lion-Hearted (English
king), 19
Richelieu, Cardinal, 163, i163, 170
Rig Veda, i707
rights and responsibilities. See also
Bill of Rights; constitution.
in Declaration of the Rights of Man,
28, 222
of habeas corpus, 22, 182
Index

Locke's treatise on, 25, 196
in Petition of Right, 21, 180
religious freedom, 196, c198, 204
under Magna Carta, 19–20
Universal Declaration of Human Rights, 1, 29, 650
Rio de Janeiro, 252
roads
during industrial revolution, 287
Robespierre, Maximilien, 226–227, i226, i277
Rockefeller, John D., 297
rock 'n' roll, 297
226–227,
Robespierre, Maximilien, 226–227, i226, i277
Roman Catholic Church, 261–661
Roman Catholic Church, 16. See also church.
in the Americas, 124–125
during French Revolution, 222–223
in Enlightenment, 202
and Galileo, 191
and Huguenots, 62, 163
problems in, 54–55
Reformation in, 64–65
reform of, 55
Romania, 621–622
fall of Communism, 622
Roman Republic, 10–11
legacy of, 11
Romanovs, 10–11
romanticism, 264–265
Rome
Vatican City in, 261
Rommel, General Erwin, 494–495, 506
Roosevelt Corollary, 387
Roosevelt, Franklin D., i475, 497, 511, 533
and atomic weapons, i512
New Deal, 475
at Yalta Conference, i531
Roosevelt, Theodore, 385, 387, i387
Rousseau, Jean Jacques, 25, 27, 197–198, 199
Rowlatt Acts, 453
Roy, Ram Mohun, 361
Russia. See also Russian empire; Russian Revolution; Soviet Union. 1905–1922, m436
Bolsheviks, 434, 436–439
boyars, 174–175
Chechnyan war, 616–617, i616
civil war, m436, 437–438
and Crimean War, 353
democracy in, 615–617
expansion of, 1500–1800, m176, 205
Japanese defeat of, 379
Lenin, Vladimir Ilyich, 420, 434, i434, 436–439
Napoleon I invades, 235–236, m236
nationalism in, 257, 439
Peter the Great, 175–177, i175
reform in, 256–257
revolution in, 435–438
serfs in, 256–257, i257
Stalin, Joseph, 439
and totalitarian state, 442–445
winters of, i178–179
in World War I, 411, 414–415, 420–421, 435
Russian Empire
under Catherine the Great, 204–205
fall of, 259
Rusification, 259
Russian Revolution. See also Bolshevik Revolution.
“Bloody Sunday,” 435, i435
causes of, 433–434
compared with American Revolution, 438
compared with French Revolution, 438
Duma, 436
effects of, 437–438, c437
Kerensky and provisional government, 436–437
March Revolution, 435–436
Rasputin, 435
Red Army, 437–438, i437
soviet, 436, 439
Treaty of Brest-Litovsk, 420, 437
Trotsky, Leon, 437, 439
Rusification, 259
Rwanda, 1582, 650, 695
Sadat, Anwar, 585–587, i586
Sadik, Nafis, 686, i686
Safavid Empire, 78–81, m80
Saint Domingue, 231, 248
St. Peters burg, 177, 435
salons, 202
salt
Salt Acts (India), 455
Salt March, 455
SALT (Strategic Arms Limitation Talks) 1, 557
SALT II, 557, 649
Sandinistas, 551
Sanger, Margaret, 466
San Martin, José de, 249, i249
sans-culottes, 224
Santa Anna, Antonio López de, 388–389, i389
Saro-Wiwa, Ken, i608
Saudi Arabia, 456–457
Scandinavia, 492
Schlieffen Plan, 412–413
Schroeder, Gerhard, 620
science. See also revolution, scientific; technology; tools.
chemistry, 194, c196
cloning, 639–640
gene therapy, 639
geometric engineering, 639
genetics, 331, 639–640
global effect of, 639
impact of changes in, c400
physics, 192–193, 331–332
social, 332
space travel, 637–638
scientific method, 191–192
Bacon, Francis, 192
Descartes, René, 192
old science and new science, c192
Scientific Revolution, 24, 189–194, c192–193
advances in chemistry, 194, c396
advances in medicine, 193–194, i194
tools and inventions, 192
scorched-earth policy, 235
sculpture
neoclassic, 203
Renaissance, 40, i44–45
SEATO (Southeast Asia Treaty Organization), 648
secede, 326
Second Reich, 263
Second World, 548
secular, 38, 200
secular government, 552
segregation, 327
Segway Human Transporter, i676
self-determination, 424
Selim the Grim, 75, 80
Selim II, 77
Selim III, 352
Senate
Roman, 10
Seneca Falls Convention, 335
separation of powers. See political ideas.
sepoys, 357, 359–360
Seychelles, 359–360
September 11 terrorist attacks
anthrax and, 656–657
effect on air travel of, 658
impact of, 656–657
international response to, 663
rescue and recovery efforts, 656
Serbia
in 1990s, 622
Independence of, 622
in World War I, 414
sepsis, 171, 256–257, i257
sextant, i97
Shah Jahan, 85–86
shahs, 80
Shaka (Zulu chief), 342
Shakespeare, William, 49
Sharif, Nawaz, 568
Sharman, Ariel, 568
Shelley, Mary, 265
“shock therapy” (Russian economic plan), 616
Siam, 363–364
Sikhs, 85, 87, 564–565
in Sepoy Mutiny, 360
Silva, Luiz Inacio Lula da, 602
Singapore, 363, i574
independence of, 574
Singh, Manmohan, 566
skepticism, 163
slavery, i133. See also slaves.
African, 132
in the Americas, 132–136
British role in, 133, 167
colonialism, 132–136
effect of industrialization on, 305
middle passage, 135, i135
under Napoleonic Code, 230
of Nazis, 504
Portugal’s role in, 132–133

R76 INDEX
slaves. See also slavery.
African, 132
in the Americas, 132–136
in civil service, 76
native American, 123, 125
in Ottoman Empire, 76
resistance of, 135–136
revolt in Saint Domingue, 231, 248
ships bearing, 135, i315
in the United States, 325–326

Slavic speakers, c623

Slovenia, 622
smallpox, 122, i26, 131, 137, 139, 194
Smith, Adam, 300–301, i301
social classes. See also middle class.
of India, i359
industrialization and, 291–292, 302
of Russian revolution, 434
social contract, 25, 195
in American Revolution, 207
Hobbes, Thomas, 195
Social Contract, The (Rousseau), 25
Social Darwinism, i332, 341
socialism, 302–304
during the Depression, 475
Socrates, 8
soil erosion, 646
Solidarity, 618
Solon, 7, i7
Somoza, Anastasio, 551

South Africa
1948–2000, c611
AIDS epidemic in, 611
all-race election, 610, i631, 696–697
ANC (African National Congress), 609–611
apartheid in, 609–610, 696
civil war, 483, 121, 122–125
conquest patterns of, 123
Native resistance to, 125
fascism in, 483
Franco, Francisco, 483
in Latin America, 241, 247–252, 384
Napoleon’s invasion of, 235
Nationalists, 483
North American colonies of, 120, 122–124, 248–252
reconquesta, 123
Republican, 483
rivalry with Portugal, 99
slave trade of, 133
Spanish Armada
defeat of, m156, 157
Spanish Empire, 155–159
Sparta, 8
special economic zones (SEZs), i372
sphere of influence, 345, c346, 373
Spice Islands, 99, m100, 101
sports
19th century, 333
basketball, 660
history of, 333
Olympic games, 333
soccer, 660
Sputnik, 536, i337
Sri Lanka, 569
Stalin, Joseph, 439, 442–445, i443
art as propaganda, 442, i442
denouncement of, 554
as dictator, 439, 442–445
exile of Trotsky, 439
Great Purge, 442
and Lenin, 439
occupation of Poland, 491
oppression of kulaks, 444, i445
post-World War II, 531–534
religious persecution, 443

Stamp Act, 26
standards of living, 600
Stanley, Henry, 340, i340
“Star Wars” (missile defense), 557
steamboat, 287, c396, i396
steam engine, 287, 341
stocks, 297, 472–473, c472
Strait of Hormuz, 99
Strategic Arms Limitation Talks (SALT), 557, 649
Stravinsky, Igor, 465
strike, 304
Stuart lands, m153
submarines, i414, 418–419
Sudan, 695
Sudetenland, 484
Suez Canal, i355, m355
Egyptian control of, 354–355
Suez crisis of, 584–585
in World War II, 494
suffrage, 313
sugar
in New World territories, 123, 129, 133
and slavery, 129, 133
Suharto (Indonesian president), 574
suicide bombers, 588
Sukarno (Indonesian president), 574
Sukarnoputri, Megawati (Indonesian president), 574–575, i574
Suleyman the Lawgiver, 76–77, i76
sultan, 73
Sun Yixian, 448, i448
Surrealism, 465, i465
sustainable growth, 646, 681
Suu Kyi, Aung San, 572–573, i572
swastika, 478
sweatshops, i697
Sweden, m176, 177
symbols
national, i246
religious, i705, c714
swastika, 478

Taipeing Rebellion, 373, i373
Taiwan
Nationalist China, 539
Republic of China, 539
Taj Mahal, 85, i86
Taliban, i533, 655
destruction of artifacts by, i592
rise and fall of, 592–593, i593
Tamil
Eelam, i569
Tammarlane. See also Timur the Lame.
tariffs, 473–474, 643
technology, 675–678. See also inventions;
scale; weapons,
in 19th century, 328–330, i520
in 20th century, 330, i468–i69, i520–
521, 638
alternative fuel cars, i682
appliances, c469
cellular phones, 677, i678
computers, 638–639, 675–677
and culture, 678
effect on imperialism, 399
effect on workforce, 677
electronics, i676, 677
in European exploration, 96
genetic research, 684–685
global effect of, 638–639, 677–678
impact of, c398
of Industrial Revolution, 284–288, i285
information industry, 639, c639, 677
labor-saving devices, i468–469
mass media, 677
movies, i329, 332–333, 467, 677
of Northern Renaissance, 50
and pollution, 679–680
and popular culture, 659, 678
post-World War I, 466–469, i468–469
printing press, i16, 50, i150
radio, 328, c397, 467
space travel, 637–638
telephone, 328, i330
television, 677
time line of changes in, c396–397
of war, i520–521, 691–692
telephone, 328, i330
television, 677–678
influence of, 659–660
news and, 660
Ten Commandments
as social code, 13
in teachings of Jesus, 14
Ten Hours Act, 305
Tennis Court Oath, 220
terrorism. See also antiterrorism coalition;
global security; terrorist groups; names of specific regions or
countries.
definition of, 653
domestic, 656–658
international, 653
major centers of, 654–655
reasons for, 653
tactics of, 653–654
terrorist attacks. See also September 11 terror-
list attacks.
casualties of, c655
international, c655
in Kenya, 579, 655
in Tanzania, 655
total attacks, c655
in United States, 656–658
terrorist groups
in Africa, 655
in Asia, 655
Aum Shinrikyo, 655
in Europe, 321, 655
in Latin America, 655
in Middle East, 654
Texas Revolt, 325, 388–389
textile industry
in Britain, 284–286, i285, 357
in United States, 295–296
Thatcher, Margaret,
in Focus on Virginia, 613
theater
French, 165
Kabuki, 110, i111
Molière, 165
Shakespeare, 49, i49
theocracy, 62
theory of evolution, 331
theory of relativity, 463
thermometer, 193
Third Reich, 484, 511
Third Republic, 256, 315
Third World, 548–553
modern challenges of, 599–620
three cardinal faults, c703
Tiananmen Square
in 1919, i449
in 1989, i449, 627–628, i630
Tibet
Chinese takeover of, 539
time lines
Africa and Asia, 1850–1925, c336–337
Americas
1500–1800, c106–117
East Asia and Latin America, 1800–1925, c368–369
Europe
1300–1600, c34–35
1500–1800, c152–153
1789–1815, c214–215
1815–1915, c310–311
1914–1918, c404–405
1920–1940, c460–461
Europe and Asia
1400–1800, c92–93
1900–1940, c430–431
Europe and North America, 1500–1800, c186–187
Europe and United States, 1700–1900, c280–281
Latin America and Europe, 1800–1900, c244–245
Muslim World, 1300–1700, c70–71
World
1945–2003, c528–529
1960–2003, c634–635
World Democracies, 1945–2005, c596–597
Timor. See East Timor.
Timur the Lame, 74
Tito, Joseph, 622
tobacco, 356
Tocqueville, Alexis de, 237, 301, 306
Tojo, Hideki,
in Focus on Virginia, 481
Tokugawa Ieyasu, 109–110, 112
Tokugawa Shogunate, 110, 112, c144, i147, 376, 377
tools. See also technology.
of exploration, i97
Torah, 12
Tories, 182
totalitarianism. See also China; dictators;
Nazism; Russia; Soviet Union.
key traits of, c441
life under, 440–442
in Stalinist Russia, 442–445
weapons of, 440
totalitarian state(s)
leaders of, in the 20th century, c441
total war, 419, 522
Töré, Samori, 348
Toyotomi Hideyoshi, 109
trade. See also slavery; trade networks.
 apartheid, restrictions on, 610
balance of, 141
Chinese, 371, 373–374
colonial, 128–130
Columbian Exchange, 137–139, i138
Dutch, 100–101, 160
expansion of free, 642–643
French, 101, 128
global, 139–141
and Industrial Revolution, 299, 300
Japanese, 111, 376
in Pacific Rim, 362–363
Portuguese, 87, 99–100
regional trade blocs, 642–643
regional trading groups, m643
slave, 132–136
Triangular, 134–135, m134
trade networks
African, 339
Trail of Tears, 324–325
Transcaucasian Republics, 590–591
transporization, 287–288
Trans-Siberian Railway, 434
Treaty of Kanagawa, 376
Treaty on the Non-Proliferation of Nuclear
Weapons (NPT), 691
Treaty of Tordesillas, 99
Treaty of Versailles, 424, c427, 449
analysis, 425, 427
Hitler defies, 482–484
trench warfare, 413, i413, 524
triangular trade, 134–135, m134
Triple Alliance, 408–409
Triple Entente, 409
Trotsky, Leon, 437, 439
Truman Doctrine, 534
Truman, Harry, 511, 513, 534, 542
Tull, Jethro, 283
Turkey, Republic of, 456
Kemal, Mustafa, 456, i456
Turks
conflict with Greeks, 255, 259
in World War I, 417, 421
turnpike, 287
Tutu, Archbishop Desmond, 610
Two Treatises on Government (Locke), 25
tyrants, 80
Ukraine, i445
Ulysses (Joyce), 464
unemployment, 473, c473
UNICEF (United Nations Children’s
Fund), i685
Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (USSR),
439. See also Russia; Soviet Union.
unions, 304
unionization, 304
United Kingdom, c346
United Nations, 28–29
ceasefire, 648
compared to Congress of Vienna, 241
Convention for the Elimination of All
Forms of Discrimination Against
Women, 696
Convention on the Rights of the Child, 696
creation of, 532
and human rights, 650, 694, 696–697
inspectors in Iraq, 692
peacemakers, 648
promotion of democracy, 28–29, 694, 697
Security Council, 692
studies on population growth, 686
UNICEF (United Nations Children’s
Fund), 685
weapons inspectors, 692
United States. See also Native Americans;
North America.
Atlantic Charter, 496
Bill of Rights, 183, 211, i211
boycott of 1980 Olympics, 553
in World War II, 496, 506–513
in World War I, 418–420
water shortages in, 680
war with Iraq, 692–693,
war in Vietnam, 544–547,
U-2 incident, 536, 556
and human rights, 650, 694, 696–697
and United States, 544–547
Ngo Dinh Diem, 544, 546
Ho Chi Minh, 544,
and France, 363, 544
and United States, 544–547
Vietnam War, 544–547, m545
Vietnamization, 546
Villa, Francisco “Pancho,” 392
Virginia, m326
Focus on, 450, 481, 613
settlement of Jamestown, 128
State Facts, VA62–VA64
State Maps, VA60–VA61
Voltaire, 196, i196
voting. See also suffrage.
in ancient Rome, 10–11
in Britain, 313–314, c314
in United States, c209
world voter turnout, 1999–2002, c31

Universal Declaration of Human Rights,
1, 29, 650, 694, 697
unrestricted submarine warfare, 418
urban centers. See cities.
urbanization, 289
UruD, 84
USA Patriot Act, 658
USSR (Union of Soviet Socialist
Republics), 439. See also Russia;
Soviet Union.
utilitarianism, 301
utopia, 48, 302
U-2 incident, 536, 556

Vajpayee, Atal Bihari, 566
values
during Enlightenment, 196–198, 201
in Renaissance, 38–39, 46
return to traditional, 663
of Western culture, 662
van Eyck, Jan, i36, 47
Velázquez, Diego, 157, i157
Venezuela, 249, 383, i598
Verdun, 413
Vermeer, Jan, 159
vernacular, 41
Verrazzano, Giovanni da, 131
Versailles
Palace of, 165, i166
Treaty of, 424–427, c427
Vesalius, Andreas, 193–194
Vespucchi, Amerigo, 120
Victor Emmanuel III (Italian king), 260, 477, 507
Victoria (British queen), 314, i314
Victorian Age, 314–315
Vietcong, 546
Vietnam
“boat people,” 547
capitalism in, i547
divided country, 544
dominio theory, 544
and France, 363, 544
Ho Chi Minh, 544, i544, 559
Ngo Dinh Diem, 544, 546
and United States, 544–547
Vietnam War, 544–547, i545, m545
Vietnamization, 546
Walesa, Lech, 618–619

Waalwijk, 108
Waltz, 127
wartime
in Afghanistan, 632–637
in Iraq, 532
Bush administration and, 657
in Iraq, 636
war. See also civil war(s); empire(s); tech-
nology; war against terrorism.
of 1812, 295
American Revolutionary, 206–211
Arab-Israeli, 584–585
of the Austrian Succession, 173
Boer, 344
in Bosnia, 622, i630
Chechnyan, 616–617
Cold, 533–536
Crimean, 353
English Civil, 181, m182
French and Indian, 130, 207
Franco-Prussian, 262
Korean, 542–543
Mexican-American, 325
in Nicaragua, 551
Opium, 372
Peninsular, 235
Persian Gulf, 645, i645
Seven Weeks’, 252
Seven Years’, 25, 173
Sino-Japanese, 378
Six-Day, 585
slave trade in, 132
Spanish-American, 384–385, m385
of the Spanish Succession, 167
technology of, 108, i414, i520–521
Thirty Years’, 169–170
total, 419, 522
in Vietnam, 544–547, m545
war against terrorism
in Afghanistan, i533, 593, 657
Bush administration and, 657
in Iraq, i636
warriors, feudal, 108
Warsaw Pact, 335, 648
Waterloo, 237
watermills, 286
water resources
in Industrial Revolution, 286
pack scarcity of, 680
Watt, James, 287
weapons. See also technology.
biological, 692
chemical, 691–692
cold War, 535–536
conventional, 690
in mail, 656–657
of mass destruction, i520, 649, 654,
691–693
Maxim gun, 341, i520
nuclear, 691, m691
poison gas, i520
protests against sale of, 690–691
tank, i520
terrorism, 653–654
totalitarianism, 440
trade in, 690–691
of World War I, 414, i414, i520
of World War II, 513, i521, 525
Weimar Republic, 471
welfare state, 605
Western civilization
effect of Enlightenment on, 199–200
influence on global culture, 661–662
Index

WTO (World Trade Organization), 642, 644

World War I, 407–427, m426
1914–1918, c404–405
alliances of, 409, 411
armistice, 421
aviation in, i416
battlefield deaths, 421–422, c422
casualties, c524
causes of, 407–410
and China, 417–418, 448
countries at war, 411
Eastern Front, 414–415
effect on Europe, 421–422
effects of, 421–422
in Europe, 411–420
Fourteen Points, 424–425
legacy of, 421–422
maps
Europe on the eve of, 1914, m409
in Europe, 1914–1918, m412
world at war, 1914–1918, m418
onset of, 411
peace treaties, 420
rationing, 420
and Russian Revolution, 420, 437
submarine warfare, i414, 418–419
technological effects of, 419–420
technology of war, 414, i414
time line, c404–405
Treaty of Versailles, 424–427, c427
trench warfare, 413, i413, 524
unemployment, 420
views of, 423
war aftermath, 422
Western Front, 412–414
Zimmermann note, 419

World War II, 491–517. See also communism; fascism; Hitler, Adolf; Holocau;
Nazism.
aggression, 491–492
alliances of, 491, 492, 494, 496, 501
Allied victory of, 511–513
in Asia and the Pacific, 497–501, m499
atomic bomb, i512, 513, 525
Balkans, 495
Baltic states, 491
battles, 493–494, 500–501, 507
blitzkrieg, 491, i521
casualties, c524
causes of, 491–492
Churchill, Winston, 493, i493, 496, 506–
507, i531
and Cold War, 531–533
costs of, c515, 524
D-Day invasion, 509–510, m510
death and labor camps, 504–505, m519
Eisenhower, Dwight D., 506, 509, i510
German advances, m492
Hitler, Adolf, 491–496, 502–504, 507,
510–511
Holocaust, 502–505
invasions, 485, 491, 492, 495–496
Japanese American internment, 509, i525
MacArthur, General Douglas, 500–501, if20,
i500, 511, 513, 516–517, i517
Montgomery, General Bernard, 506
Munich Conference, 485
Nazism, 502
nonaggression pact, 491
Nuremberg Trials, 516
Pearl Harbor, Japanese attack on, 497–
498, i498
Rommel, General Erwin, 494–495, 506
and Soviet Union, 491–492, 495–496,
506–509
surrender, German, 511
surrender, Japanese, 513
technology of war, 494, 500, i512, 513,
i521
time line, c488–489
V-E Day (Victory in Europe Day), 511
war aftermath, 514–517
weaponry, 500, i512, 513
Yalta Conference, 531–532

writers
Bacon, Francis, 192
Balzac, Honoré de, 266
Basho, Matsuo, 110, i110
Byron, Lord, 264, i264, 265
Cervantes, Miguel de, 157–158
Colonna, Vittoria, 43
Dickens, Charles, 228, 267, 309
Eliot, T. S., 464
Fitzgerald, F. Scott, 464, i464
Gaskell, Elizabeth, 290, i290
Goethe, Johann Wolfgang von, 265
Gordimer, Nadine, i662
Hugo, Victor, 265
Joyce, James, 464
Kafka, Franz, 464
“Lost Generation,” i464
Machiavelli, Niccolò, 42, i42, 69, i149
Marx, Karl, 302–304, i302, 434, c438
Nietzsche, Friedrich, 465
of Northern Renaissance, 48
Oe, Kenzaburo, i662
of Renaissance, 41–43
Richardson, Samuel, 203
Sartre, Jean Paul, 464
Shakespeare, William, 49
Shelley, Mary, 265
Shelley, Percy Bysshe, 265
Solzhenitsyn, Aleksandr, 555
Tocqueville, Alexis de, 237, 301
Voltaire, 196, i196
Wiesel, Elie, 505
Wollstonecraft, Mary, 199, i199
Wordsworth, William, 265
Yeats, William Butler, 464
Zola, Émile, 266, 316

Yalta Conference, 531–532
Yamamoto, Admiral Isoroku, 497, 500
Yeltsin, Boris, 614–616, i614
“shock therapy,” 616
Yonglo, 102–103
Yoruba, 348, 607
Yugoslavia
ethnic groups in former, c623, m623
independent republics of, 622, 624
post-World War II, 622

Zaire, 581. See also Congo, Democratic
Republic of.
Zapata, Emiliano, 392–393, i392
Zell, Katherina, 64
Zemin, Jiang, See Jiang Zemin.
Zen Buddhism, i113
Zheng He, 103
Zhou Enlai, 541, 626
Zia, Begum Khaleda, 568
Zia, General, i567, 568
Zimmermann, Arthur, 419
Zimmermann note, 419
Zionism
Herzl, Theodor, 316
in Middle East, 583
Zola, Émile, 266, 316
Text Acknowledgments


Chapter 3, page 110: Haiku by Matsuo Basho, from Matsuo Basho, translated by Makoto Ueda. Reprinted by permission of Kodansha International Ltd.


Chapter 13, page 423: Excerpt from All Quiet on the Western Front by Erich Maria Remarque. Copyright 1929, 1930 by Little, Brown and Company. Copyright renewed © 1957, 1958 by Erich Maria Remarque. “Im Westen Nichts Neues” by Erich Maria Remarque. Copyright 1928 by Ullstein A. G. Copyright renewed © 1956 by Erich Maria Remarque. All rights reserved. Used by permission of Pryor, Cashman, Sherman & Flynn on behalf of the Estate of Erich Maria Remarque.

Excerpt from “Dulce et Decorum Est,” from The Collected Poems of Wilfred Owen by Wilfred Owen. Copyright © 1963 by Chatto & Winds, Ltd. Used by permission of New Directions Publishing Corp.

Chapter 14, page 454: Excerpt from The Origin of Nonviolence by M. K. Gandhi. Published by Cambridge University Press. Reprinted with the permission of Cambridge University Press.


Chapter 19, page 627: Excerpt from “Tienanmen Square: A Soldier’s Story” by Xiao Ye from Teenage Soldiers, Adult Wars, edited by Roger Rosen and Patra McSharry, copyright 1999 by The Rosen Publishing Group, 29 East 21st Street, New York, NY, 10010, and reprinted with permission.

Chapter 20, page 647: Excerpt from “The Market is Green,” by the Liberty Institute, New Delhi. Copyright © May 1999. Reprinted by permission of the Liberty Institute, New Delhi, India.


Comparing & Contrasting Features


Unit 4, Page 523: Excerpt from If This Is a Man (Survival in Auschwitz) by Primo Levi, translated by Stuart Woolf, copyright © 1959 by Orion Press, Inc., © 1958 by Giulio Einaudi editore S.P.A. Used by permission of Viking Penguin, a division of Penguin Group (USA) Inc.

Art and Photography Credits

Maps supplied by Mapping Specialists

Cover


Front Matter


Chapter 2

Chapter 3

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS
Art and Photography Credits (Cont.)

Chapter 4


UNIT TWO


Chapter 5


Chapter 6

Chapter 7


Chapter 8


UNIT THREE


Chapter 9

280 top The Granger Collection, New York; bottom © Brian A. Vikander/Corbis; 281 left © Bettmann/Corbis; right © akg-images, London; 282 © Corbis; 283 left © Collin Garratt/Milepost 92 1/2/Corbis; right © H. David Seawell/Corbis; 284 © Ted Spiegel/Corbis.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS R85
Art and Photography Credits (Cont.)


Chapter 10


Chapter 11


Chapter 12

End Matter


ACKNOWLEDGMENTS